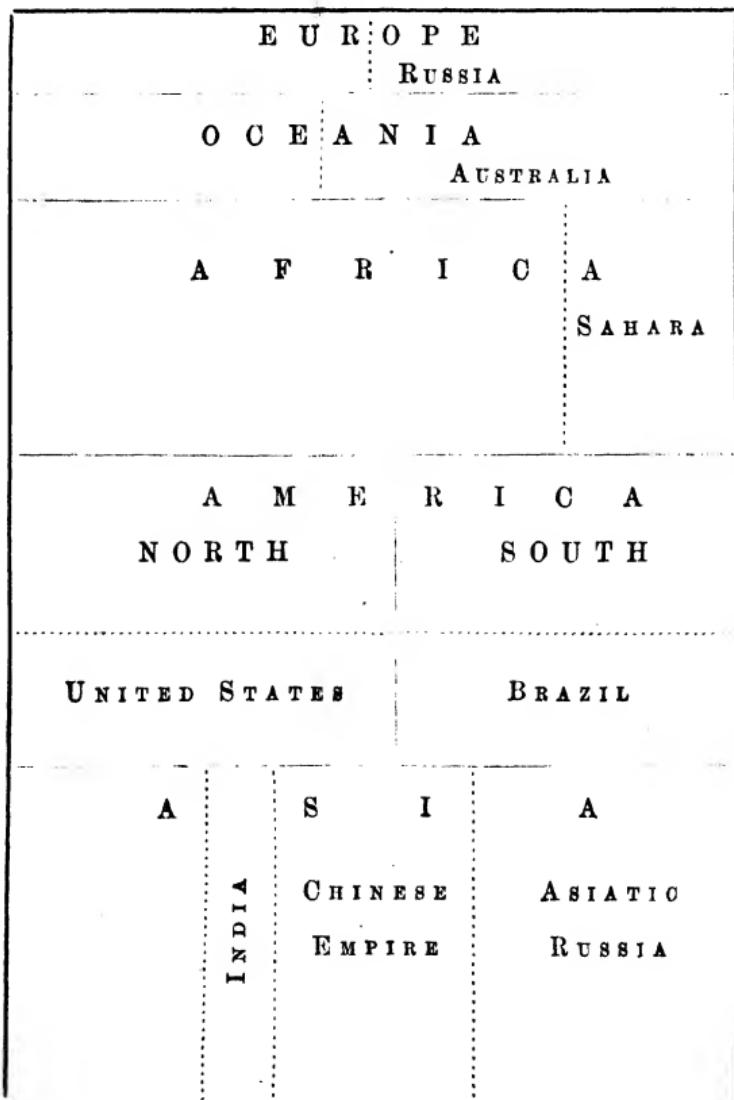


512261



COMPARATIVE SIZES  
OF SOME OF  
THE PRINCIPAL DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

*The whole Figure represents the entire amount of dry Land, Fifty-two Millions of Square Miles.*



MANUAL  
OF  
G E O G R A P H Y.

NEW EDITION:

REVISED AND ENLARGED.

TWENTY-FIFTH EDITION, 20,000. TOTAL COPIES, 243,000.

*FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS PREPARING FOR  
UNIVERSITY EXAMINATIONS.*

LONDON:  
The Christian Literature Society,  
FORMERLY  
The Christian Vernacular Education Society,  
1893.

[All Rights reserved.]



MIRUTHEA ALI		PAGE
Tables of Seas, Mountains, &c.	..	vii
Introduction ..	..	1
Great Divisions of Land and Water ..	..	13
Climate, Distribution of Plants and Animals ..	..	15
Population of the Earth, State of Society, &c.	..	19
ASIA, General View ..		22
India ..	..	28
Ceylon ..	..	95
Indo-Chinese Peninsula ..	..	98
Chinese Empire ..	..	106
Japan ..	..	114
Asiatic Russia ..	..	116
Central Turkistan ..	..	120
Afghanistan ..	..	121
Baluchistan ..	..	123
Persia ..	..	123
Arabia ..	..	126
Asiatic Turkey ..	..	129
Chief Sea-ports of Asia ..	..	136
EUROPE, General View ..		137
England and Wales ..	..	148
Scotland ..	..	165
Ireland ..	..	169
Denmark ..	..	175
Sweden and Norway ..	..	178
Russia in Europe ..	..	181
The German Empire ..	..	187
Prussia ..	..	189
Austria-Hungary ..	..	195
Holland ..	..	199
Belgium ..	..	201
France ..	..	203
Switzerland ..	..	208
Spain ..	..	210
Portugal ..	..	215
Italy ..	..	217
Greece ..	..	224
Turkey in Europe ..	..	226
Chief Sea-ports of Europe ..	..	231

## ( vi )

	PAGE
<b>AFRICA, General View</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	232
<b>Egypt</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	237
<b>Nubia and the Upper Nile</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	240
<b>Abyssinia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	241
<b>Barbary States</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	242
<b>Sahara, or the Great Desert</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	245
<b>Soudan, or Nigritia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	246
<b>Western Africa</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	246
<b>South Africa</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	249
<b>Eastern Africa</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	252
<b>Islands of Africa</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	255
<b>AMERICA, General View</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	256
<b>NORTH AMERICA, General View</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	257
<b>Greenland</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	262
<b>British North America</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	263
<b>United States</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	266
<b>Mexico</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	272
<b>Central America</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	274
<b>West Indies</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	275
<b>SOUTH AMERICA, General View</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	277
<b>Colombia, United States of</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	281
<b>Ecuador</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	281
<b>Venezuela</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	282
<b>Guiana</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	282
<b>Brazil</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	283
<b>Peru</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	284
<b>Bolivia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	285
<b>States of La Plata</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	286
<b>Chili and Patagonia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	287
<b>OCEANIA, General View</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	289
<b>Malaysia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	289
<b>Australasia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	293
<b>Melanasia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	299
<b>Micronesia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	300
<b>Polynesia</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	301
<b>Antarctica</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	303
<b>APPENDIX.</b>	
<b>Miscellaneous Facts</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	304
<b>Principal Products of the Earth</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	305
<b>University Examination Questions</b> .. .. .. .. .. .. ..	306

PRINCIPAL STATES of the EARTH, ranked according to POPULATION.

STATE.	Population.	Area, Square Miles.	Popula- tion to Square Mile.	CAPITAL.	Where situated.	Population.
1 Chinese Empire ..	380,000,000	4,000,000	95	Peking ..	Peiho, near	500,000?
2 British Empire ..	345,000,000	9,000,000	38	London ..	Thames ..	4,200,000
3 Russian Empire ..	120,000,000	8,500,000	14	St. Petersburg ..	Neva ..	1,000,000
4 { France and Dependencies .. .. .. }	68,000,000	3,200,000	25	Paris ..	Seine ..	2,448,000
5 United States ..	63,000,000	3,500,000	18	{ New York, }	Hudson ..	1,515,000
6 German Empire (Eur.)	47,000,000	208,000	221	Berlin ..	Spree ..	1,580,000
7 Austria-Hungary ..	41,000,000	240,000	171	Vienna ..	Danube ..	1,364,000
8 Japan .. .. ..	40,000,000	150,000	266	Tokio ..	Is. Nippon ..	1,390,000
9 Turkish Empire ..	37,000,000?	1,600,000	23	Constantinople ..	Bosporus ..	873,000?
10 Holland and Colonies ..	30,000,000	766,000	39	Amsterdam ..	Amstel ..	417,000
11 Italy .. .. ..	30,000,000	114,000	264	Rome ..	Tiber ..	273,000
12 Spain and Colonies ..	27,000,000	600,000	45	Madrid ..	Manzanares ..	472,000
13 Brazil .. .. ..	14,000,000	3,200,000	4	Rio de Janeiro ..	Rio de Janeiro ..	500,000
14 Mexico .. .. ..	11,000,000	750,000	15	Mexico ..	Plain ..	233,000
15 Portugal and Colonies ..	6,000,000?	800,000	7	Lisbon ..	Tagus ..	246,000
16 Persia .. .. ..	9,000,000?	640,000	14	Teheran ..	Plain ..	210,000
17 Sweden and Norway ..	7,000,000	290,000	24	Stockholm ..	Lake Maelar ..	247,000
18 Siam .. .. ..	6,000,000?	250,000?	24	Bangkok ..	Menam ..	255,000
19 Belgium .. .. ..	6,000,000	11,400	540	Brussels ..	Senne ..	482,000
20 Roumania .. .. ..	5,500,000	48,000	115	Bucharest ..	Dimbovitz ..	222,000

COMPARATIVE HEIGHTS OF THE PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS OF THE EARTH.



OCEANIA.

EUROPE.

AFRICA.

AMERICA.

ASIA.

## HEIGHTS† OF THE PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS OF THE EARTH.

The numbers refer to the Diagram on the opposite page. The Mountains marked \* are Volcanoes.

## ASIA.

No.	Summits.	Ranges, &c.	Height in Feet.
1.	<b>Everest</b> .	Himalayas	29,002
2.	<b>K<sup>2</sup></b>	Karakoram	28,278
3.	<b>Kanchanjanga</b>	Himalayas	28,160
4.	<b>Dwalagiri</b> .	„	26,826
5.	<b>Highest Peak</b>	Kuen-lun	22,000
6.	„	Thian-shan	21,000
7.	<b>Demavend</b>	Elburz	18,000
8.	<b>Ararat</b>	Armenia	17,000
9.	* <b>Kliutchevsk.</b>	Kamtchatka	15,800
10.	<b>Arjish Dagh</b>	Taurus.	12,600
11.	<b>Fusiyama</b>	Japan	12,288
12.	Takhti-Sulai- man	Sulaiman	11,317
13.	<b>Bielucha</b>	Altai	11,000
14.	<b>Lebanon</b>	Lebanon	10,061
15.	<b>Highest Peak</b>	Anamalais	8,837
16.	<b>Dodabetta</b>	Nilgiris	8,760
17.	<b>Highest Peak</b>	Sinai	8,538
18.	<b>Podrotalagala</b>	Ceylon	8,295
19.	<b>Toll-Poss</b>	Ural	5,430
20.	<b>Abu</b>	Aravalli	5,650

## AMERICA.

1.	<b>Sorata</b>	Andes (Bolivia)	24,818
2.	<b>Aconcagua</b>	(Chili)	23,944
3.	<b>Chimborazo</b>	(Ecuador)	21,400
4.	* <b>Antisana</b>	„	19,137
5.	* <b>Cotopaxi</b>	„	18,875
6.	* <b>Popocatapetl</b>	Mexico	17,800
7.	<b>Mt. Hooker</b>	Rocky Mts.	16,750
8.	<b>Highest Peak</b>	Cascade Mts.	15,750
9.	<b>Mt. St. Elias</b>	Pacific Coast	13,500
10.	Blue Moun- tains	Jamaica	8,815
11.	<b>Black Dome</b>	Alleghanies	6,707

## AFRICA.

1.	<b>Kilimanjaro</b>	East Africa	18,681
2.	<b>Kenia</b>	„	18,000
3.	<b>Ras Detchin</b>	Abyssinia	16,000

## AFRICA—continued.

No.	Summits.	Ranges, &c.	Height in Feet.
4.	<b>Cameroons</b>	West Africa	13,760
5.	<b>Teneriffe</b>	Canary Is.	12,180
6.	<b>Miltsin</b>	Atlas	11,400
7.	<b>Cathkin</b>	Drakenberg	10,357
8.	<b>Ankarat Mts.</b>	Madagascar	9,000
9.	<b>Table Mt.</b>	Cape Colony	3,550

## EUROPE.

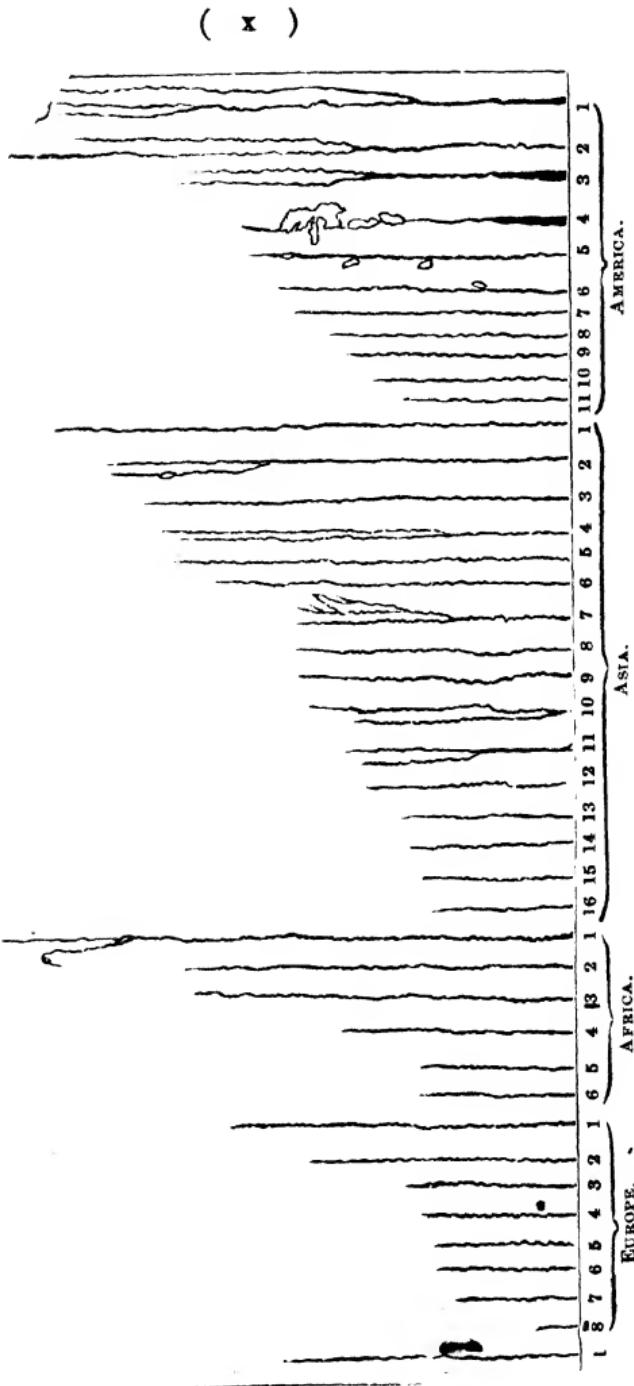
1.	<b>Elburz</b>	Caucasus	18,572
2.	<b>Blanc</b>	Alps (France)	15,784
3.	<b>Rosa</b>	(Switzer- land)	15,217
4.	Grand Paradis	(Italy)	13,300
5.	Ortler Spitz	(Austria)	12,789
6.	<b>Mulhacen</b>	Sierra Nevada	11,678
7.	<b>Maladetta</b>	Pyrenees	11,168
8.	* <b>Etna</b>	Sicily	10,840
9.	Rilo Dagh	Despoto (Tur- key)	9,842
10.	Zug Spitz	Bavarian Alps	9,716
11.	Corno	Apennines	9,543
12.	<b>Highest Peak</b>	Transylvanian Alps.	9,528

## OCEANIA.

1.	<b>Mowna Kea</b>	Hawaii	13,953
2.	* <b>Mowna Loa</b>	„	13,760
3.	Kini-Balu	Borneo	13,698
4.	Owen Stanley	New Guinea	13,205
5.	Mt. Cook	New Zealand	13,200
6.	* <b>Erebus</b>	Antarctica	12,400
7.	Ophir	Sumatra	9,940
8.	Kosciusko	Australia	7,176

† Authorities frequently differ. Keith Johnston has been chiefly followed.

COMPARATIVE LENGTHS OF THE CHIEF RIVERS OF THE EARTH.



## LENGTHS OF THE CHIEF RIVERS OF THE EARTH.

(The numbers refer to the Diagram on the opposite page.)

## AMERICA.

No.	Mouth.	Length in Miles.
1. <b>Amazon</b>	Atlantic	4,000
2. <b>Missouri-Mississippi</b>	Gulf of Mexico	4,300
3. <b>La Plata</b>	Atlantic	2,300
4. <b>St. Lawrence</b>	Gulf of St. Lawrence	2,100
5. <b>Mackenzie</b>	Arctic Ocean	2,100
6. <b>Nelson</b>	Hudson's Bay	1,900
7. <b>Rio Grande</b>	Gulf of Mexico	1,800
8. <b>Orinoco</b>	Atlantic	1,500
9. <b>San Francisco</b>	„	1,500
10. <b>Columbia</b>	Pacific	1,200
11. <b>Colorado</b>	Gulf of California	1,000

## ASIA—continued.

No.	Mouth.	Length in Miles.
12. <b>Amu Daria</b>	Sea of Aral	1,300
13. <b>Syr Daria</b>	„	1,100
14. <b>Irawadi</b>	Bay of Bengal	1,100
15. <b>Canton</b>	China Sea	1,100
16. <b>Godavari</b>	Bay of Bengal	900

## AFRICA.

1. <b>Nile</b>	„	Mediterranean
2. <b>Congo</b>	„	Atlantic
3. <b>Niger</b>	„	Gulf of Guinea
4. <b>Zambesi</b>	„	Mozambique Channel
5. <b>Orange</b>	„	Atlantic
6. <b>Senegal</b>	„	„

## ASIA.

1. <b>Yangtse</b>	Pacific	3,300
2. <b>Yenisei</b>	Arctic Ocean	3,100
3. <b>Hoangho</b>	G. of Pechill	2,800
4. <b>Obi</b>	Arctic Ocean	2,700
5. <b>Lena</b>	„	2,600
6. <b>Amur</b>	Pacific	2,300
7. <b>Indus</b>	Arabian Sea	1,800
8. <b>Brahmaputra</b>	Bay of Bengal	1,800
9. <b>Mekong</b>	China Sea	1,800
10. <b>Euphrates</b>	Persian Gulf	1,700
11. <b>Ganges</b>	Bay of Bengal	1,560

## EUROPE.

1. <b>Volga</b>	„	Caspian Sea
2. <b>Danube</b>	„	Black Sea
3. <b>Dnieper</b>	„	„
4. <b>Don</b>	„	Sea of Azov
5. <b>Petchora</b>	„	Arctic Ocean
6. <b>N. Dwina</b>	„	White Sea
7. <b>Rhine</b>	„	North Sea
8. <b>Thames</b>	„	„

## OCEANIA.

1. <b>Murray</b>	„	Southern Ocean
------------------	---	----------------

BRITISH PROVINCES.				NATIVE STATES.		TOTAL.	
—	Population. 1891.	Area. Sq. Miles.	Popula- tion to Sq. Mile.	Population.	Area.	Population.	Area.
Bengal .. . . .	66,750,520	151,543	471	3,296,379	35,834	70,046,899	187,277
N. W. P. and Oudh .. .	46,905,085	107,503	436	741,750	5,109	47,616,835	112,612
Madras .. . . .	35,630,440	141,189	252	3,700,622	9,609	39,331,062	150,798
Bombay .. . . .	18,901,123	125,144	151	8,059,298	69,045	26,960,421	194,189
Punjab .. . . .	20,866,847	110,667	188	4,263,280	38,299	25,129,127	148,966
Central Provinces .. . .	10,784,294	86,501	125	2,160,511	29,435	12,944,805	115,936
Assam.. .. . .	5,476,833	49,004	112	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	5,476,833	49,004
Burma .. . . .	7,605,560	171,430	45	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	7,605,560	171,430
Berars.. .. . .	2,897,491	17,718	163	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	2,897,491	17,718
Ajmere .. . . .	542,358	2,711	200	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	542,358	2,711
Coorg .. . . . .	173,055	1,583	109	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	173,055	1,583

NATIVE STATES.	Population.	Area. Sq. Miles.	NATIVE STATES.	Population.	Area. Sq. Miles.
Hyderabad .. . . .	11,537,040	32,698	Baroda .. . . . .	2,415,396	8,226
Mysore .. . . . .	4,943,604	27,936	Meywar, or Oodeypore .. . .	1,844,360	12,861
Gwalior .. . . . .	3,378,744	25,855	Patiala .. . . . .	1,583,521	5,951
Jeypore .. . . . .	2,832,276	15,349	Rewah .. . . . .	1,508,943	12,679
Travancore .. . . .	2,557,736	6,730	Indore .. . . . .	1,099,990	9,625
Cashmere .. . . . .	2,543,932	80,909	Bhopal .. . . . .	952,486	6,950
Jodhpore .. . . . .	2,521,727	37,445	Alwar .. . . . .	767,786	3,051

# MANUAL OF GEOGRAPHY.

## SHAPE AND SIZE OF THE EARTH.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth.

The term **Geography** is made up of two Greek words—*gē*, the earth, and *graphē*, a picture, a description. **Mathematical**<sup>1</sup> Geography treats of the form and size of the earth; **Physical**<sup>2</sup> Geography describes the earth in its natural state; **Political**<sup>3</sup> Geography treats of the earth in reference to man.

The Earth is round like a ball.

The earth appears to be flat, but this is because only a small portion of it can be seen at once. All learned men are now agreed that it is round like the moon or a ball. Three proofs of this may be mentioned: \*



1. When a ship on the sea comes towards the land, we get sight of the top-sails first, and as the vessel approaches nearer and nearer, we see the lower sails, and at last the hull, or body. If the earth were flat, we should see the hull first, because it is largest.

2. Ships continuing to sail eastward, or westward, come at last to the place from which they set out, just as an ant would do if it were to crawl with its head in the same direction over the surface of an orange.

3. In eclipses<sup>4</sup> of the moon, which are caused by the shadow of the earth falling on the moon's surface, the shape of the shadow is always round, thus proving that the earth itself is round.

The diameter<sup>5</sup> of the earth, or its measure through the middle, is 7,912 miles; its circumference,<sup>6</sup> or measure round, is 24,856 miles.

\* The teacher should explain the proofs by means of a globe or ball. The terms diameter and circumference should be similarly illustrated.

<sup>1</sup> From *ma-the-ma*, learning. <sup>2</sup> *Phy-sis*, nature. <sup>3</sup> *Pol-is*, a city. <sup>4</sup> The darkening of heavenly bodies. *Ek-leip-sis*, a failing. <sup>5</sup> *Di*, through; *metron*, a measure. <sup>6</sup> *Circum*, around; *fero*, to carry.

If you were to run a thread round the outside of an orange, the length of it would be the *circumference*; and if you were to cut the orange through the middle and measure it across the centre of the cut part, that would be the *diameter*. A swift steam-ship could go round the earth in about three months; a man travelling 25 miles a day would take nearly three years. The earth is not perfectly round, but a little flattened in two parts. The diameter from north to south is 26 miles less than the diameter from east to west.

The surface<sup>1</sup> of the earth contains about 197 millions of square miles.

A piece of land or water one mile in length and the same in breadth is called a *square mile*.



THE EARTH AS A PLANET.

### MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

The earth floats in the sky like the moon. It does not rest on anything.

Those who sail round the earth find mountains and trees and buildings on all sides of it, and the sun and the stars appear still over their heads. We cannot fall off the earth, because it draws everything to it. Persons living on the opposite side of the globe from us have their feet turned towards ours, and are therefore called our **Antipodes**<sup>2</sup> (an-tip'-o-des).

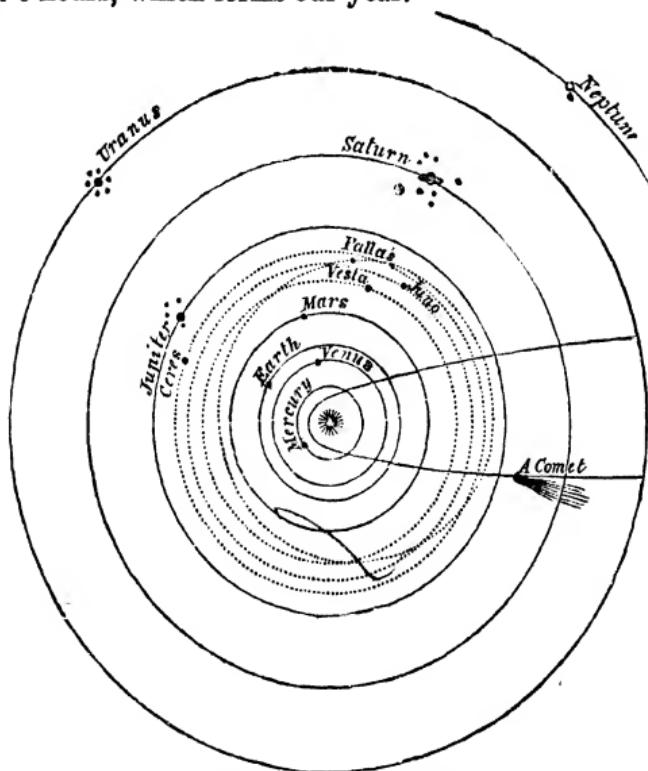
The earth has three motions:

1. The earth turns round once in 24 hours, which causes day and night.

1 Outside. 2 *Anti*, opposite; *podes*, feet.

It is day on the half of the earth upon which the sun is shining, and night on the other half away from the sun. This daily motion of the earth causes the sun, moon, and stars, to appear to move through the sky, as, when we are sailing in a ship, the land seems to move, and not the vessel.

2. The earth goes round the sun in about 365 days and 6 hours, which forms our year.



The path of the earth round the sun is called its **orbit**.<sup>1</sup> The turning round of the earth once a day is called its **diurnal**<sup>2</sup> motion; and its course round the sun, its **annual**<sup>3</sup> motion. The earth moves round the sun at the rate of about 66,000 miles an hour.

3. The earth moves through space along with the sun.

#### THE SOLAR<sup>4</sup> SYSTEM.

The Sun is about  $12\frac{1}{2}$  lakhs of times larger than the earth.

1. *Orbit*, a circle. 2. *Dally*; *di'es*, day. 3. Yearly; *annus*, a year. 4. Belonging to the sun; *sot*, the sun.

The sun is surrounded by burning gases, whose flames sometimes rise to the height of 200,000 miles.

The mean<sup>1</sup> distance of the earth from the sun is about 92 millions of miles.

The orbit of the earth is not an exact circle, but shaped somewhat like an egg. The earth is about 3 millions of miles nearer the sun in December than it is in June. If there was a road from the earth to the sun, a swift horse, galloping day and night, would require about 700 years to reach it.

**Planets** are heavenly bodies which move round the sun.

Planet comes from the Greek word *planētēs*, a wanderer. The planets move through the sky, while the fixed stars do not change their positions.

The principal planets are **Mer'cury** (Budha), **Ve'nus** (Sukra), the **Earth**, **Mars** (Mangala), **Ju'piter** (Brihas-pati), **Sat'urn** (Sani), **U'ranus**, and **Nep'tune**.

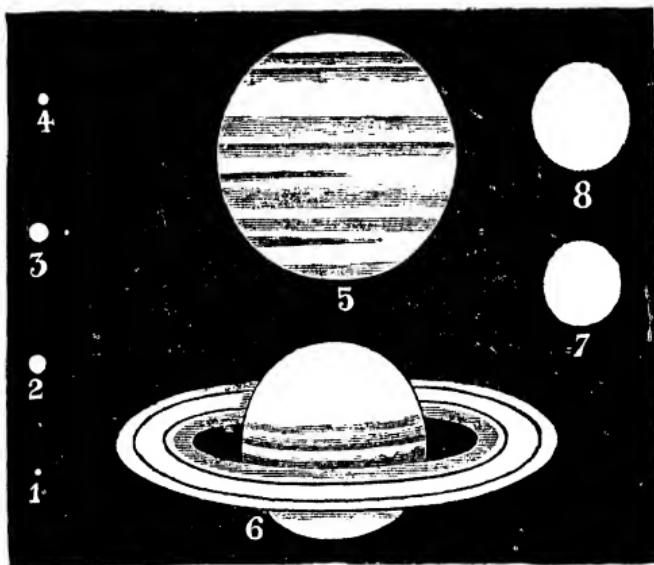
The sun and its attendant bodies form the Solar System. **Mercury** is about 35 millions of miles from the sun. **Venus**, the morning and evening star, is 66 millions of miles from the sun. The **Earth** is a planet of about the same size as Venus. It has one satellite,<sup>2</sup> called the **Moon**, at the distance of about 240,000 miles. The moon is about one-fiftieth part of the size of the earth. It appears to be almost as large as the sun, because it is very much nearer. **Mars** is about 140 millions of miles from the sun. It has two very small moons. Beyond Mars more than 300 very small planets, called **asteroids**,<sup>3</sup> have been discovered. They are from 200 to 300 millions of miles from the sun. **Jupiter** is about 480 millions of miles from the sun, and has five moons. **Saturn**, which is about 880 millions of miles from the sun, is surrounded by rings and has eight moons. **Uranus** is about twice the distance of Saturn, and has at least four moons. **Neptune**, the most distant planet yet discovered, is about 2,760 millions of miles from the sun, and has at least one moon.

**Jupiter** is nearly 1,400 times the size of the earth, and is larger than all the other planets taken together. **Saturn** is about 750 times larger than the earth; **Neptune** about 100 times; **Uranus** about<sup>4</sup> 70 times. **Mars** and **Mercury** are much smaller than the earth. Some of the asteroids are supposed to be not more than 20 miles in diameter.

The planets, like the earth, are composed of stone, &c., and have no influence upon human affairs.

1 Middle. 2 *Satell'les*, an attendant. 3 *Aster*, a star; *eidos*, form.

ECLIPSES.<sup>1</sup>—An Eclipse of the Sun is caused by the moon passing between the sun and the earth. If only a part of the sun is covered, the eclipse is said to be **partial**; if all is covered, it is **total**; if a ring of light is seen round the moon, it is said to be **annular**.<sup>2</sup> An eclipse of the moon is caused by the earth's shadow falling upon it.



COMPARATIVE SIZES OF THE PLANETS.

1. Mercury. 2. Venus. 3. The Earth. 4. Mars. 5. Jupiter. 6. Saturn  
7. Uranus. 8. Neptune.

Comets<sup>3</sup> are bodies which revolve<sup>4</sup> round the sun, at one time coming very near, and then going off to great distances. They generally resemble a star with a long train of light. Comets were formerly supposed to be forerunners of wars, famines, and other misfortunes but they are now known to have no connection with such events. Eclipses are equally harmless.

Besides planets and comets, there are innumerable very small bodies which revolve round the sun. Sometimes they fall on the earth, and are called **aerolites**;<sup>5</sup> but generally they are consumed when they enter the atmosphere,<sup>6</sup> and are named **shooting stars**.

The **Stars** are far beyond the boundary of the solar system, and are supposed to be suns. They cannot be reckoned by man; but their great Creator “telleth the number of the stars; He calleth them all by their names.”

1. *Ekleipsis*, defect, failing. 2. *Annulus*, a ring. 3. *Komētēs*, long-haired; like a hairy star. 4. *Re, -eak*; *volvo*, to roll. 5. *A'er*, air; *lithos*, a stone. 6. *Atmos*, vapour the air; *sphaira*, a ball.

DEFINITIONS<sup>1</sup> OF ARTIFICIAL<sup>2</sup> GEOGRAPHICAL LINES.\*

To show the position of places, a number of lines are supposed to have been drawn on the earth's surface.

The **Axis**<sup>3</sup> of the earth is a supposed line, passing through its centre, on which it seems to turn. The **North** and **South Poles**<sup>4</sup> are the ends of the earth's axis.

The North Pole points nearly in the direction of a star, which is hence called the **Pole-Star**.

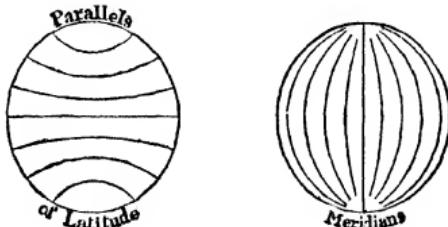
The direction of the North Pole can be found by means of the **compass**, consisting of a magnetic needle hung on a pin by the middle, which always points, more or less, to the north and south. It is called the **mariner's**, or sailor's compass, because it is so useful to seamen.

The **Equator**<sup>5</sup> is a line supposed to be drawn round the earth midway between the Poles.

**Latitude**<sup>6</sup> is the distance of a place north or south from the equator.

To measure the distance of any place north or south from the equator, the space between the equator and each pole is divided into 90 parts, termed **degrees**<sup>7</sup> of latitude (marked °), each containing 60 geographical, or about 69 English, miles. The lines are called **parallels**<sup>8</sup> of **latitude**, because they are equally distant from the equator. Each degree is subdivided into 60 **minutes** ('); and each minute into 60 **seconds** (").

**Meridians**<sup>9</sup> are lines supposed to be drawn round the earth through the poles.



\* This is a difficult lesson, but the pupils may easily be made to understand it, if the teacher will explain the lines on a globe *before* the definitions are committed to memory.

1 Explanations. 2 Made by art; supposed. 3 Latin *axis*, Sanscrit *aksha*, axle of a wheel. 4 That on which anything turns. From the Greek *polos*. 5 *Aequo*, to make equal. 6 *Lat-i-tu'-do*, breadth. 7 *De*, down; *gradus*, a step. 8 Equally distant. *Pgra*, beside; *a-lē-lon*, of one another. 9 *Me-rid-i-es*, mid-day."

Places on the same meridian have mid-day or midnight at the same moment: this is not the case with other places.

**Longitude**<sup>1</sup> is the distance of any place east or west from a given meridian.

Longitude is reckoned by the English from the meridian of Greenwich (pronounced *gren'ij*) near London. All places lying to the east of the first meridian are said to be in *east* longitude; and those lying to the west of it are said to be in *west* longitude. The globe is divided into 360 degrees of longitude, each measuring about 69 English miles at the equator, but gradually decreasing in size towards the Poles. From Greenwich, 180 degrees of longitude are counted west and 180 east.

As the sun passes over 360 degrees of longitude in 24 hours, it takes 4 minutes to a degree. Time is 4 minutes earlier for every degree to the east, and as much later for every degree to the west. When it is sunset in Bengal, it is mid-day in England, and sunrise in Central America.

By giving the latitude and longitude, the position of any place can be ascertained.

Circles which divide the globe into equal portions are called **great circles**; as the equator and meridians. Circles which divide the globe into unequal portions are called **small circles**; as parallels of latitude.

The **Hori'zon**<sup>2</sup> is the circle around us where the earth and sky seem to meet. The **Ze'nith**<sup>3</sup> is that point in the heavens which is directly over our heads; the **Na'dir**<sup>4</sup> is the opposite point below our feet.

The **Eclipt'ic** is a circle in the heavens round which the sun *appears* to move in a year. In reality it represents the path of the earth round the sun. It is so called because the sun or moon must be on or near it for an eclipse to take place.

The **E'quinoxes**<sup>5</sup> are the two points where the ecliptic cuts the equator, or where the sun is vertical to the equator. The sun seems to cross the equator, going northward, about the 21st March, and again, going southward, about the 23rd September. Day and night are then equal all over the globe. At the equator, days and nights are always of equal length.

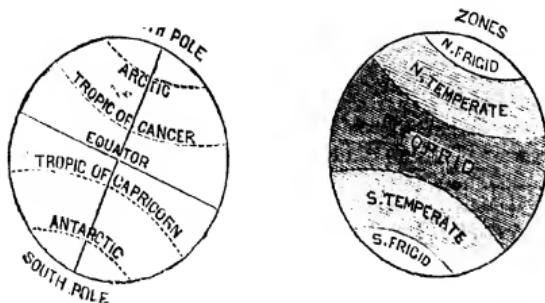
### THE FIVE ZONES.<sup>6</sup>

Some countries are hot; others are cold. The earth is divided into five **ZONES**, or belts, according to temperature.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Lon-gi-tu'-do*, length. <sup>2</sup> *Horos*, a limit. <sup>3</sup> From Arabic words meaning "way-of-the-head." <sup>4</sup> The Arabic meaning is "opposite." <sup>5</sup> *Aequus*, equal; *nox*, night. <sup>6</sup> *Zo-nē*, a girdle. <sup>7</sup> Each zone is like a girdle round the globe.

<sup>7</sup> Degree of heat and cold.

The hottest part of the earth is called the **Torrid<sup>1</sup> Zone**, in which the sun is at some part of the year exactly over-



head. The Torrid Zone lies on both sides of the equator. Its northern limit is called the **Tropic of Cancer**; its southern, the **Tropic of Capricorn**, each being about  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from the equator.

We all feel that the sun is hottest when it is highest in the heavens, and that it gives least heat when it is lowest, as at sunrise or sunset.



In the **Torrid Zone** days and nights differ little in length throughout the year.

<sup>1</sup> *Torridus*, hot,

The word *tropic* means turning. The Tropics are so called because they mark the turning points of the sun towards the north and south. When the sun reaches its northern and southern limits, it seems to stand still for a few days. These positions are called the Solstices.<sup>1</sup> They happen about the 21st June and the 21st December, and mark the longest and shortest days north of the equator, and the contrary south of the equator.

Long ago the *apparent* course of the sun through the sky was divided into twelve signs, denoting clusters of stars. As most of the constellations<sup>2</sup> were likened to animals, the name **Zodiac**, from the Greek word *Zōdion*, a little animal, was given to the whole. The constellation pointing out the northern limit of the sun's course was called **Cancer**, the Crab; the southern, **Capricorn**, the Goat. The Tropic of Cancer passes about 60 miles north of Calcutta. All India to the south of it is in the Torrid Zone.

The coldest parts of the earth, called the **Frigid<sup>3</sup> Zones**, lie around the Poles. The North Frigid Zone is bounded by the **Arctic<sup>4</sup>** (ark-tik) Circle, about  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees from the North Pole; the South Frigid Zone by the **Antarctic<sup>5</sup>** Circle, at the same distance from the South Pole.

The earth in its course round the sun always points to the same part of the heavens. During half its revolution, the sun always shines on the North Pole, and then, for as long, on the South Pole. Thus, at the Poles the year consists of one long day and one long night, each of six months.

Within the Polar Circles, the sun always appears low in the sky. At one season it seems to move round and round for weeks without setting, while, at the opposite season, it is not seen for nearly a like period.

Parts of the earth which are neither very hot nor very cold are said to be *temperate*.<sup>6</sup> The **North and South Temperate Zones** lie between the Tropics and the Polar Circles.

In the Temperate Zones, the people never see the sun directly above their heads; but it is always visible<sup>7</sup> once in 24 hours. North India lies within the North Temperate Zone.

The Temperate Zones contain about half the surface of the globe; the Torrid Zone contains about two-fifths; the Frigid Zones contain about one-twelfth.

1 *Sol*, the sun; *sto*, I stand. 2 Groups of stars: *con*, together; *stella*, a star. 3 *Frigidus*, cold. 4 *Arktos*, a bear. There is a cluster of the stars in the North, called the *Great Bear*; hence Arctic also means northern. 5 *Anti*, opposite. Opposite to the Arctic, or southern. 6 Properly mixed; *tem'pero*, to mix. 7 That may be seen *vis'um*, to see.

## NATURAL DIVISIONS OF LAND.\*

The surface of the earth is divided into **Land** and **Water**, about one-fourth being land, and three-fourths water.

## CONTINENT



A **Continent**<sup>1</sup> is a very large portion of land.

A **Country** is a smaller division of a continent.

An **Island**<sup>2</sup> is a portion of land entirely surrounded by water.

An **Archipelago**<sup>3</sup> (ar-ki-pel'-a-go) consists of many islands near each other. "The Archipelago" means the *sea* between Greece and Asia Minor.

An **Peninsula**<sup>4</sup> is a portion of land almost surrounded by water.

An **Isthmus**<sup>5</sup> is a narrow neck of land joining two larger portions.

An **Cape**<sup>6</sup> is a portion of land stretching into the sea.

The terms **Prom'ontory**,<sup>7</sup> **Point**, **Head**, **Naze**, or **Ness** (nose), and **Ras** (head), are sometimes used for *Cape*. A **Promontory** denotes high land.

\* The various terms should be explained before they are committed to memory. If possible, they should be illustrated by examples in the neighbourhood. Little capes and bays may be shown in a tank. Some sand on a board may be moulded into islands, &c.

1 *Con*, together; *teneo*, to hold: land held together; and not separated by water.

2 The word in Old English means, *water-land*. 3 *Pel'-a-gos* means sea. 4 *Paehe*, almost; *in'sula*, an island. 5 *Isthmos*, neck. 6 *Cap'ut*, the head. 7 *Pro*, before; *mons*, mountain.

**A Mountain** is land which rises much higher than the country around. **A Hill** does not rise so high as a Mountain.

The highest part of a mountain is called its **Summit** or **Top**; the lowest part its **Base** or **Foot**. Pointed mountains are called **Peaks**; mountains with flat tops, **Table mountains**. The lowest point between two peaks is called a **Saddle**.

A long line of mountains is called a **Range** or **Chain**. A number of mountains joined together form a **Group**. A number of groups form a **Mountain System**.

Hollows in mountain ranges enabling people to pass over, are called **Passes**. A **Defile** is a long narrow pass.

**A Volcano**<sup>1</sup> is a mountain that sends out smoke, red-hot stones, ashes, &c.

The hollow tops of volcanoes are called **Craters**.<sup>2</sup> The melted matter which sometimes flows down their sides is called **Lava**.<sup>3</sup> Some volcanoes send out **mud**. Boiling springs which send up jets of water are called **Geysirs** (gi'-sers).

**Earthquakes**, or shakings of the earth, are often connected with volcanoes.

**A Plain** is flat land which is very little raised.

A high plain is called a **Table-Land** or **Plateau**<sup>4</sup> (plato'). A **Valley** is low land between mountains or hills. The treeless plains of Russia are called **Steppes**; the grassy plains of North America are called **Prai'ries**<sup>5</sup> and **Savan'nahs**.<sup>6</sup> In South America forest plains are called **Selvas**;<sup>7</sup> other plains are called **Pampas**<sup>8</sup> and **Llanos**.<sup>9</sup> A **Desert** is a barren tract of country. The word means forsaken. An **Oasis** (o-a'-sis) is a fertile spot in a desert.

**A Coast**<sup>10</sup> is the land next the sea.

The strip of land close to the sea is called the **Sea-board**.

#### DIVISIONS OF WATER.

**An Ocean** is a very large portion of salt water.

**A Sea** is a portion of salt water smaller than an ocean.

**A Lake** is a body of water altogether surrounded by land.

Lakes without an outlet are generally salt. Mountain lakes are generally deep and irregular in shape; lakes in plains are mostly shallow and more regular in shape.

<sup>1</sup> From *Vulcan*, the Roman god of fire. <sup>2</sup> *Crater*, a cup. <sup>3</sup> *Lava*, a stream.

<sup>4</sup> From *plat*, flat. <sup>5</sup> From a French word meaning *meadow*. <sup>6</sup> *Savana*, in Spanish, means the sheet of a bed. <sup>7</sup> *Silva*, a forest. <sup>8</sup> *Pampa*, Spanish, a plain. <sup>9</sup> The Spanish form of the Latin *planus*, a plain. <sup>10</sup> *Costa*, a rib; the side.

**A Lagoon** is a shallow salt water lake into which the sea flows.

**A Gulf<sup>1</sup>** is a portion of water almost surrounded by land.

**A Bay or Bight** is a bend of the sea into the land.

**A Creek** is a narrow portion of water running into the land.

Narrow, winding inlets of the sea are called **Fiords** in Norway.

**A Harbour or Port** is a safe place for ships. **A Road or Roadstead** is a place where ships may lie at anchor.

**A Shoal** is a shallow part of water.

**A Strait or Sound** is a narrow passage of water connecting two seas.

A longer and broader passage between two seas is called a **Channel**.<sup>2</sup>

**A River** is a stream of fresh water.

The **Source** of a river is the place where it rises; the **Mouth**, the place where it empties itself. The **Bed** of a river is the channel in which its waters flow. The **Banks** of a river are the land bordering on each side. The **Right** and **Left Banks** are those to the right and left of a person looking down the river. A **Cat'aract**<sup>3</sup> is a great waterfall. Very small falls are called **Rapids**. A deep, steep channel worn by a river is called a **Cañon** (kan-yun).

A **Trib'utary**,<sup>4</sup> or **Affluent**,<sup>5</sup> is a stream flowing into a larger river. When the mouth of a river widens into an arm of the sea, it is called an **Estuary**,<sup>6</sup> or **Frith**. The **Basin** of a river is the tract of country which it drains. A **Watershed**, or **Waterparting**, is land which divides one river basin from another. A **Bar** is a sandbank at the mouth of a river. A **Delta** is land at the mouth of a river shaped like the Greek letter  $\Delta$ , called delta. Deltas are formed by the mud and sand brought down by rivers.

A **Spring** is water rising up out of the ground. Springs obtained from water very deep in the ground are called **Artesian Wells**, from having been first tried at Artois (ar-twa') in France.

**CORRESPONDING TERMS** :—A **Continent** answers to an **Ocean**; a **Country** to a **Sea**; an **Island** to a **Lake**; an **Isthmus** to a **Strait**; a **Peninsula** to a **Gulf**, &c.

**A Map** is a drawing of the earth or of a part of it. The top of a map is *North*, the bottom *South*, the right hand *East*, and the left hand *West*.

The points midway between the four Cardinal, or chief, points are *North-East*, *South-East*, *North-West*, and *South-West*.

1 *Kolpos*, the breast, a fold. 2 *Canna*, a pipe or reed. 3 *Kata*, down; *arasso*, to rush. 4 *Trib'-uo*, to give. 5 *Ad*, to; *fluo*, to flow. 6 *Aestuo*, to move to and fro. The tide moves up and down.

The teacher can best explain a map by first making one of the school-room, and then another of the neighbourhood. Pupils should be asked to point out on maps examples of geographical terms. Great use should be made of maps in teaching geography. Every place mentioned should be pointed out.

### GREAT DIVISIONS OF LAND AND WATER.

The surface of the globe is divided into two great portions, called the **Eastern** and **Western Hemispheres**.<sup>1</sup>

If we look at a globe, we can see only one-half of it at once. A map of the world is, therefore, usually drawn in the form of two circles, called *Hemispheres*, each of which represents one half of the earth. The hemisphere that lies to the right hand is called the *Eastern Hemisphere*; that to the left, the *Western Hemisphere*.

The Eastern Hemisphere contains more than twice as much land as the Western Hemisphere. The former stretches from west to east; the latter from north to south. The North Temperate Zone contains nearly half of the whole area of land; the Torrid Zone, about two-fifths. The South Temperate Zone has a small proportion of land.

There are six great divisions of land, namely, **ASIA**, **EUROPE**, **AFRICA**, **NORTH AMERICA**, **SOUTH AMERICA**, and **OCEANIA** (o-she-a'-ni-a).

Oceania consists of the great Island of **Australia**,<sup>2</sup> and a number of smaller islands scattered over the Pacific Ocean.

The continents of Asia, Europe, and Africa, are connected with each other, and situated in the eastern hemisphere. The great continent in the western hemisphere is divided into North and South America. America was discovered by Colum'bus in 1492 A.D. From its having become known so recently, it is sometimes called the *New World*.

Asia, Europe, Africa, and America, have been called the four quarters of the globe, but they are very unequal in size.

Oceania is divided into **Malay'sia**<sup>3</sup> in the west, **Australasia** in the south, and **Polynesiania**<sup>4</sup> in the east. Malaysia, called also the East Indian Archipelago, includes the numerous islands between Asia and Australasia. Some geographers include it under Asia. Australasia, or Southern Asia, consists of the Island of Australia, and some adjacent islands. Polynesia consists of the numerous groups of small islands scattered over the great Pacific Ocean.

There are about 52 millions of square miles of land; of which **Asia** contains 16 millions; **Europe**, 4 millions;

<sup>1</sup> *Hemi*, half; *sphaira*, a globe or ball. <sup>2</sup> *Auster*, the south. <sup>3</sup> The inhabitants are chiefly *Malays*. <sup>4</sup> *Poly*, many; *nesos*, an island.

Africa, 12 millions ; North America, 9 millions ; South America, 7 millions ; and Oceania, 4 millions.

Asia is the largest great division ; Europe, the smallest. Africa is three times the size of Europe ; Asia, about four times. The South Polar land is not included, as its size is not known.

The great divisions of land generally widen towards the north, and taper to points in the south.

Africa and South America resemble each other in being vast peninsulas.

In the Eastern Hemisphere the great mountain ranges run from west to east ; in the Western Hemisphere, from north to south.

The northern continents are penetrated by seas ; the southern continents are compact<sup>1</sup> in form.

Europe, compared with its size, has the greatest extent of coast line ; North America comes next, and Africa last.

The waters which surround the earth are divided into five great portions, called the **Pacific**,<sup>2</sup> **Indian**, **Atlantic**,<sup>3</sup> **Arctic**, and **Antarctic Oceans**. Their total area is about 145 millions of square miles.

The Pacific Ocean lies between America and Asia ; the Indian Ocean lies to the south of Asia ; the Atlantic Ocean is situated between Europe and Africa on the one side, and America on the other ; the Arctic Ocean lies round the North Pole, and the Antarctic Ocean round the South Pole.



*Section of the Atlantic Ocean.*

The above section represents the Atlantic Ocean between Ireland and North America. To enable the bottom of the ocean to be shown distinctly the depth is represented far greater than it is, compared with the breadth.

The **Pacific Ocean**, nearly oval<sup>4</sup> in form, contains about 72 millions of square miles. It covers one-third of the globe, and is nearly equal to all the other Oceans taken together. Its islands are very numerous. The **Atlantic Ocean**, which is long and narrow, shaped like the letter S, contains about 35 millions of square miles, and is about half the size of the Pacific Ocean. It is the most frequented of all the Oceans. The **Indian Ocean** is compact in form ; but its north is cleft by India. It contains about 25 millions of square miles. The **Arctic Ocean**, containing about 5 millions of square miles,

<sup>1</sup> *Con*, together ; *pactus*, fastened. <sup>2</sup> *Pa'cis*, peace ; *facio*, to make. It was so called because it was thought to be free from violent storms. <sup>3</sup> From *Atlas*, in Western Africa, the shores of which this ocean washes. <sup>4</sup> Egg-shaped ; *ovum*, an egg.

and the **Antarctic Ocean**, containing about 8 millions, are mostly covered with thick ice, and little known.

The bottom of the Ocean contains mountains and plains, just like the land. The average depth of the ocean is about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles.

The deepest part of the Ocean yet measured is about five miles. The temperature of the Ocean, as a rule, decreases with the depth. Near the bottom, the water is generally of icy coldness. The salt in the Ocean is nearly in the proportion of half an anna to a rupee.

**THE TIDES.**—The waters of the Ocean rise and fall twice in 25 hours, called the **Tides**. They are caused by the attraction of the sun and moon. At new and full moon, when the sun and moon pull in the same direction, the tides are highest, and are called **Spring Tides**. The low tides at half moon are called **Neap Tides**. At the equator the tides rise only about 3 feet. In some places they rise 30 feet or more.

**CURRENTS.**—The waters of the Ocean are never still. They are ever passing from the equator to the poles, and from the poles to the equator; they are ever sinking to the bottom or rising to the surface; ever ebbing and flowing as tides; often stirred by the winds.

Heated water rises; cold water sinks. The great currents in the Ocean are chiefly caused by the heat of the sun and the daily motion of the earth. They are like vast, slowly-moving rivers. There are equatorial currents, north and south of the equator. In the Atlantic the northern branch forms the **Gulf Stream**, from the Gulf of Mexico, which warms the sea on the west coast of Britain. In the Pacific it forms the Japanese current, called **Kuro-Sivo** (Black Water) from its dark blue colour, compared with the muddy water of the Yellow Sea.

### CLIMATE, ETC.

**Climate** is the state of a place with regard to heat, rain, &c.

The word climate comes from *kli'ma*, slope. The Greeks supposed the earth to slope, or slant, towards the poles.

**THE ATMOSPHERE.**<sup>1</sup>—The air which surrounds the earth is called the **Atmosphere**.

Just as the bottom of the sea is covered with water, so the whole earth is covered with a great ocean of air, at the bottom of which we move somewhat like fish in water. The atmosphere is at least 100 miles deep, but the air gets thinner and thinner as we rise.

<sup>1</sup> *Atmos*, vapour, air; *sphaira*, globe, ball.

**TEMPERATURE.**—The temperature of a place depends chiefly upon its distance from the equator and its height above the sea.

If we ascend a lofty mountain at the equator to the height of about three miles, we reach the *line of perpetual<sup>1</sup> snow*. The *snow line* gradually descends, as we approach the poles, till it reaches the sea itself.

Nearness to the sea has also a great effect upon the climate of a country. The land gets hotter in summer and colder in winter than the sea. Continents have therefore greater extremes<sup>2</sup> of temperature than islands. Islands have also generally more rain. Climates are therefore divided into **Insular** and **Continental**. The coldest known region of the earth is to the north-east of Lake Baikal (bi'-kal) in Siberia; the hottest, on both sides of the Red Sea.

**Isothermal<sup>3</sup> Lines** are those passing through places having equal mean temperature.

**THE SEASONS.**—The **Seasons** and **Variations<sup>4</sup>** in the length of day and night are caused by the earth's axis slanting  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees. During one part of the earth's annual course, the North Pole is toward the sun, and at another the South Pole. Were the axis perpendicular,<sup>5</sup> there would be no such changes. The seasons vary on both sides of the equator. When it is summer in the North Temperate Zone, it is winter in the South Temperate Zone.

**WINDS.**—There are three kinds of Winds:—**Constant**, **Periodical**,<sup>6</sup> and **Variable**.<sup>7</sup>

The **Trade Winds**, so called from their usefulness to traders by sea, are the most remarkable of the Constant Winds. They prevail over the oceans within the Torrid Zone and a little beyond it. North of the equator they blow from the north-east; south of the equator from the south-east. They are separated by a **Belt of Calms**.

The **Monsoons<sup>8</sup>** and **Land and Sea Breezes** are Periodical Winds.

The **Monsoons** are winds in the Indian Ocean which blow from the south-west from about April to October, and from the north-east during the rest of the year. In warm countries when the sun has heated the land during the day, a breeze sets in from the cooler sea, called the **Sea Breeze**. At night, when the land gets cooled, a breeze blows toward the warmer sea, called the **Land Breeze**.

**Variable Winds** prevail in the Temperate Zones.

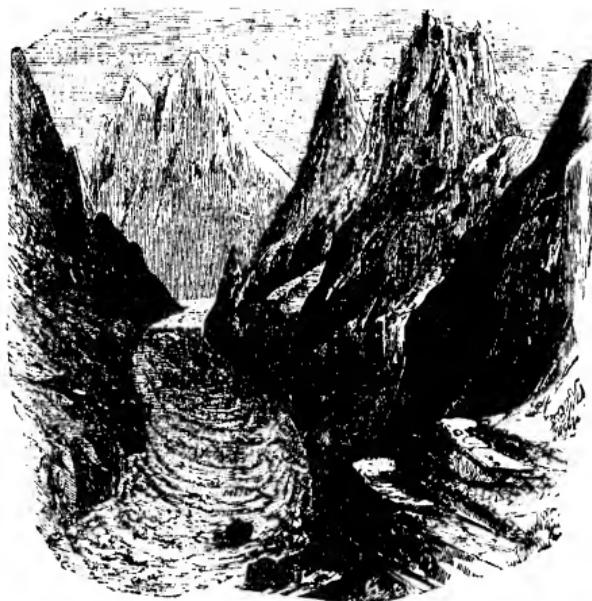
The **Simoom<sup>9</sup>** is a hot wind occurring in Arabia, &c. The **Hamattan** and **Siroc'co<sup>10</sup>** are hot winds from the interior of Africa.

<sup>1</sup> Constant. <sup>2</sup> *Extremus*, outermost. <sup>3</sup> *Iisos*, equal; *therme*, heat. <sup>4</sup> *Varius*, different. <sup>5</sup> Straight up and down: *per*, through; *pendeo*, to hang. <sup>6</sup> Happening at regular times: *peri*, about; *hodos*, a way. <sup>7</sup> Changeable. <sup>8</sup> *Mausim*, Arabic, season. <sup>9</sup> *Samma*, Arabic, to poison. <sup>10</sup> *Sharaka*, Arabic, to rise, the East.

Great storms which move round are called **Cyclones**<sup>1</sup> (si'klones) in the Indian Ocean, and **Typhoons**<sup>2</sup> (ti-foons') in the China Seas. Great sudden storms are also called **Hur'ricanes**.

**RAINFALL.**—The heat of the sun draws up most water in the Torrid Zone, and there the rainfall is greatest and follows the sun; in the Temperate Zones, rain falls at all seasons; in the Frigid Zones, snow takes the place of rain.

A **Cloud** consists of water in the air, somewhat like steam. A cloud near the ground is called a **Mist** or **Fog**. **Dew** is moisture in the air changed into water on the surface of leaves, &c. When the particles of a cloud run together and form drops, they fall as **Rain**. If the rain-drops are frozen, they form **Hail**. When the particles are frozen without taking the form of drops, they fall as **Snow**.



GLACIER.

Great cold changes water into **Ice**. On very high mountains the snow in hollows, crushed together by its own weight, forms rivers of ice, called **Glaciers**,<sup>3</sup> which move slowly down. The stones along the sides or at the foot of the glaciers, are called **Moraines**.<sup>4</sup>

1 *Kyklos*, a circle. 2 *Typhon*, a giant supposed to cause storms. 3 *Glacies*, ice. 4 *Mora*, a heap of stones.

Great masses of snow, which sometimes suddenly fall down mountains, are called **Avalanches**.<sup>1</sup> **Icebergs** or **Ice Mountains** are huge floating masses of ice which have broken off from ice fields or glaciers, and have drifted off to sea.

Some parts of India, Burma, Guinea, and the northern half of South America are remarkable for their heavy rains. A rainless zone stretches from the Saha'ra to the Desert of Gobi. Portions of North and South America are also rainless. As a rule, rain is most plentiful near the coast, and decreases toward the interior. Mountainous countries have generally the largest rainfall; lofty table-lands the smallest. Trees increase and retain the rainfall. Cutting them down has an injurious effect. Snow falls occasionally in winter over the greater part of the Temperate Zones. The quantity increases towards the Frigid Zones.

#### DISTRIBUTION OF MINERALS AND PLANTS.

**MINERALS.**—Iron is found in every quarter of the globe; copper and lead are the metals next in abundance. Tin is found chiefly in Europe and Asia; silver in America; gold in America and Australia. Salt and coal are widely diffused.

The distribution of minerals does not depend upon climate, like that of plants and animals. The most useful minerals are found in the largest quantities.

**PLANTS.**—The **Torrid Zone** produces the finest spices and the largest trees. Some of the principal plants are rice, millet, maize, yams, plantains, palms, pepper, coffee, tea, sugar-cane, cotton, the bamboo, banyan and teak.

The **Temperate Zones** produce wheat, oats, rye, olives, oranges, vines, the oak, pine, &c.

In the **Frigid Zones** grain will not grow, but there are mosses and lichens<sup>2</sup> (li'-kens).

More than 120,000 species of plants have already been described, some growing in one country and some in another. The earth has been divided into a number of regions according to the plants found in each.

Some plants, as rice, maize, tobacco, the orange, &c., grow both in the **Torrid Zone** and in the warmer parts of the **Temperate Zones**.

The warmer parts of the **Temperate Zones** are especially noted for their vines, oranges, and olives. In the middle parts, as in England, rice will not ripen, but wheat and potatoes grow in abundance. The

1 *Avaler*, to slip down. 2 Small flat plants growing in stones, &c.

fruits are apples, pears, cherries, gooseberries, and strawberries. In the colder parts, oats, barley, and rye, are cultivated, and there are forests of pine.

Trees are found in only a few parts of the Frigid Zones. They decrease rapidly in size towards the poles, and soon disappear. Large tracts within the polar circles are covered with perpetual snow and ice.

As already mentioned, temperature depends on elevation as well as latitude. Hence within the tropics the bases<sup>1</sup> of high mountains are covered with palms; the middle contains plants of temperate zones; in the higher parts stunted shrubs<sup>2</sup> are succeeded by perpetual snow.

#### DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMALS.

The largest, the fiercest, and the most beautiful animals, are found in the **Torrid Zone**, as the elephant, rhinoc'eros,<sup>3</sup> lion, tiger, crocodile, cobra, parrot, hummingbird, &c.

In the **Temperate Zones** the principal animals are horses, cattle, sheep and goats.

In the **Frigid Zones** there are no horses or cattle, but dogs and reindeer are very useful.

About 2,000 species of Beasts, 8,000 Birds, 1,600 Reptiles, 8,000 Fishes, and 300,000 other animals, chiefly Insects, have already been enumerated. Many more remain to be described.

In the Temperate Zones wolves and bears are the principal beasts of prey, but they are no longer found in England. Some of the birds have sweet notes, though, in general, they are not distinguished for beauty of plumage.<sup>4</sup> In England only one poisonous kind of snake is found, and its bite is not fatal to man. There are neither scorpions nor centipedes<sup>5</sup> (*sen'-ti-peeds*).

The polar bear is a large and fierce animal. Oil is obtained from the whale found in the northern seas.

The animals of a country, like the plants, depend upon its elevation as well as its latitude.

#### POPULATION<sup>6</sup> OF THE EARTH.

The population of the earth is estimated at 1,480 millions. Asia contains about 800 millions; Europe, 360 millions; Africa, 160 millions; America, 120 millions; and Oceania, 40 millions.

1 *Bottoms*. 2 *Hindered from growing*. 3 *An animal with a horn on its nose. Ri'nos, the nose; keras, a horn.* 4 *Pluma, small feather.* 5 *Centum, a hundred; pedes, feet.* 6 *Pop'ulus, people.*

In uncivilized countries the people are not numbered, and hence their population is uncertain. More than half the people of the world are Asiatics; Europeans form about one-fourth; Africans, one-ninth; Americans, one-fourteenth. The average number of inhabitants to the square mile is about 28. Europe, the most densely peopled continent, contains 94 to the square mile; Asia, 46; Africa, 12; Oceania, 10; America, 9.

All men are descended from the same first parents, Adam and Eve. The differences between nations have been produced by different climates and modes of life.

In this country, persons who labour in the sun are generally darker than those not exposed to the weather. Africa is hotter than Asia, and the people are darker: Europe is not so hot as Asia, and the people are lighter in colour.

Men are divided into three great varieties, the **Cauca'sian**, or Indo-European, **Mongo'lian**, and **Negro Races**.

The **Cauca'sians** are so called from the Cau'casus Mountains, in the west of Asia, one of their earliest seats. They are distinguished by an oval head. In cold countries they are white; in warm, brown. They occupy the west of Asia, nearly the whole of Europe, the north of Africa, and a large portion of America. Most of the people of India belong to this race.

The **Mongolians** have a yellow or brown colour, black hair, little or no beard, small eyes, and a flat face. They occupy the north-eastern parts of Asia, and derive their name from Mongolia, in Northern China.

The **Malayans** and the **American Indians** are subdivisions of the Mongolian family. The Malayans very much resemble the Mongolians; but living in warmer countries, they are darker in colour. They inhabit Malacca, and several islands to the south-east of Asia. The American Indians are of a copper colour, with black hair, and high cheek-bones. They are found only in America.

The **Negro**<sup>1</sup> or African race, are black, with short, woolly hair, flat noses, and thick lips. They occupy a great part of Africa. Some of the islands in the Pacific Ocean contain a smaller race of Negroes, sometimes called **Negritos**.<sup>2</sup> The aborigines<sup>3</sup> of Australia belong to the Negro race, but they differ in some respects.

#### STATE OF SOCIETY, ETC.

**STATE OF SOCIETY.**—Nations may be divided into five classes, according to the degree of civilization<sup>4</sup> that exists

1 *Niger*, black. 2 Little Negroes. 3 First inhabitants. 4 Advancement in learning, the arts, &c. : *civis*, a citizen.

among them, viz., the **Savage**, the **Pastoral**,<sup>1</sup> the **Half-civilized**, the **Civilized**, and the **Enlightened**.

Savage nations subsist by hunting, fishing and gathering wild fruits. Pastoral nations are supported by their flocks and herds. Half-civilized nations cultivate the ground and trade with each other: civilized nations have, in addition, made progress in literature, and the arts; highly civilized nations are said to be enlightened.

**GOVERNMENTS.**—**Monarchies**<sup>2</sup> and **Republics**<sup>3</sup> are the two principal forms of Government.

Savage and pastoral nations are generally ruled by **Chiefs**. The next kind of Government more advanced is that by **Kings**. Where the king possesses unlimited power over his subjects, the government is called an **Absolute**<sup>4</sup> **Monarchy**. If the King's power is limited,<sup>5</sup> the Government is termed a **Limited Monarchy**. Several countries under one monarch form an **Empire**.<sup>6</sup> A **Republic** is a country governed by rulers chosen by the people.

**LANGUAGES.**—The total number of languages is estimated at about 4,000. They are divided into three great classes. **Monosyllabic Languages**, like the Chinese, are made up of words of one syllable. Words may be joined, but each remains distinct; as, black-board. **Agglutinative**<sup>7</sup> **Languages**, like those of Southern India, are composed of words the parts of which do not join perfectly. One root remains distinct, but the other sinks into a mere termination.<sup>8</sup> **Inflectional**<sup>9</sup> **Languages**, like Sanskrit, Arabic, and English, are composed of words, the parts of which are so blended together, that they seem all of one piece.

**RELIGIONS.**—**Buddhism** prevails in Eastern Asia; **Hinduism** is confined to India; **Muhammadanism** is the prevailing religion in Western Asia and Northern Africa; Negroes are much given to **Fetichism**;<sup>10</sup> **Christianity** is professed by the enlightened nations of Europe and America, and is spreading throughout the earth.

- **Fetichism** is the worship of any object, as a tree, an egg-shell. The number of persons belonging to each religion at present cannot be known exactly; but the following is a rough estimate: Christians, 470 millions; Jews, 8 millions; Muhammadans, 190 millions; Hindus, 200 millions; Buddhists, 280 millions; all other religions, 332 millions.

<sup>1</sup> *Pastor*, a shepherd. <sup>2</sup> *Monos*, alone; *archō* (*ar-kee*), rule. <sup>3</sup> Belonging to the people. *Res*, a thing, a state; *pub'licus*. <sup>4</sup> *Ab*, from; *solu'tum*, to loose. <sup>5</sup> *Limis*, a boundary. <sup>6</sup> *In'-pero*, to command. <sup>7</sup> Sticking together. *Ad*, to; *gluten*, glue. <sup>8</sup> *Ter'minus*, end. <sup>9</sup> Having different endings. *In*, in; *flecto*, to bend. <sup>10</sup> A *fetich* or *fetish* denotes a charm; from *facticius*, made by art.

## ASIA.

## GENERAL VIEW.

BOUNDARIES.—ASIA is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Pacific; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the west by the Red Sea, the Mediterranean,<sup>1</sup> the Black Sea, and Europe.

EXTENT.—Asia contains about 16 millions of square miles.

Asia is united to Africa by a narrow neck of land, called the Isthmus of Su'ez. The eastern extremity of Asia is separated from America by Behring Strait, only 36 miles in breadth. The length of Asia, from east to west, is about 6,700 miles; its breadth, from north to south, is about 5,300 miles. It contains nearly one-third of the land on the surface of the globe. Asia is somewhat square in shape, with projections<sup>2</sup> to the four points of the compass.

Asia is remarkable as the first abode of man, the seat of the first great empires, and, above all, as the continent in which the Lord Jesus Christ lived and suffered for man's salvation.

DIVISIONS.—The principal countries of Asia are:—

In the north, ASIATIC RUSSIA.

In the east, CHI'NA and JAPAN'.

In the south, ANAM, SIAM', BURMA, and INDIA.

In the west, ARA'BIA, and TURKEY.

In the centre, PER'SIA, AFGHANISTAN, BALUCHISTAN and TURKISTAN.

SEAS AND GULFS.—On the north-west, the Black Sea, the Sea of Mar'mora, and the Mediterranean; on the south, the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, the Persian Gulf and the Bay of Bengal, connected with the Indian Ocean; on the east, the China Sea, the Yellow Sea, the Sea of Japan, the Sea of Okhotsk', the Sea of Kamtchatka (Kam-chat'-ka) or Be'hring Sea, arms of the Pacific Ocean.

The Gulf of A'den lies east of the entrance to the Red Sea; the Gulf of O'man, east of the entrance to the Persian Gulf; the Gulf of Mannar', between India and Ceylon; the Gulfs of Siam' and Tonquin (ton-keen') are branches of the China Sea; the Gulf of Obi forms the mouth of the Obi.

STRAITS.—The Strait of Bab-el-man'deb, at the entrance to the Red Sea; Strait of Or'muz, at the entrance

<sup>1</sup> *Medius*, middle; *terra*, earth. Supposed to be in the middle of the earth. <sup>2</sup> Parts sticking out. *Pro*, forward; *jacio*, to throw.

to the Persian Gulf; **Palk Strait**, between India and Ceylon; **Strait of Malac'ca**, between Malacca and Sumatra; **Strait of Core'a**, joining the Yellow Sea and Sea of Japan; **Be'hring Strait**, between Asia and America.

Bab-el-mandeb, the *gate of tears*, was so called from its numerous shipwrecks.

**ISLANDS.**—On the east, **Saghalien'**, and the **Japan' Islands**; off the coast of China, **Formo'sa** and **Hainan (hi-nan')**; south of India, **Ceylon'**; in the Mediterranean, **Cy'prus**.

The **Liakov Islands**, or **New Siberian Group**, are in the Arctic Ocean; the **Aleutian Islands** lie between Kamtchatka and America; the **Kurile (kú-ril) Islands** are a small group north of Japan; the **An'damans** and **Nic'obars** are islands in the Bay of Bengal; the **Laccadives** and **Maldives** are clusters of low coral islands to the south-west of India. There are several small islands off the west coast of Asia Minor.

**CAPES.**—The most *northerly* point of Asia is **Cape Chelyuskin**<sup>1</sup> in Siberia; the most *easterly*, **East Cape**, at Behring Strait; the most *southerly*, **Cape Roma'nia**, in Malaya; the most *westerly*, **Cape Ba'ba**, in Asia Minor. **Cape Com'orin** forms the southern point of India.

In 1879, Nordenstiold, a Swede, first sailed round the north of Asia. **Cape Lopat'ka** is south of Kamtchatka; **Cape Cambo'dia**, south of Cochin China; **Cape Negrais**, south-west of Pegu; **Ras-el-Hadd**, east of Arabia.

**PENINSULAS.**—In the west, **Asia Mi'nor**, between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean; in the south, **Arabia, India, and Indo-China**; in the east, **Corea** and **Kamtchatka**.

The continuation of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula is called **Malaya**. Most of the Asiatic peninsulas stretch southward.



*Section of Asia, from North to South.*

**SURFACE.**—**Northern Asia** forms a vast plain; **Middle Asia** consists chiefly of mountains and high table-lands;

• 1 So called after its Russian discoverer.

**Southern Asia**, chiefly of peninsulas. Asia contains the highest and the lowest known land on the face of the globe.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The **Himalaya Mountains**, the loftiest in the world, form the southern boundary of the central table-land. The highest peaks are about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  miles in height. The **Altai** (á-l-tí) (Golden) **Mountains** form the northern border. A great central chain of mountains traverses Asia, from west to east, bearing different names in different countries.

The **Cau'casus** Range stretches between the Caspian and Black Seas. The **Ural Mountains**, a low range, form part of the boundary between Asia and Europe.

The **Andes** in South America, the highest mountains in any other quarter of the globe, are about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles in height. The **Yablonoi** and **Stanovoi Mountains** form a continuation of the Altai Range, reaching to the eastern extremity of Asia. The great central chain is called **Mount Taurus** in Asiatic Turkey; the **Elburz Range** in Persia; the **Hindu Kush** in Afghanistan; the **Karakorum Range**, north of Cashmere, and the **Kuen-lun Mountains**, north of Tibet. The **Thian Shan**, or **Celestial Mountains**, are about midway between the Kuen-lun Mountains and the Altai Range.

Most of the great mountain chains of Asia run east and west.

**TABLE-LANDS.**—The central plateau, the largest in the world, and nearly three miles in height, falls suddenly towards India; but in other directions it descends by terraces,<sup>2</sup> each bounded by a range of mountains. The loftiest plateaus are **Tibet**, north of the **Himalayas**, and the **Pamir Steppe**, called the “Roof of the World,” in Turkistan. They are equal in height to the highest mountains in Europe. **Afghanistan** is upwards of a mile in height; the table-lands of **Mongolia** and **Persia** are each about three-quarters of a mile in elevation. The **Deccan**, **Arabia**, and **Asia Minor** also form table-lands, in general somewhat lower.

**RIVERS.**—On the *north slope*, the **Irtish** and **O'bi**, the **Yenisei** (yen-i-say'-e) and the **Le'na**, fall into the Arctic Ocean.

On the *east slope*, the **Amur'** (Great River), the **Yangtsekiang**,<sup>3</sup> and the **Hoang-ho**,<sup>3</sup> or **Yellow River**, fall into the Pacific.

On the *south slope*, the **Mekong'**,<sup>3</sup> or **Cambo'dia**, falls

<sup>1</sup> Chinese *tien*, heaven, *shan*, mountain; *ca-lum*, heaven. <sup>2</sup> The land goes down, as it were, by steps. <sup>3</sup> *Kiang*, *ho*, *me*, and *dagia*, all mean river.

into the China Sea ; the **Irawadi**, the **Brahmaputra**, and the **Ganges**, fall into the Bay of Bengal ; the **Indus** flows into the Arabian Sea ; the **Euphrates** (yu-fra'-tes) and **Tigris** pour their united waters into the Persian Gulf.

*Inland*, the **Syr Daria**,<sup>1</sup> or **Jaxar'tes**, and the **Amu Daria**, or **Oxus**, fall into the Sea of Aral.

At different times they have fallen into the Caspian Sea.

The **Tarim**, in Eastern Turkistan, falls into Lake **Lob Nor**.

The **Yang-tse**, with a course of about 3,300 miles, more than twice the length of the **Ganges**, is the longest river in Asia ; but the **Obi** has the largest basin.

Although Asia is the largest division of the globe, its rivers are not so long as those of America. This arises from the high land, in which the principal rivers take their rise, being in the centre, and not on one side as in the western continent. Still, the three principal rivers flowing northward, and two running eastward, are each nearly 3,000 miles in length. The rivers flow in all directions.

The **Obi**, the **Yenisei**, and the **Lena**, or the **Sluggard**, move slowly over a vast plain, through dark forests and dreary marshes to the Northern Ocean. A few fishermen's boats are nearly the only signs of life discoverable along their banks. The two great rivers of China, the **Yang-tse** and the **Hoang-ho**, rise near each other in Central Asia. The **Brahmaputra**, the **Ganges**, and the **Indus** have their sources in the **Himalaya Mountains**. The **Euphrates** and the **Tigris** both rise in the **Mountains of Armenia**, in the north-east of Asiatic Turkey.

**LAKES.**—The **Caspian Sea**, about twice the size of Bengal, is the largest salt-water lake on the globe. The **Sea of Aral**,<sup>2</sup> east of the Caspian, is rather larger than Ceylon. There are several other salt lakes. **Lake Baikal**<sup>3</sup> (bi-kal), in the south of Siberia, about half the size of the **Sea of Aral**, is the largest fresh-water lake in Asia.

The Caspian Sea is about 80 feet below the level of the ocean. **Balkash**, east of the **Sea of Aral**, next in size to Lake Baikal; **Issik-Kul**, south of Lake Balkash; **Urumiya** (u-ru-me'-a) in Persia; **Van**, **Tuz-Gol**, and the **Dead Sea** in Asiatic Turkey; are all salt lakes. **Tuz-Gol** is the saltiest lake known ; the **Dead Sea**, 1,300 feet below the level of the sea, is the lowest known lake.

**Lob Nor**, in Eastern Turkistan, and **Tengri Nor**, in Tibet, are other lakes. **Kul**, **Gol**, and **Nor**, all mean *lake*.

<sup>1</sup> *Daria*, river. <sup>2</sup> Sea of islands. The sea is shallow with many islands. It is said to be drying up. <sup>3</sup> Great Lake.

**CLIMATE.**—The south-east is hot and moist; the south-west hot and dry; the centre is hot in summer and cold in winter; the north is very cold.

The southern point nearly touches the equator; the northern portion stretches into the Frigid Zone. The great height of the central table-land renders it very cold. India, Indo-China, and China are called the three monsoon countries, receiving large supplies of rain during the monsoons. In some parts the rainfall is excessive. A rainless belt extends from Arabia over a large part of Central Asia. Most of the great rivers in Asiatic Russia are frozen for about nine months a year.

**MINERALS.**—Asia is rich in metals and in precious stones.

Gold and silver are found in Siberia; quicksilver is found in China; tin, in Indo-China; iron, lead, copper, coal, and salt occur in various parts. India has produced the finest diamonds in the world; rubies and sapphires (saf'-ers) are found in Burma and Ceylon.

**VEGETABLES.**—Rice and millet are extensively cultivated in southern countries; wheat, barley, and oats are grown in those farther north. The southern parts of Asia are famed for their spices; tea grows in China, Japan, India, and Ceylon; coffee, in Ceylon, India, and Arabia. Asia is supposed to be the original home of most cultivated fruits. Cotton and indigo are raised in India; palms and the sugar-cane grow in the warmer parts; near the Arctic Ocean there are only mosses and lichens.

**ANIMALS.**—Asia is remarkable for the number and variety of its animals. The elephant, rhinoceros, lion, tiger, with beautiful birds, and numerous kinds of snakes, are found in various parts.

The elephant and rhinoceros are found in India and the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Arabia and Persia are famed for their horses; the camel is found in South-Western Asia, India, and Tartary. The lion is met with in the west; tigers, peculiar to Asia, are found in the south and in the islands. Animals with rich furs are found in the north. Birds of brilliant plumage, and poisonous snakes, are numerous in southern countries. The silk-worm is reared in various parts possessing a warm climate.

**PEOPLE.**—The population of Asia is estimated at 800 millions,—more than half the people of the globe.

The population is dense in China, India and Japan ; but a great part of Asia is very thinly peopled. Over the whole continent, the number of inhabitants to the square mile is about 46.

The nations of Western Asia and India belong to the Caucasian race ; those of Malaya and the adjacent islands, to the Malayan race ; the Chinese and the inhabitants of Central and Northern Asia are Mongolians.

The people are remarkable for their adherence<sup>1</sup> to ancient customs. In many cases, they dress, live, and act, as they did thousands of years ago.

Women are generally kept in ignorance, and in Muhammadan countries they do not go abroad without being closely veiled.

The native governments of Asiatic countries are very despotic.<sup>2</sup> There are several tribes and chiefs that live by plunder.

The Arabs, Tartars, and some Malayan tribes, are the nations most notorious for their robberies.

**RELIGIONS.**—All the great religions of the world originated in Asia. Demonolatry,<sup>3</sup> or the worship of evil spirits, prevailed at an early period over a great part of the continent.

Demon worship was the religion of the aborigines<sup>4</sup> of India, and traces of it still exist in different parts of the country. It is common in Ceylon and Siberia. In China, the worship of ancestors<sup>5</sup> is universal.

**Hinduism** is the religion of most of the inhabitants of India.

**Buddhism**, in various forms, prevails in the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, in China, and Central Asia.

Buddhism originated in India ; but was afterwards nearly exterminated<sup>6</sup> by persecution.

**Muhammadanism** is the religion of most of the nations of Western Asia.

**Christianity** is professed by several millions in Turkey, and is spreading in different parts of Asia.

<sup>1</sup> *Ad*, to ; *Mereo*, to stick to. <sup>2</sup> Acting according to their own will. *Des'potis* lord. <sup>3</sup> *Daimō*, spirit; *latreia*, worship. <sup>4</sup> The first inhabitants of a country. <sup>5</sup> Forefathers: *ante*, before; *cessum*, to go. <sup>6</sup> Entirely driven away. *Ex*, out of *ter'minus*, a boundary.

## INDIA.

**BOUNDARIES.**—INDIA forms the central peninsula of Southern Asia. It is bounded on the north by the Himalaya Mountains; on the east by Burma and the Bay of Bengal; on the south by the Indian Ocean; and on the west by the Arabian Sea, Baluchistan and Afghanistan.

**SIZE.**—The extreme length of India, from north to south, and its greatest breadth, from east to west, are both about 1,800 miles. The entire area is about a million and a half square miles.

India is more than one-third of the size of Europe, and about twelve times as large as the British Islands. Its area, compared with all the land on the globe, is in about the proportion of half an anna to a rupee.

**Burma**, to the eastward, contains nearly three lakhs of square miles. Although now a province of the British Indian Empire, it will be described under the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, to which it properly belongs.

**NATURAL DIVISIONS.**—The principal natural divisions are the **Himalaya Mountain Region**, the **Basin of the Ganges**, the **Basin of the Indus**, and the **Deccan**.

The shape of India is nearly that of a triangle, with the point towards the south. The **DECCAN**, the south, is often limited to the table-land between the Narbada and Krishna Rivers. Properly speaking, the **DECCAN** includes all south of the Vindhya Mountains, as Hindustan includes all north of the same boundary.

**ISLANDS.**—The **Laccadives**<sup>1</sup> are low coral islands, about 150 miles west from the coast of Malabar.

The cocoa-nut is the principal production. **Rameswaram** is a small island between India and Ceylon.

**The Andamans and Nicobars** are groups in the Bay of Bengal, south of Cape Negrais.

Most of the islands are covered with forest. The aborigines of the Andamans are black savages. A large convict<sup>2</sup> settlement has been formed upon the Andamans, and cultivation is extending. **Port Blair**, on the south island, is the principal station. Here Lord Mayo was assassinated in 1872. **Barren Island**, to the east, is volcanic.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A lakh of islands. <sup>2</sup> Con'vict, a person found guilty of some crime. <sup>3</sup> Produced by a burning mountain.

COASTS.—The surf-beaten<sup>1</sup> coast, nearly 4,000 miles in length, has few inlets. The largest are the Gulfs of Cambay and Cutch, both on the western side. The Gulf of Mannar', Paumben Passage, and Palk Strait, separate India and Ceylon.

The Eastern Coast has not a single good harbour; the Western Coast is more broken, and has the excellent harbour of Bombay. The south-eastern coast is called the Coroman'del<sup>2</sup> Coast; the south-western, the Malabar' Coast.

CAPES.—Cape Com'orin, the most southerly point of the peninsula.

Cape Monze, in Sind, the most westerly point of India; Diu Head, the southern point of the peninsula of Kathiawar; Point Calimere, opposite North Ceylon; Point Palmyras, north of the mouth of the Mahanadi.

*Section of India from North to South.*

*Section of the Deccan.*

MOUNTAINS.—The Himalaya Mountains, in the north, are the loftiest range in the world. The highest peak yet discovered is Mount Everest, 29,002 feet above the level of the sea.

Himalaya means *abode of snow*. The length of the chain is about 1,500 miles; its breadth, about 200 miles. The Himalayas rise by successive ranges from the great plain of Hindustan. Along the base there is a swampy unhealthy jungle, called the Tarai,<sup>3</sup> which in some places is now being cleared and cultivated. The sides of the first range, which does not exceed 3,000 feet in height, are covered with forest. The ground then rises rapidly, soon reaching 7,000 feet. The mean height of the chain is nearly 20,000 feet. The height of the snow-line is about 16,000 feet on the south side, on which most snow falls, and nearly 18,000 feet on the northern slope. The Passes across the Himalayas are about 17,000 feet above the sea.

Gaurisankar and Deodhunga are Indian names of Mount Everest.

<sup>1</sup> Beaten by the dashing waves. <sup>2</sup> Country of the Cholas. <sup>3</sup> Moist land.

**Kanchanjanga**, next in height to Mount Everest, lies on the eastern frontier<sup>1</sup> of Nepal; Mount Everest is to the westward, on the northern frontier of Nepal; still farther west, and due north of Benares, **Dwalagiri**, or White Mountain. The **Jumnotri Peaks**, in Garhwal, contain the source of the Jumna,



HIMALAYAN PASS.

The **Sewalik Hills** are a low range, at the foot of the Himalayas, between the Ganges and the Beas, remarkable for the remains of very large animals.

<sup>1</sup> The border of a country.

The **Sulaiman Range** separates India from Afghanistan.

The highest point is **Takht-i-Sulaiman** (Throne of Solomon), 11,317 feet high. The **Hala Range** separates Baluchistan from Sind.

The **Aravalli Hills** lie between the basins of the Indus and the Ganges.

The general elevation is about 3,600 feet. The most elevated summit is **Mount Abu**, 5,650 feet above the sea.

The **Vindhya Mountains** run in an easterly direction from the Gulf of Cambay, forming the northern boundary of the valley of the **Narbada**.

The **Kaimore Hills**, to the eastward, are a continuation of the Vindhya Range.

The **Satpura Range** lies between the **Narbada** and the **Tapti**.

The range to the south of the **Tapti** is sometimes called the **Northern Ghats**.

The **Western Ghats** form the western boundary, and the **Eastern Ghats**, the eastern boundary of the table-land of the Deccan. A continuation of the Western Ghats extends to Cape Comorin.

The **Western Ghats**, or **Sahyadri Mountains**, rise abruptly<sup>1</sup> within 30 or 40 miles of the coast. The average height is about 3,000 feet. The **Eastern Ghats** are much farther from the sea, and only about half the height. They are likewise less continuous, being broken by rivers from the table-land.

**TABLE-LANDS.**—There are two principal Table-lands, each triangular in shape. The **Plateau of the Deccan**, the larger, is enclosed by the Ghats, and slopes towards the east. The **Plateau of Malwa**, bounded on the south by the Vindhya Range, slopes towards the north.

The mean elevation of the Deccan Plateau is about 2,000 feet. The Plateau of Malwa drains into the Ganges.

**PLAINS.**—The **Plain of the Ganges**, one of the most fertile and densely peopled in the world, slopes to the south-east; the sandy **Plain of the Indus**, in the west, slopes southward; the **Eastern Maritime<sup>2</sup> Plain** is a

<sup>1</sup> Abruptly, suddenly. *Ab*, from; *ruptus*, broken off. <sup>2</sup> *Mar're*, the sea.

broad belt lying along the east coast of the Peninsula ; the **Western Maritime Plain** is a narrow strip along the West Coast.

The Plains of the Ganges and Indus meet in the Punjab. The sandy tracts to the east of the Indus in the lower half of its course are called the **Thar**, or Indian Desert.

**RIVERS.**—India, north of the Vindhya Mountains, is drained chiefly by three large rivers, the **Brahmaputra**, the **Ganges**, and the **Indus**, which all rise near each other in the Himalayas.

The **Brahmaputra** rises on the northern side of the Himalayas, and joining the eastern mouth of the **Ganges**, falls into the Bay of Bengal.

The **Brahmaputra** flows first through a long valley on the north of the great Himalayan wall. In the upper part of its course it is called the **Sanpu**, although this is sometimes regarded as a tributary. It is called the **Dihong** where it enters Assam ; its western arm is called the **Konai** ; its eastern is called the **Megna** after its junction with the **Surma** from the north-east. The total length is about 1,800 miles. The current is rapid, and the river is subject to destructive floods.

The **Ganges** rises on the southern slopes of the **Himalaya Mountains**, and, after a course of 1,560 miles, enters the Bay of Bengal.

The **Ganges** derives its waters from the snow and rain which fall upon the **Himalaya Mountains**. There is nothing peculiar about its source, which the Hindus call the "Cow's Mouth." The two main sources are the **Bhagirathi** and **Alaknanda**, which unite in **Garhwal**.

The principal tributaries of the **Ganges** are the **Jumna** and **Gogra** from the **Himalaya Mountains**, and the **Sone** from the **Vindhya Range**.

The **Ramganga**, the **Gumti**, the **Gandak**, and the **Kusi**, are other large tributaries from the north : the **Tons** and **Karamnasa** from the south. The **Chambal** and the **Betwa**, from the **Vindhya Range**, fall into the **Jumna**.

About 200 miles from the sea, the **Ganges** separates into two great streams. The larger, flowing eastward, called the **Padma** or **Poddar**, unites with the **Konai** at **Goalundo** : the western is termed the **Bhagirathi**, and lower down the **Hugli**. Before entering the sea they subdivide into a network of channels.

The **Ganges** brings down an immense quantity of mud, and a large delta has been formed at its mouth. The numerous small marshy

islands adjoining the sea form a tract called the **Sundarbans**. The jungles swarm with tigers, and alligators are numerous in the streams; but there are some wood-cutters and fishermen at the mouth of the **Hugli**.

The **Indus**, the longest river in India, rises on the northern side of the **Himalaya Mountains**, and falls into the **Arabian Sea**. Five rivers which water the **Punjab**, called the **Jhelum**, **Chenab**, **Ravi**, **Beas**, and **Sutlej**, enter the **Indus** by one channel, called the **Panjnad**.<sup>1</sup> The **Ka'bul River** is the principal tributary on the west.

The source of the **Indus** is 16,000 feet above the level of the sea. Its length exceeds 1,800 miles, but the stream in general is not deep. A large delta has been formed at its mouth.

The **Indus** rises on the western slope of the **Kailas Mountain**, the **Sutlej** on its southern, and the **Brahmaputra** near its eastern base.

The **Luni** drains the western slopes of the **Aravalli Hills**, and enters the **Arabian Sea** by the **Runn of Cutch**.

The **Narbada** and **Tapti** flow westward into the **Gulf of Cambay**.

The course of the **Narbada**, or **Narmada**, is about 800 miles; that of the **Tapti** about 450 miles. Their beds are often rocky.

The **Mahanadi**, the **Godavari**, the **Krishna**, and the **Cauvery** fall into the **Bay of Bengal**.

The length of the **Mahanadi** is about 520 miles; of the **Godavari**, 900 miles; of the **Krishna**, 800 miles; and of the **Cauvery**, about 470 miles. The **Tungabadra**, formed by the junction of the **Tunga** and **Badra**, is a large tributary of the **Krishna**.

**LAKES**.—India has only a few small lakes. The chief fresh-water lake is **Kolair**, between the **Godavari** and **Krishna**. The **Wulur Lake** is in **Cashmere**. There are several small salt lakes, the largest of which is the **Sambhar Lake** in **Rajputana**. **Chilka Lake** and **Pulicat Lake**, on the **East Coast**, and the **Backwaters**, on the **West Coast**, are, more or less, connected with the sea.

#### CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

**CLIMATE**.—About the half of India lies within the **Torrid Zone**. The climate, except in elevated districts, is hot. The three principal seasons are the cold, the hot, and the wet.

The hottest parts of India are the **Coromandel** or **Eastern Coast** and the **Great Western Desert**. In North India, scorching winds

<sup>1</sup> Five rivers.

prevail during the hot season; while December and January are so cold that slight frosts sometimes take place in the morning. Several stations in elevated districts are frequented by Europeans, on account of their cool climate.

The valley of the Brahmaputra, the southern slopes of the Himalayas, and the West Coast of the Peninsula, receive most rain. Very little rain falls to the west of the Aravalli Hills.

Along the West Coast, which receives a large supply of rain, there are groves of cocoa-nut palms and other trees. The rainfall is much less on the East Coast, and part of the country consists of bare red soil or sandy wastes. In the north-west there are arid deserts of shifting sand.

The *Monsoons*, or periodical winds which alternately blow from the south-west and the north-east, greatly influence the climate of India. The South-West Monsoon lasts from May till September; the North-East, from October till March.

The monsoons are caused by the sun's heating the earth alternately to the north and south of the equator. The heated air rises, and cold air rushes in. The winds incline partly to the west and east, from the daily motion of the earth from west to east.

The Western Coast receives most rain from the South-West Monsoon, and the Eastern Coast during the North-East Monsoon.

The Western Ghats intercept<sup>1</sup> the clouds brought by the South-West Monsoon. On the **Mahableshwar Hills**, south-east of Bombay, the annual fall of rain is 240 inches. At Bombay, the average fall is 70 inches; at Madras, 50 inches; and at Calcutta, 66 inches. The **Khasi Hills**, north-east of Bengal, have the heaviest known rainfall in the world, amounting, at **Cherapunji**, to 523 inches a year. At Delhi, the rainfall is about 24 inches a year; in Upper Sind, about 2 inches.

**MINERALS.**—Iron is plentiful; coal is found in Bengal and Central India; rock-salt is obtained in the Punjab; saltpetre<sup>2</sup> is produced in considerable quantities. India has long been famous for its diamonds.

The want of fuel prevents the manufacture of iron on a large scale. Salt is collected from **Lake Sambhar** in Rajputana, and on the coasts of the Peninsula it is extracted from sea-water. The largest

<sup>1</sup> Catch. take on the way: *inter*, between; *captus*, taken. <sup>2</sup> A kind of salt, used in making gunpowder.

diamond belonging to the Queen of England, the *Koh-i-nur* (Mountain of Light), was found on the banks of the Godavari. Gold is met with in some districts.

**SOIL.**—The valley of the Ganges has a very fertile soil ; some tracts have a rich black mould, but a reddish soil is more general. The Coromandel Coast and the districts west of the Aravalli Hills are sandy.

The soil is formed by the decay of rocks. A hard rock, called gneiss (nise), is very common in India. The black cotton soil of the Deccan may have been mud at the bottom of lakes.

**VEGETABLE PRODUCTIONS.**—Rice is largely cultivated in Bengal and along the coast ; ragi, bajra, and jawari are raised in the drier central districts ; wheat is grown in the north. Sugar-cane, spices, tobacco, plantains, mangoes and other fruits, grow in abundance. Cotton, opium, jute, and indigo are valuable exports. Tea and coffee are raised in some parts of the country. The forests yield useful timber.

Joar, bajra, ragi, and some other grains, are called millets. Millet comes from *mille*, a thousand, denoting the number of its seeds. Millets are the chief food grain in India ; they are more nourishing than rice, which supports about one-third of the people. Wheat is next in importance to rice. Gram and other pulses, maize, &c., are likewise cultivated. Bengal produces large quantities of oil-seeds ; cocoa-nut trees are plentiful along the Western Coast. The principal cotton fields are around Bombay and in the Central Provinces. Opium is produced in Behar and Malwa ; indigo in Bengal and Behar ; jute<sup>1</sup> in Eastern Bengal. Tea is cultivated in Assam and along the Himalayas ; coffee, on the South-Western Ghats, where cardamoms are also produced. The teak, sal, and sissoo are valuable timber trees. India is noted for the banyan. The cinchona (*sin-ko'-na*) tree, yielding quinine, the best medicine for fevers, has been introduced into the Hill Districts.

From the cutting down of forests, parts of India are now dry and parched. The British Government is therefore taking care of forests and planting trees.

**ANIMALS.**—Sheep, goats, cattle, buffaloes, dogs, horses, and camels, are the principal domestic animals. Elephants, tigers, cheetahs, bears, and various species of monkeys and deer, are numerous in the forests ; the rhinoceros is found in the east.

<sup>1</sup> From which bags, &c., are made.

The lion is nearly extinct: only a few are still found in Gujarat. The wild ass is found in Cutch. The gaur, a very large wild ox, is found in some mountain jungles.

The adjutant crane is common in Bengal; kites and birds of brilliant plumage are found in great numbers.

The adjutant crane is nearly as tall as a man, and is very useful in devouring substances which would otherwise putrefy.

Snakes are plentiful, and a few of them, as the cobra, are very poisonous. Crocodiles abound in many of the rivers.

Silk-worms are reared in Bengal; ants, fireflies, and musquitoes, are found everywhere in swarms.

The python snake sometimes attains the length of thirty feet. Nearly 20,000 persons die every year from snake bites.

The fisheries along the coast are productive.

### PEOPLE.

**POPULATION.**—The population of the Indian Empire in 1891 was about 287 millions.

Of every five persons in the world, one is a native of India. The population is nearly as large as that of Europe. The average number of inhabitants to the square mile is 184; but in some parts there are 600, and one district has 870. India ranks next to China in population.

India is peopled by several nations, differing widely in appearance, language, and customs.

**RACES.**—The earliest inhabitants of India are supposed to have been rude tribes, like those now found on some of the hills. Some tribes, called **Kolarians**, entered the country from the north-east.

They are now found chiefly in Western Bengal. The **Santals** and **Kols** are two of the principal tribes.

The **Dravidians** entered India from the north-west, and spread over the south of the Peninsula. They were followed by other Scythian<sup>1</sup> (*sith'-i-an*) tribes, who occupied North India.

<sup>1</sup> Scythia included the north-west of Asia and part of Europe.

**Aryan** colonists<sup>1</sup> entered India from the north-west, and though they settled chiefly in Hindustan, some of them were scattered over the whole country.

At a remote period, the ancestors of the English, Romans, Greeks, and Hindus dwelt together, speaking the same language. Some Aryans went westward to Europe; others went eastward to India. The Aryans were fairer than the aborigines of India, whom they styled a "black-sprung host," and with whom they had frequent wars. Some of the early inhabitants were driven to the mountains; but many, in course of time, mixed with the conquerors.

The north-eastern frontier districts are peopled by **Indo-Chinese** tribes, with flat faces, like the Chinese.

The Muhammadan invasions<sup>2</sup> brought a number of Arabs, Persians, and Afghans into India, whose descendants are found in various parts.

The **Parsis**, numerous on the Western Coast, came originally from Persia.

**European descendants** are found in many of the towns.

Some Jews and Syrian Christians settled at an early period on the Malabar Coast.

#### LANGUAGES.

About one hundred languages and dialects are spoken in India, of which the three principal divisions are the **Sanskritic**, **Dravidian**,<sup>3</sup> and **Burmese Classes**.

About 220 millions speak Sanskritic languages; 53 millions Dravidian; and 13 millions, other languages.

The Aryan settlers introduced the **Sanskrit** language, from which, mingled with the languages of the original inhabitants, the **Bengali**, **Uriya**, **Hindi**, **Punjabi**, **Marathi**, **Gujarati**, and **Sindi** have been derived.

The Aryan family of languages includes the Sanskritic languages, Persian, and most of the languages of Europe.

The Bengali, Uriya, and Assamese languages greatly resemble each other. **Bengali** is spoken by about 41 millions of people to the north of the Bay of Bengal; **Uriya** by about 9 millions along the north-

1 \*Col-on-ists, persons who come to live in a country: *co-lo'-nus*, a farmer.

2 Coming into a country to attack it: *in, in*; *varum*, to go. 3 Dravidian, belonging to South India.

western coast of the Bay of Bengal; **Assamese**, by about 1½ millions in Assam. **Hindi**, of which there are several dialects,<sup>1</sup> is spoken by more people than any other language in India. It is the vernacular<sup>2</sup> of about 80 millions, and prevails throughout the basin of the Ganges till the river bends southward in Bengal. **Punjabi** is spoken by about 18 millions in the upper basin of the Indus; **Sindi**, by about 3 millions in Sind; **Marathi** is spoken by about 19 millions in the west of the Deccan, and **Gujarati** by about 11 millions around the Gulf of Cambay.

**Pushtu**, the language of the Afghans, **Cashmiri**, and **Nepali**, are other Sanskritic languages, spoken by smaller numbers in India.

**Hindustani**, or **Urdu**, is a Sanskritic language, but contains a number of Arabic and Persian words.

*Urdu* means *camp*. The Muhammadan invaders spoke chiefly Persian. A mixed language, with Hindi as its basis,<sup>3</sup> sprang up, which is much used in the cities of North India, and by Muhammadans in different parts of the country. It is probably current among 25 millions. In some districts it is very corrupt.<sup>4</sup>

The **DRAVIDIAN** languages are spoken chiefly in the Madras Presidency. The principal are **Tamil**, **Malayalam**, **Canarese**, **Telugu**, and **Gondi**.

**Tamil** is spoken by about 15 millions of people inhabiting the south-eastern coast of the Peninsula. **Malayalam**, which is very like Tamil, is spoken by about 5 millions on the south-western coast. **Canarese** is spoken by about 10 millions in Mysore and on the western coast. The **Telugus**, about 20 millions in number, occupy the districts between the Tamils and the **Uriyas**. The **Gonds** are a rude tribe in Central India, about 1½ millions in number. The Dravidian languages belong to a large family, called **Turánian**,<sup>5</sup> or **Scythian**. **Santali** is spoken by nearly 2 millions. Some Indian languages are spoken by only a few hundred people.

Languages of the **Burmese Class** are spoken along the north-eastern frontier.

**Burmese** and **Chinese** belong to what is called the monosyllabic class of languages. **Burmese** is spoken by about 6 millions.

The **English** language is now studied in many parts of India, and is taking the place formerly occupied by the **Sanskrit**.

#### CHARACTER, COMMERCE, ETC.

**CHARACTER, ETC.**—The Hindus are polite, temperate, and kind to their families. They are wanting in moral

<sup>1</sup> Di'-a-lects, forms of languages. <sup>2</sup> Mother-tongue; *verna*, a slave born in his master's house. <sup>3</sup> Ba-sis, foundation. <sup>4</sup> Mixed with other languages. <sup>5</sup> Tu-ra-ni-an, belonging to the wandering tribes of Asia; *tura*, swiftness.

courage, and are too fond of going to law. Many are kept poor by squandering<sup>1</sup> money on marriage and funeral expenses.

Women are generally kept in ignorance, but a desire for female education is now spreading among the more intelligent of the people.

The Hindus are so split up by caste, that they cannot unite to form a great nation. The "Brotherhood of Man" is now beginning to be acknowledged.

INDUSTRIES.—About two-thirds of the people are employed in agriculture.<sup>2</sup> Much skill is shown in irrigation;<sup>3</sup> but a sufficient use is not made of manure.

India is almost entirely a rural country. Not one-twentieth of the people live in towns. Many large tanks were formed long ago for irrigation. For the same object, the British Government has made dains across rivers, and dug several large canals. The Upper Ganges Canal, 519 miles in length, is the greatest irrigation work in the world.

### COMMERCE.

The Hindus have long been celebrated for their muslins, silks, and shawls. Weaving is carried on throughout the country. The use of machinery in Europe caused, for a time, a great decline in cotton manufactures. Steam cotton-spinning mills have recently been established in several places, and large quantities of cotton goods are now exported. Brass vessels and coarse pottery are made everywhere.

Machinery, worked by steam engines, can weave cloth much faster and cheaper than can be done by manual labour.

COMMERCE.—The annual value of Indian foreign commerce by sea is about 195 crores a year. The chief imports<sup>4</sup> are cotton goods, treasure, metals and machinery, oil, silks, woollens, liquors, coals, and salt. The principal exports<sup>5</sup> are cotton, grain, jute, opium, seeds, tea, hides, indigo, wool, silk, coffee, and timber. Opium is sent to China; other articles are sent chiefly to England.

<sup>1</sup> Wasting. <sup>2</sup> Farming: *ag-er*, a field; *cultum*, to labour upon. <sup>3</sup> Watering land: *in, in rigo*, to water. <sup>4</sup> Goods brought into a country: *in, in porto*, to carry.

<sup>5</sup> Goods sent out of a country: *ex, out*.

The commerce of India has increased remarkably during the present century. The value per head is greater than that of any other Asiatic country.

**Imports.**—The values of the chief imports are as follows: cotton goods, 30 crores a year; gold and silver, 12 crores; iron, copper, etc., 8 crores; oils, 3 crores; silks and sugar, each 2 crores.

India absorbs nearly one-fourth of the gold and one-third of the silver that are produced throughout the whole world. The country is much richer in the precious metals than ever it was before; but they are often rendered useless by being converted into ornaments or hoarded.

**Exports.**—The values of the chief exports are as follows:—Cotton and cotton goods, 25 crores; grain, 16 crores; jute, 11 crores; opium, 11 crores; seeds, 10 crores; tea and hides, each, 5 crores; indigo, 4 crores; wool, 2 crores; coffee,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  crores.

The wool exported is chiefly from Baluchistan and Afghanistan. There is some trade with Persia by coasting vessels, and overland with Central Asia. Asafetida,<sup>1</sup> dried fruits, etc., are imported.

**Roads.**—Formerly, India had no roads except mere tracks. People travelled in palanquins, on ponies, or on foot; goods were often carried by bullocks. When famines occurred, grain could not be sent from districts having plentiful harvests, and multitudes sometimes perished. Good roads have been made by the British Government in many parts of the country. There are now 140,000 miles of road.

**RAILWAYS.**—The principal cities of India are now connected by Railways. Upwards of 17,000 miles of railway are already open, and about 3,000 miles additional are in course of construction.

The country is now being covered with a network of railways. The first portion opened was from Bombay to Tanna in 1853. The principal lines are described under each Province, and a summary is afterwards given. The sum spent on new lines is 4 crores a year. The total cost from the commencement has been 228 crores. The number of passengers carried during 1891 was 123 millions.

**TELEGRAPHS.**<sup>2</sup>—There are about 37,000 miles of telegraphic lines in India. Messages can be sent to England in less than an hour.

**EDUCATION.**—In ancient times knowledge was confined to a few: education is now spreading among all classes.

Formerly learning was monopolised<sup>3</sup> by the Brahmans; shopkeepers acquired only some knowledge of accounts. The British Government, besides establishing English Colleges, has opened large numbers of vernacular schools throughout the country. The expenditure on education exceeds 2 crores a year, and the number of pupils is nearly 4 millions. Each great Province has a University.

<sup>1</sup> A kind of gum having a strong smell; *fæt'vidus*, having a bad smell. <sup>2</sup> Machines for sending news quickly: *tele*, afar off; *grapho*; to write. <sup>3</sup> Got the whole of: *mon-as*, single; *po-le-o*, to sell; became the only sellers of.

## RELIGIONS.

Demon worship prevailed amongst the original inhabitants, and still exists in many parts of the country.

They supposed that sickness and other calamities were caused by evil spirits, whom they sought to propitiate<sup>1</sup> by offerings.

The Aryan race worshipped Indra, the sky; Agni, fire; the sun, etc. Afterwards new gods were invented, till they are now commonly said to amount to 33 crores.

The Aryans probably first worshipped God under the name of *Dyaus-pitar*, Heaven-Father. Afterwards the sky, the wind, fire, the sun, etc., were regarded as separate gods. This is the system of the *Vedas*, the oldest sacred books of the Hindus, probably composed about 1200 B.C. Indra, lord of the firmament,<sup>2</sup> is the principal god; Agni, the god of fire, occupies an important place. Vishnu is spoken of as an inferior deity, but Siva, Krishna and Durga are not mentioned, nor is the system of caste recognised.

In course of time the gods celebrated in the Vedic hymns lost favour. New deities came into notice, and were celebrated in books called *Puranas*. The most ancient *Puranas* were composed about eight centuries<sup>3</sup> after Christ; the most recent, about four hundred years ago. They are written in praise of particular deities, each of whom is in each *Purana* described as the most exalted of all the gods. Hinduism attaches great importance to ceremonies and to food.

Buddhism originated in North India, and at one time it spread over a great part of the country. Benares was a Buddhist city for several centuries. Afterwards it was nearly rooted out.

Jainism, resembling Buddhism, has a number of adherents, especially in Western India.

**Muhammadanism** is professed by about one-fifth of the people of India.

Muhammadanism was first introduced by the Afghan conquerors. It prevails most in Bengal and on the western frontier.

The *Sikh Religion* is a mixture of Muhammadanism and Brahmanism.

There are some Parsis on the Western Coast, descendants of emigrants from Persia.

**Christianity** is now making progress in different parts of India.

The first Protestant Mission to India was commenced in 1706 at Tranquebar. There are now about 600,000 Protestant Christians in India, and their number is increasing every year. There are about

<sup>1</sup> Please. <sup>2</sup> *Sky*; *firmus*, strong, fixed. <sup>3</sup> Hundreds of years; *centum*, a hundred.

a million Roman Catholics, chiefly in South India. Some Syrian Christians have been settled on the south-western coast for many centuries. The total number of Christians in 1891 was 2½ millions.

### FORMER POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

**ANCIENT INDIA.**—Before the Muhammadan invasions, India was divided into several different kingdoms, frequently at war with one another. Their history is very uncertain.

The most celebrated kingdoms in ancient times were AYODHYA and HASTINAPURA, the former celebrated in the Ramayana, the latter in the Mahabharata. MAGADHA became distinguished under its Buddhist king Asóka, whose power extended from the Bay of Bengal to the frontiers of Afghanistan. UJJAIN was famous for a time under Vikramaditya. There were several kingdoms in the Deccan.

**MUHAMMADAN PERIOD.**—The Afghans founded several kingdoms in India which were subdued by the Mogul Emperors, whose power at one time extended over nearly the whole country. The governors of provinces often declared themselves independent,<sup>1</sup> when the imperial<sup>2</sup> power was feeble.

The Muhammadans first invaded India under Mahmud of Ghazni, about the year 1000, and gradually subdued many of the Hindu sovereigns.<sup>3</sup> In 1525, Baber, a Tartar prince, put an end to the Afghan dominion by defeating the emperor in the battle of Panipat, and seated himself on the throne of Delhi. Baber was the first of the race of monarchs known as the "Great Moguls" of India. The empire he founded was greatly enlarged by his successors, and under Aurungzebe (1658–1707) included nearly the whole of the country. The Mahrattas then became the ruling race, till they were subdued by the English.

### PRESENT POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

The present political divisions of India are:—

- I. BRITISH POSSESSIONS.
- II. PROTECTED NATIVE STATES.
- III. INDEPENDENT AND FOREIGN STATES.

<sup>1</sup> Not under others: *in*, not; *de*, from; *pendo*, to hang. <sup>2</sup> Belonging to an emperor: *im'-pe-ro*, to command. <sup>3</sup> Kings.

## BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

British India was formerly divided into the Bengal Presidency<sup>1</sup> in the north ; the Madras Presidency in the south ; and the Bombay Presidency in the west. The present principal political divisions are as follows :—

Under Governors or Lieutenant<sup>2</sup>-Governors.

The LOWER PROVINCES of BENGAL, the NORTH-WEST PROVINCES and OUDH, the PUNJAB, the BOMBAY PRESIDENCY, and the MADRAS PRESIDENCY.

## Under Chief Commissioners, etc.

ASSAM and the CENTRAL PROVINCES. BERAR, AJMERE, and COORG, are smaller divisions.

The Portuguese were the first Europeans to reach India, where they formed several settlements. They were followed by the Dutch. In the year 1600 some merchants in England, with the permission of Queen Elizabeth, formed the East India Company for the purpose of trading with India. The Company gradually acquired political influence. During A.D. 1740-48 there was a struggle between the English and French in India, in which the former were victorious. The battle of Plassy in 1757 secured possession of Bengal, and laid the foundation of the British Indian Empire. In 1833 the right of the Company to the exclusive trade with India terminated, and the Sepoy Rebellion in 1857 led to the transfer of the government directly to the British Crown in 1858. The Queen of England was proclaimed Kaiser-i-Hind (Empress of India) at Delhi in 1877.

GOVERNMENT.—The Home Government of India is conducted by a Secretary of State, aided by a Council. In India, the Governor-General in Council presides over the whole. The Legislative<sup>3</sup> Council for India enacts laws for the whole country ; Calcutta, the North-West Provinces, Madras and Bombay have Legislative Councils which pass laws for the territories in which they are situated. The Courts of Justice are presided over by Judges, Magistrates and other Officers ; the revenue<sup>4</sup> is collected by Collectors and their Assistants. Each District has a Collector or Deputy Commissioner, with officers under him. Several Districts usually form a Division, under a Commissioner.

REVENUE.—The annual Revenue of British India, including railway earnings, is about 86 crores of rupees.

1. A tract of country under a president : *pra*, before ; *sedo*, to sit. The chief British officers at Calcutta, &c., were first called Presidents. 2 *Lieutenant*, one who acts for another : *lieu*, place ; *tenir*, to hold. 3 *Legis*, law. 4 The income of a state.

The land revenue is the principal item,<sup>1</sup> yielding about 24 crores. In the Madras and Bombay Presidencies, revenue is generally paid directly to the Government by the ryots; in Bengal it is collected by landholders, called Zemindars; in the North-West Provinces, payments are made to Government chiefly by villages.

Railway earnings amount to about 18 crores a year.

Salt yields about 8 crores, and opium about 7½ crores. The taxes paid by each person amount to about 2½ rupees a year. With this money, Government maintains soldiers and police, supports judges, makes roads, &c. If no taxes were paid, every person would require to keep a sword or gun to defend himself; when he had a case against any person, there would be no one to decide it; there would be no roads, no letter-post, &c.

The British Possessions contain about 944,000 square miles, with a population of about 220 millions.

### PROTECTED STATES.

There are upwards of 160 Native States in India protected by the British Government. They contain about 640,000 square miles, with a population of about 66 millions. Most of them are very small.

Some of the Protected States are under the local<sup>2</sup> British Administrations; <sup>3</sup> others are under the Government of India. Some of the principal Native States have English officers, called *Residents*.

### THE LOWER PROVINCES.

The Lower Provinces include BENGAL, ORISSA, BEHAR, and CHOTA NAGPORE. They form the largest, richest, and most populous division of India. The area is nearly 152,000 square miles, or including the Native States, nearly 190,000 square miles.

The shape is oblong.<sup>4</sup> The Lower Provinces contain about one-ninth of India.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 71 millions,—nearly one-fourth of the whole of India. *Bengali, Hindi, Urdu, Uriya*, and several aborig'inal languages are spoken.

<sup>1</sup> Article. <sup>2</sup> Belonging to a place, not general; *locus*, a place. <sup>3</sup> Governments Longer than broad.

The population is about double that of the Madras Presidency. The number of inhabitants to the square mile is 474. The Lower Provinces, as a whole, rank first in density<sup>1</sup> of population. Bengali is spoken by about 41 millions; Hindi and Urdu by about 20 millions; Uriya by 6 millions; and aboriginal languages by about 4 millions.

**REVENUE.**—The revenue is about 20 crores a year.

Opium yields about 4 crores. The land-tax is the lightest in India.

**COMMERCE.**—More than one-third of the trade of India passes through Calcutta. The principal *imports* are cotton goods, metals, machinery, salt, oil, and liquors. The *exports* are opium, rice, jute, oil-seeds, indigo, hides, tea, silk, and saltpetre.

The annual value of the foreign trade is about 67 crores. Out of every rupee of the foreign trade of India, Calcutta has about 6 annas.

**RAILWAYS.**—There are several lines of railway. The East Indian Railway follows the Ganges, and has a cross line. The Eastern Bengal Railway runs eastward; the Northern Bengal Railway goes to Darjiling; the Bengal and North-Western Railway runs north-west to Oudh; the Bengal-Nagpur Railway has a south-westerly course to Nagpur. There are several shorter lines. The Bengal-Assam Railway is now in course of construction.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Lower Provinces are under a Lieutenant-Governor, with a Legislative Council.

The Diwani, or right of collecting the revenue in the Lower Provinces, was conferred on the English by Shah Alam in 1765. The first Lieutenant-Governor was appointed in 1853. Previously, the Lower Provinces were under the Governor-General.

**RELIGION.**—About one-third of the people are Muhammadans; the remainder are chiefly Hindus.

About one-half of the Bengalis and one-eighth of the people of Behar are Muhammadans.

### BENGAL.

BENGAL is bounded on the north by Nepal and Bhutan; on the east by Assam and Burma; on the south by the Bay of Bengal; and on the west by Behar.

<sup>1</sup> Closeness.

Bengal proper contains about 70,000 square miles, and forms about one-twentieth of the whole of India.

**SURFACE.**—The centre of Bengal is a vast plain, formed by the lower courses of the Ganges and Brahmaputra. The northern and south-eastern frontiers are hilly.

**RIVERS.**—Lower Bengal is intersected<sup>1</sup> by numerous branches of the Ganges and Brahmaputra. The Western branch of the Ganges, called the Hugli, enters the sea at Sagar Island.

About the end of July, the Ganges and Brahmaputra overflow their banks, and inundate<sup>2</sup> the country for more than one hundred miles in breadth. People go out to their work in canoes. The Hugli is formed by the junction of the Bhagirathi and Jalangi. The Bhagirathi is considered by the Hindus to be the real Ganges, but the main stream, called the Podda, flows eastward. The **Matabhanga** is a large branch of the Ganges which falls into the Hugli.

There are several smaller rivers in Bengal. The **Kusi** rises in Nepal, and after forming part of the boundary between Behar and Bengal, joins the Ganges. The **Tista** flows through Sikkim, and has a south-easterly course into the Brahmaputra. The **Damodar** rises in Behar, and after a south-easterly course, enters the Hugli.

There are numerous **Jhils**, or shallow lakes, in Bengal, most of which dry up during the hot season.

**CLIMATE.**—The seasons are divided into the hot, the rainy, and the cold.

The rains commence in June. Cyclones sometimes cause great destruction in the districts near the mouths of the rivers. In 1876, a storm-wave swept over part of the Bakerganj district, drowning many thousand people.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Bengal is chiefly one large rice-producing plain. Oil-seeds, jute, indigo, sugar, and tobacco, are other articles of produce. The silk-worm is reared.

**PEOPLE.**—Out of every seven persons in India, one is a Bengali. In English education, the Bengalis are foremost in India.

The population is about 38 millions, or about 540 to the square mile. The people live chiefly in villages. There are very few large towns.

**COMMERCE.**—Much of the produce of the North-West Provinces passes through Bengal, in addition to its own trade. The numerous

<sup>1</sup> Divided into parts: *inter*, between; *sectum*, to cut. <sup>2</sup> Flood, cover with water; *unda*, a wave.

rivers facilitate<sup>1</sup> water carriage, but hinder the making of roads. Several lines of railway are open or in progress.

EARLY HISTORY.—The southern part of Bengal was anciently called BANGA. It was generally subject to other states; but, at times, it was independent. Gaur and Nuddia were two capitals under the Hindus; Dacca and Murshidabad, under the Muhammadans.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.—Bengal contains 5 Divisions under Commissioners; viz., in the centre, the PRESIDENCY, RAJSHAHI with Cooch Behar; in the east, DACCA and CHITTAGONG; in the west, BURDWAN. The Divisions contain 24 Districts.

CENTRAL DISTRICTS.—PRESIDENCY DIVISION: Calcutta and Twenty-four Pergunnahs, Jessore, Nuddia, Murshidabad. RAJSHAHI DIVISION: Dinagepore, Rajshahi, Rungpore, Bogra, Pubna, Darjiling, Julpaiguri.

EASTERN DISTRICTS.—DACCA DIVISION: Dacca, Furidpore, Bakarganj, Mymensing. CHITTAGONG DIVISION: Chittagong, Noakhali, Tipperah, and Chittagong Hill Tracts.

WESTERN DISTRICTS.—BURDWAN DIVISION: Hugli, Burdwan, Bankura, Birbhum, Midnapore.

### Central Districts.

CALCUTTA, the capital of British India, and a great commercial city, is situated on the River Hugli. It was a small village when the English formed their first settlement in 1687; the population, including the suburbs,<sup>2</sup> is now 862,000. On account of its numerous fine buildings, Calcutta is sometimes called the "City of Palaces." It is defended by Fort William. For population, it is the second city in the British Empire.

Calcutta stands on the eastern bank of the Hugli, about 80 miles from the sea. The country around is flat and marshy. Europeans live chiefly in the southern part of the city, called Chowringhi.

Calcutta is near the northern limit of the Torrid Zone. Canton, Mecca, and Havana have about the same latitude. The longitude of Calcutta is 88° east. When it is 6 o'clock in the evening at Calcutta, it is noon in London. Calcutta is about 8,000 miles distant from London by the Suez Canal.

Calcutta is included in the TWENTY-FOUR PERGUNNAHS, a district to the east of the Hugli. Alipore, four miles south of Fort William, is the residence of the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal. Dum Dum,

<sup>1</sup> Make easy; *facilitate*, easy. <sup>2</sup> The outer parts of a city: *sub*, under; *urbs*, a city.

north-east of Calcutta, is a military<sup>1</sup> station. **Barrackpore**, north of Calcutta, is a large military station, and contains the Governor-General's country-house. **Port Canning**, on the Mutla, and **Diamond Harbour**, on the Hugli, are connected with Calcutta by railways.

**JESSORE**, to the east of the Twenty-four Pergunnahs and Nuddia, has the Sundarbans for its southern boundary. The chief station is Jessore, north-east of Calcutta. The Bengal Central Railway connects Jessore with Calcutta, and extends south-east to **Khulna**.

**NUDDIA**, to the north of the Twenty-four Pergunnahs, is a rich district, producing large quantities of grain, indigo, and silk. The principal station is **Krishnagar**, on the Jalangi. Southward on the Hugli, **Santipore**, noted for its cotton cloths.

**Nuddia**, on the Bhagirathi, formerly celebrated for its Sanskrit schools, was the capital of Bengal when it was conquered by the Muhammadans, 1203 A.D.

**Plassey** was a small village north of Calcutta, on the Bhagirathi, near which Clive, by a great victory, secured possession of Bengal, A.D. 1757.

The river now flows over part of the site.

**MURSHIDABAD** lies to the west of the Ganges, which divides it from Maldah and Rajshahi. It is noted for its indigo and silk.

**Murshidabad**, on the Bhagirathi, was the last Muhammadan capital of Bengal. Close to it are **Cossimbazar**, once noted for its silk manufactures, and **Berhampore**, the civil station.

Murshidabad contains many Muhammadans. It is the residence of the Nawab Nazim of Bengal, and is connected by a branch with the East Indian Railway.

**PUBNA** lies to the north of Jessore. The chief station, **Pubna**, is on a branch of the Ganges. **Sirajganj**, noted for its jute trade, is near the western branch of the Brahmaputra.

**RAJSHAHI**, to the north of the main stream of the Ganges, abounds with marshes. **Rampore Bauleah**, on the Ganges, is the chief station.

**DINAGEPORE** is situated to the north of Rajshahi. **Dinagepore**, the principal station, is near the centre of the district.

**BOGRA** lies to the north-east of Rajshahi. **Bogra**, the principal station, is towards the centre.

**RUNGPORE**, south of Cooch Behar, is intersected by the Tista. **Rungpore**, the principal station, is near the centre.

<sup>1</sup> Belonging to soldiers ; miles, a soldier. •

DARJILING is a thinly-peopled, mountainous district in the north. Darjiling, the principal station, is visited by Europeans on account of its cool climate.

The district formed part of Sikkim. There are several tea plantations. The station Darjiling is 7,000 feet above the sea. It is connected with Calcutta by rail.

JALPAIGURI lies to the south-east of Darjiling. Jalpaiguri is a small town on the Tista.

### Eastern Districts.

DACCA is situated to the west of the Megna. Dacca, the chief town, on the Burhaganga, was a Muhammadan capital, and once famed for its fine muslins.

The population of Dacca is about 84,000. Next to Calcutta and Howrah, it is the largest town in Bengal. A railway extends northward from Dacca to Mymensing, and is continued southward to Narayanganj, which may be considered the port of Dacca.

FURIDPORE lies between Dacca and Jessor. Furidpore, the chief station, is near the Ganges. Goalundo, northward near the junction of the Konai and Ganges, is the terminus<sup>1</sup> of the Eastern Bengal Railway.

BAKARGANJ, south of Dacca, produces large quantities of rice, and is sometimes called the granary of Calcutta. Dakhin Shabazpore and other marshy islands near the sea form the eastern part of the Sundarbans. The chief station is Barisal, near the centre of the district.

MYMENSING is a large district to the north of Dacca. The northern parts are hilly; the southern, flat and marshy. Chief station, Mymensing, on the Brahmaputra, near the centre.

NOAKHALI, a marshy district at the mouth of the Megna, includes Sandwip and other islands. Chief stations, Noakhali, near the Megna, in the south; north-west, Bulloah.

TIPPERAH lies to the east of Dacca. Chief station, Comillah, in the east.

CHITTAGONG extends along the north-eastern coast of the Bay of Bengal. The interior is covered with forest; the coast is well cultivated. The people resemble the Burmese. Chief station, Chittagong, on the Chittagong River.

Chittagong has some trade. Rice and timber are the chief exports. Ship-building is carried on to some extent. A railway to connect Chittagong and Assam is in progress.

<sup>1</sup> One of the ends of a railway.

### Western Districts.

HUGLI, the most densely-peopled district in Bengal, is bounded on the east by the River Hugli. The chief station is **Hugli**, where the English had a factory<sup>1</sup> before Calcutta was founded. Near Hugli, **Chinsurah**, formerly a Dutch settlement. **Chandernagore**, south of Chinsurah, belongs to the French. **Serampore**, still farther south, was ceded to Britain by the Danes. **Howrah**, opposite Calcutta, is the largest town in the district, and a great railway station.

The name of the district is derived from *hogla*, marsh-reeds. Serampore is noted as the residence of the early Missionaries in Bengal. Howrah is connected with Calcutta by a bridge of boats, and is sometimes reckoned as one of its suburbs. The population, including the suburbs, is about 130,000.

BURDWAN, north of Hugli, is a very rich district. Chief station, **Burdwan**, on the Damodar, the residence of a wealthy Raja.

**Culna** and **Cutwa** are trading towns on the Bhagirathi.

BIRBHUM lies to the north-west of Burdwan. Chief station, **Suri**, towards the centre.

BANKURA, west of Burdwan, is noted for its coal. Chief station, **Bankura**, in the west. Northward, on the Damodar, **Raniganj**, with coal mines.

MIDNAPORE adjoins Orissa, to which it once belonged. The river Rupnarayan separates it from the Hugli district, and it is watered by the **Kasai** and **Subanrekha**. Chief station, **Midnapore**, on the Kasai; on the Rupnarayan, **Tamluk**, once famous for its trade.

**Mymensing** is the largest District; **Dinagepore** is the smallest. Twenty-four **Pergunnahs** has most inhabitants; **Hugli** is the most densely peopled, 828 to the square mile; the **Chittagong Hill Tracts** have the smallest population, and are the most thinly peopled.

### ORISSA.

ORISSA extends along the north-western coast of the Bay of Bengal, from the Chilka Lake to a little beyond the mouth of the **Subanrekha**.<sup>2</sup> It is about the size of Ceylon.

The area is 24,000 square miles. The name is derived from Odradesa, the country of the **Odras**. In ancient times it was called

<sup>1</sup> Place of business; *factor*, doer. <sup>2</sup> Properly *Subarnarekha*, "streak of gold."

UTKALA. It was conquered by the Mahrattas, from whom it was taken by the British in 1803.

SURFACE.—The shores are low, marshy, and subject to inundations of the sea. Farther inland, there are fertile undulating<sup>1</sup> tracts; but the greater part of the interior consists of rugged hills, covered with jungle, and infested by wild beasts.

The principal rivers are the **Mahanadi**, **Brahmani**, and **Baitarani**, which are all connected in the lower part of their course. There is a navigable canal between the Hugli and Cuttack. The East Coast Railway, between Calcutta and Madras, will pass through Orissa.

CLIMATE, ETC.—The climate is hot, and the interior is feverish. Rice is the chief crop.

PEOPLE.—The Uriyas, who inhabit the coast, speak a language very like Bengali. The hill districts are thinly peopled by aboriginal tribes.

The total population is above 5 millions. The Uriyas are ignorant and superstitious,<sup>2</sup> but education is extending. The aboriginal tribes speak different languages and are very rude.

DIVISIONS.—The coast is divided into the districts of **BALASORE** in the north, **CUTTACK** in the centre, and **PURI** in the south. The hill districts, forming two-thirds of the province, are under tributary chiefs.

The hill districts are called *Mahals*, from *mahall*, an Arabic word, meaning place.

**Balasore**, up a small river, is a straggling port, sometimes visited by Maldivian vessels.

**Cuttack** (The Fort), the largest town in the province, is on the Mahanadi. Steamers now touch at **False Point**, near the mouth of the river. **Puri**, on the coast, is noted for its temple of **Jagannath**.

Human bones are found scattered in the neighbourhood, as many of the pilgrims die of disease.

### BEHAR.

BEHAR, between Bengal and the North-West Provinces, is a large and fertile province, extending over both banks of the Ganges. It is rather less than half the size of Bengal.

<sup>1</sup> Rising and falling like waves. <sup>2</sup> Attending carefully to unimportant things in religion: *super*, above; *osto*, to stand.

The name is derived from *vihāra*, a monastery.<sup>1</sup> In ancient times, it included the kingdom of Magadha, and was the chief seat of Buddhism. Behar was an important province under Muhammadan rule. The area is about 44,000 square miles.

The northern and central parts consist of well-watered plains. The Rajmahal Hills extend in a south-westerly direction from the Ganges.

The Ganges traverses<sup>2</sup> the province. The Gandak, from the Himalayas, and the Sone, from the south, are tributaries of the Ganges.

The climate is dry and temperate.

Great quantities of saltpetre are manufactured. Rice, wheat, and barley, are grown largely; a considerable proportion of the opium exported from India is produced in this province. Cotton cloths are manufactured extensively.

PEOPLE.—The population of Behar is about two-thirds that of Bengal. *Hindi* and *Urdu* are the principal languages. The people, living on wheat, millet, and barley, are stronger than the Bengalis, whose chief food is rice.

The population is about 24 millions, 552 to the square mile. Behar is the most densely peopled province of India. There are some Santals and other tribes.

BEHAR is divided into the BHAGULPORE Division in the east, and the PATNA Division in the west.

DISTRICTS.—The Bhagulpore Division includes BHAGULPORE and MONGHYR on both sides of the Ganges; with MALDAH and PURNIAH, north of the Ganges, and the SANTAL PERGUNNAHS, south of the Ganges, both bordering on Bengal. The Patna Division includes PATNA, GAYA, and SHAHABAD, south of the Ganges; with DARBHANGAH, MOZUFFERPORE, SARAN, and CHAMPARAN, north of the Ganges.

Maldah, transferred from Bengal in 1876, is smallest in size and has fewest inhabitants. The Santal Pergunnahs form the largest district. Darbhanga has most inhabitants. Saran is the most densely peopled district, having 870 inhabitants to the square mile.

TOWNS.—The principal towns in Behar are along the banks of the Ganges, near which runs the East Indian Railway.

MALDAH is a small district to the east of the Ganges. The principal station is Maldah. The ruins of Gaur, the once splendid capital of Bengal, are near the Ganges.

Gaur was deserted<sup>3</sup> in the 16th century, for its unhealthiness.

<sup>1</sup> A house for priests; *monos*, alone. <sup>2</sup> Crosses: *trans*, across; *versum*, to turn.

<sup>3</sup> Left; forsaken.

**Rajmahal**, the chief town in the Santal Pergunnahs, is near the Ganges. It contains the ruins of a palace.

The SANTAL PERGUNNAHS stretch in a south-westerly direction from the bend of the Ganges to the Barakur River. They include the Rajmahal Hills, and are inhabited by aboriginal tribes. The Santals, who live chiefly near the base of the hills, entered India from the north-east. Oppressed by money-lenders, they invaded the surrounding districts in 1855. The Hills are also occupied by the Paharis, another aboriginal tribe, belonging to the Dravidian family.

**Bhagulpore** is situated on the Ganges, which is 7 miles wide at this point. **Monghyr**, on the Ganges, is an ancient town, once noted for its fort.

At Lakkisarai, beyond Monghyr, the "chord,"<sup>1</sup> or straight line of the East Indian Railway, joins the "loop," or semi-circular,<sup>2</sup> line.

**Patna**, on the Ganges, is the largest city in Behar. **Bankipore**, the civil station, and **Dinapore**, the military station, lie to the westward.

Patna is supposed to be the same as **Pataliputra**, or **Palibothra**, the capital of the ancient kingdom of Magadha. The population is about 165,000. Behar opium is collected at Patna.

**Gaya**, a noted place of pilgrimage, lies south of Patna.

It is connected with Patna by rail. Under a pipal, or bo-tree, at this place, Buddha is supposed to have attained all knowledge. North-east of Gaya, Behar, an ancient town from which the province took its name.

**Mozufferpore**, the chief station in West Tirhut, lies north of Patna; **Darbhanga** is the chief station in East Tirhut. The Tirhut Railway connects them with the Ganges.

Tirhut was anciently called **MITHILA**. It contains many indigo factories. Darbhanga is the residence of a wealthy Raja.

**Arrah**, on the East Indian Railway, is the chief station in Shahabad; westward, on the Ganges, **Buxar**.

At Buxar a noted battle took place in 1761.

**Chapra**, near the Ganges, is the chief station in the Saran district.

1 A straight line like the string of a bow. 2 Half-round.

## CHOTA NAGPORE.

The modern province of CHOTA NAGPORE, or, more correctly, Chutia Nagpore, consists of several hilly districts between Behar and the Central Provinces. In area the province is as large as Behar ; but the population is only about 5 millions, consisting chiefly of aboriginal tribes.

Much of the country forms a table-land. Parasnath, the highest point, 4,500 feet above the sea, is a place of Jain pilgrimage. The country suffered greatly during the Mahratta invasions, and much of it is covered with jungle.

The districts are HAZARIBAGH, LOHARDAGGA, SINGBHUM, MANBHUM, and the TRIBUTARY MAHALS.

The principal station is Ranchi, in Lohardugga, or Chota Nagpore, the largest district in the Lower Provinces. Hazaribagh is the chief station in the district of the same name.

The Kols and Oraons are two of the principal aboriginal tribes. Many of them have become Christians.

LARGEST TOWNS.—Calcutta, population, 862,000 ; Patna, 167,000 ; Howrah, 130,000 ; Dacca, 82,000 ; Gaya, 80,000 ; Darbhanga, 73,000 ; Bhagulpore, 69,000 ; Monghyr, 57,000 ; Chupra, 57,000 ; Cuttack, 43,000.

## Native States in the Lower Provinces.

The Native States under the Lieutenant-Governor of Bengal contain nearly 36,000 square miles, with a population of about 3½ millions. Numerous small tributary states in Chota Nagpore and Orissa include about three-fourths of the whole. The other states are SIKKIM, a small mountainous country between Nepal and Bhutan ; COOCH BEHAR, south of Bhutan ; and HILL TIPPERAH, a thinly-peopled district to the east of Tipperah.

MUNIPORE, between Assam and Burma, is a mountainous country, thinly peopled. The LUSHAI HILLS, to the south, contain a wild tribe who sometimes go hunting for human heads.

## ASSAM.

ASSAM and some hilly districts to the south were separated from the Lower Provinces in 1874, and formed into a new Province, under a Chief Commissioner. Sylhet was

afterwards added. The area is about 49,000 square miles, but the population is only about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  millions. The greater part of the Province is very thinly peopled.

Assam formed part of the ancient Hindu kingdom of KAMRUP. The name is derived from the *Ahoms*, a tribe by whom it was conquered. Assam was taken by the British from the Burmese in 1824. The population is about 112 to the square mile.

Assam consists of a long narrow valley, watered by the Brahmaputra. The northern and southern frontiers are hilly. The first tea plantations in India were formed in Assam. Good coal is found in the Province.

The districts of Assam are GOALPARA, next to Bengal, KAMRUP, DARRANG, NOWGONG, SIBSAGAR and LUCKIMPORE.

TOWNS.—**Gowhati**, in Kamrup, on the Brahmaputra, is the largest town in Assam, but it has only about 12,000 inhabitants. The other places are mere bazaars.

**Sibsagar**, in the east, is the centre of the tea plantations. Steamers from Goalundo ascend the Brahmaputra as far as **Dibrogarh**. Railways are in progress.

The **NAGA**, **JAINTIA**, **KHASI** and **GARO HILLS**, to the south of Assam, are chiefly covered with forest. They are inhabited by wild tribes, with features somewhat like the Chinese.

**Shillong**, the highest peak of the Khasi Hills, is 6,450 feet above the sea. It is now the chief station, Cherrapunji having been abandoned on account of its excessive rainfall.

**SYLHET**, south of the Khasi Hills, is peopled chiefly by Bengalis. It is noted for its oranges.

The north, east, and south are hilly. Chief station, **Sylhet**, on the Surma, or Barak, which falls into the Megna.

**CACHAR**, east of Sylhet, is noted for its tea plantations. **Silchar**, on the Barak, is the principal station.

### THE NORTH-WEST PROVINCES AND OUDH.

These two divisions of British India were united under one Lieutenant-Governor in 1877. They contain 108,000 square miles, with a population of 47 millions. Among the British Provinces, they rank second in population, and fifth in area.

There are 436 inhabitants to the square mile. The two divisions rank second in density of population.

The total revenue is about 11 crores.

### THE NORTH-WEST PROVINCES.

THE NORTH-WEST PROVINCES are bounded on the north by the Himalayas, Oudh and Nepal; on the east by Behar; on the south by Rewah, Bundelkhand and Gwalior; on the west by Rajputana and the Punjab. They form a semicircle around Oudh.

The area is about 83,000 square miles. The North-West Provinces, rather larger than Bengal, contain about one-eighteenth of India. They do not form the north-west of India, but the north-west of the former Bengal Presidency.

**SURFACE.**—The country, in general, is an immense plain, traversed by the Ganges and Jumna, with their numerous tributaries.

The country between the Ganges and the Jumna is called *the Doab*, from *da*, two, and *ab*, water. There are several doabs in India, but this is the most important.

The plain gently slopes from Saharunpore, 1,000 feet above the sea, to Benares, 347 feet above the sea. There are mountainous districts in the Himalayas. The **Sewalik Hills** are a low range, near the foot of the Himalayas, between the Beas and Ganges. The **Ramganga** joins the Ganges from the north; the **Betwa** is a tributary of the Jumna from the south.

**PRODUCTS.**—Grain, opium, oil-seeds, sugar, cotton, indigo, and tea, are the principal vegetable productions. Saltpetre is collected in some quantities.

The climate is hotter in summer and colder in winter than that of Bengal. The rainfall is not large. Canals, from the Ganges and the Jumna, water extensive tracts. Wheat is the chief grain.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 34 millions. **Hindi** and **Urdu** are the prevailing languages. About one in eight of the people are **Muhammadans**; nearly all the rest are Hindus.

The North-West Provinces contain about one-eighth of the people of India. The population is next to that of the Madras Presidency.

**RAILWAYS.**—The East Indian Railway runs south of the Ganges, with a branch line to Jubulpore. The Oudh and Rohilkhand Railway connects the principal districts north of the Ganges. The

Indian Midland Railway runs south-west from Cawnpore; and there are other lines.

GOVERNMENT.—The North-West Provinces are under a Lieutenant-Governor.

A Legislative Council was recently granted.

KANAUJ, near the Ganges, was the seat of a great Hindu kingdom. Agra was, for a time, the capital of the Mogul Empire. Benares was acquired by the British in 1775, and most of the other districts were ceded to them about the beginning of the present century. In 1833, the Bengal Presidency was divided into the Lower Provinces and the Upper, or North-West, Provinces.

The land tax is generally paid to Government by villages—not by separate individuals.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.—The North-West Provinces include 7 Divisions: towards the centre, ALLAHABAD and JHANSI; eastward, BENARES and GORAKHPORE; westward, AGRA and MEERUT; north-east of the Ganges, ROHILKHAND and KUMAUN (ku-moun'). The Divisions contain 37 Districts.

The ALLAHABAD DIVISION contains the districts of Allahabad, Fatehpur and Cawnpore, chiefly between the Jumna and Ganges; Jaunpur, north of the Ganges; with Banda and Humirpur, south of the Jumna.

ALLAHABAD,<sup>1</sup> the capital of the North-West Provinces, is situated at the junction<sup>2</sup> of the Ganges and Jumna. The population is about 175,000.

The seat of Government was transferred from Agra to Allahabad after the Mutiny. It was anciently called *Prayag* (confluence). Its present name was given by Akbar, who built the fort. Bathing here is regarded by the Hindus as an act of peculiar merit. Allahabad is 565 miles from Calcutta by rail, and 845 from Bombay.

Cawnpore, on the Ganges, is a large military station, with cotton and leather manufactures.

It is the second city with respect to population in the North-West Provinces, an important railway centre, and notorious<sup>3</sup> as the scene of Nana Sahib's massacre.<sup>4</sup>

The BENARES DIVISION includes the districts of Benares, Ballia, Azamgarh, Basti, and Gorakhpore, north of the Ganges; with Ghazipore and Mirzapore, south of the Ganges.

<sup>1</sup> City of God. <sup>2</sup> Joining; *junctus*, joined. <sup>3</sup> Well-known in a bad sense; *noto*, to mark. <sup>4</sup> Killing, slaughter.

**Benares**, or **Kasi**, the largest city in the North-West Provinces, is situated on the Ganges, and is much frequented by Hindu pilgrims.

It is noted for its stone-built houses, its narrow streets, and its numerous temples and ghats. There is a fine railway bridge over the Ganges. Aurungzebe pulled down the most sacred temple of the Hindus and built a mosque on its site. The Europeans live at *Secrole*, about 3 miles from the city. The population is about 220,000. Benares is 476 miles from Calcutta by rail.

**GHAZIPORE**, east of Benares, on the Ganges, is noted for its rose-water and opium agency. Lord Cornwallis died here in 1805.

**Mirzapore**, west of Benares, on the Ganges, is a place of some trade.

**Chunar**, east of Mirzapore, on the Ganges, has an ancient fort and sandstone quarries. The south of the Mirzapore district is hilly.

**GORAKHPORE** lies between the Gogra and Nepal. Chief town, **Gorakhpore**, on the Rapti.

The **JHANSI** DIVISION is in Bundelkhand, south of the Jumna. The districts are Jalaun, in the north; Jhansi, in the middle; and Lalitpur in the south. Chief town, **Jhansi**, lately ceded by Sindhia, an important railway junction.

The **AGRA** DIVISION contains the districts of Agra, on both sides of the Jumna; Etawah, Mainpuri and Farrukhabad to the eastward; Etah to the north, and Muttra to the north-west.

**Agra**, on the Jumna, was the capital of the Mogul Empire before the Government was removed to Delhi.

The population of Agra is rather less than that of Allahabad. Near Agra is the *Taj*, the mausoleum<sup>1</sup> of Shah Jehan and his favourite consort,<sup>2</sup> the finest building in India. **Secundra**, about six miles from Agra, contains the tomb of Akbar. **Fatehpur Sikri**, to the south-west, was a favourite residence of Akbar.

**Farrukhabad** is a place of some trade near the Ganges. Close to it is **Fatehgarh**, the headquarters of the district.

**Kanauj**, near the junction of the Kalinadi and the Ganges, was in ancient times one of the greatest cities in India. **Muttra**, north-west of Agra, on the Jumna, is the reputed birthplace of Krishna. Near it is **Brindabun**, with numerous temples.

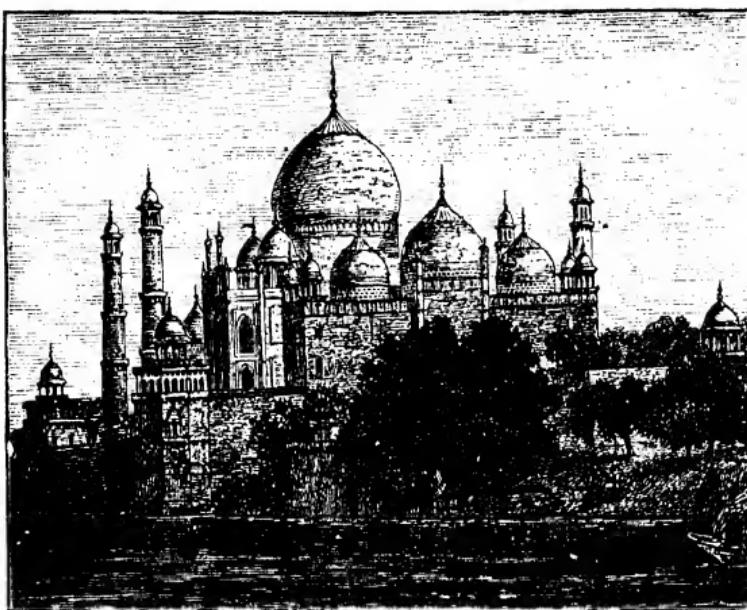
The **MEERUT** DIVISION includes the districts of Meerut in the centre; Aligarh and Bulandshahr in the south; with Muzaffarnagar, Saharanpur and Dehra Doon in the north.

<sup>1</sup> A very fine tomb, from Mausolus, an ancient king to whom a splendid tomb was erected. <sup>2</sup> Partner, here a Queen.

**Meerut**, situated midway between the Ganges and the Jumna, is a large civil and military station.

Here the Mutiny broke out in 1857.

**Aligarh**, close to which is **Koil**, lies to the north of Agra. **Saharunpore**, north of Meerut, is noted for its botanical<sup>1</sup> garden. **Hurdwar**,<sup>2</sup> on the Ganges where it leaves the mountains, is much frequented by pilgrims. **Rurki**, with an Engineering College, and the head of the Ganges Canal, are both near Hurdwar.



**DEHRA DOON**, or the valley of Dehra, between the Ganges and Jumna, is noted for its tea plantations. Chief station, **Dehra**. **Landour** and **Mussoori** are sanitaria.<sup>3</sup>

The **KUMAUN** DIVISION includes the mountainous districts of Kumaun and Garhwal. The chief station in Kumaun is **Almo'ra**. Southward, **Naini Tal**, a sanitarium, with a beautiful lake.

The **ROHILKHAND** DIVISION includes Shahjehanpore on the borders of Oudh; Philibhit, Bareilly, and Tarai, to the north; Budaun (budoun'), Moradabad, and Bijnaur, along the east bank of the Ganges.

This part of India derived its name from the Rohilla tribe of Afghans, by whom it was conquered.

<sup>1</sup> Belonging to plants; *botanē*, herb. <sup>2</sup> Vishnu's Gate. <sup>3</sup> Places visited for health; *sa'nus*, healthy. More correctly, *sanatorium*.

**Bareilly** is the largest town in Rohilkhand. South-east, **Shahjehanpore**; north-east, **Moradabad**, on the Ramganga.

**Kumaun** is the largest district; **Tarai** is the smallest and least populous; **Gorakhpore** is the most populous; **Benares** has the densest population, 800 to the square mile.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Benares, population, 220,000; Cawnpore, 189,000; Allahabad, 175,000; Agra, 169,000; Bareilly, 121,000; Meerut, 119,000; Shahjehanpore, 79,000; Farrukhabad, 78,000; Moradabad, 73,000; Saharunpore, 63,000; Aligarh or Koil, 61,000.

**AJMERE**, a small district near the centre of Rajputana, is now under the Governor-General. Chief town, **Ajmere**.

Ajmere is near Lake Pushkar, the source of the Luni. South-east, Nasirabad, a military station.

### Protected States in the North-West Provinces.

**RAMPORE**, noted for its chaddars, is a small state in Rohilkhand, containing many Rohilla Afghans. **Rampore** is the residence of the Nawab. **GARHWAL**, a mountainous district in the Himalayas, contains the sources both of the Ganges and Jumna. It is much visited by pilgrims. The chief town is **Tehri**.

### OUDH.

The province of OUDH lies between Nepal and the Ganges. The area is about 24,000 square miles—nearly the size of Ceylon.

The northern frontier forms part of the Tarai, or wooded marshes, lying along the base of the Lower Himalayas. The general surface is a plain, sloping to the south-east, intersected by the Gunti, Gogra, and numerous other streams.

The climate is dry, and subject to extremes of heat and cold.

The soil is rich. Wheat, rice, and other grains are raised; oil-seeds, sugar, opium, indigo, and cotton are likewise cultivated to some extent.

The province is traversed by the Oudh and Rohilkhand Railway; and there are other lines.

The population of Oudh is  $12\frac{1}{2}$  millions, of whom about one in ten are Muhammadans. The languages spoken are **Hindi** and **Urdu**.

The kingdom of Oudh, called **KOSALA**, ranked among the most ancient of India. Dasarath, the father of Rama, was one of its kings. It was subdued by the Muhammadans about the close of the twelfth century, but about 1740 the Nawab became independent. In 1856 it was annexed<sup>1</sup> to the British dominions, and was under a Chief Commissioner till 1877, when it was united with the North-West Provinces.

Formerly most of the Sepoys in the Bengal army belonged to Oudh.

**DIVISIONS.**—The four divisions of Oudh are, **LUCKNOW**, in the centre; **RAI BARELI** in the south; **FYZABAD** in the east; and **SITAPUR** in the north-west.

The divisions contain 12 Districts; **Lucknow**: Lucknow, Bara Banki, Onao; **Rai Bareli**: Rai Bareli, Sultanpur, and Partabgarh; **Fyzabad**: Fyzabad, Gonda, and Bahraich; **Sitapur**: Sitapur, Hardoi, and Kheri.

**TOWNS.**—**Lucknow**, the capital, on the Gumti, is a large city, with some splendid buildings.

There was a village said to have been founded by Lakshman, the brother of Rama, but the present city dates from last century. The population is about 273,000. In British India, Lucknow is next in size to Madras.

Eastward on the Gogra, **Fyzabad**. Near it are the ruins of **Ayodhya**, the ancient capital.

South of Fyzabad, **Sultanpur** on the Gumti; south-east of Lucknow, on a tributary of the Gumti, **Rai Bareli**.

### THE PUNJAB.

The **PUNJAB** is bounded on the north by Cashmere; on the east by the Jumna; on the south by Rajputana; and on the west by the Sulaiman Mountains. The area is about 111,000 square miles.

The name is derived from two Persian words, *panj*, five, and *ab*, water. The Punjab originally denoted the territory watered by the five rivers, the Jhelum, the Chenab, the Ravi, the Beas, and the Sutlej; but it is now applied to the large province including the north-west of India, about equal in area to the North-West Provinces and Oudh.

**SURFACE.**—The northern parts of the Punjab are hilly, and intersected by fertile valleys. The **Salt Range** stretches across the Indus, eastward to the Jhelum. The

<sup>1</sup> Joined to: *ad*, to; *nezum*, to join.

lower part of the country is a large plain, sloping to the south-west.

DOABS.—The rivers of the Punjab form five Doabs. The **Sind Sagar Doab**, the largest, is east of the Indus; the **Jetch Doab** is between the Jhelum and the Chenab; the **Rechna Doab**, between the Chenab and the Ravi; the **Bari Doab**, the most populous, between the Ravi and the Beas; the **Jalandhar Doab**, between the Beas and the Sutlej.

CLIMATE.—The summers are excessively hot, and the winters are colder than in any other province of India. The climate is dry. The rainfall, which is 40 inches a year near the foot of the hills, decreases to less than 10 inches a year towards Sind.

PRODUCTIONS.—The **Salt Range** is so called from the beds of salt which it contains. **Alum** is manufactured largely at **Kalabagh** (Black Garden), a small town, where the hills cross the Indus.

Many of the northern valleys are covered with rich verdure,<sup>1</sup> and the districts watered by rivers produce abundantly; but much of the country consists of sandy tracts, destitute<sup>2</sup> of vegetation, or covered with stunted jungle. Wheat is the chief grain. Kangra is noted for its tea.

The Western Jumna Canal, the Sutlej Canals, the Bari Doab Canal, etc., irrigate extensive tracts, and trees are being planted by the British Government. The silk-worm is reared in Multan. Wax and honey are produced largely. Cotton goods, silks and shawls are manufactured. Wool, fruit, asafoetida, and horses are imported from Afghanistan.

Large boats, with flat bottoms, ply on the rivers. The North-Western Railway extends from Delhi to Peshawar, and from Lahore down the Indus to Karachi, with several branch lines.

PEOPLE.—The population amounts to about 21 millions. The people are generally robust.<sup>3</sup> **Punjabi** is the principal language; **Urdu** is spoken in the towns, and **Pushtu** by the Afghans across the Indus. About one-half are Muhammadans; about two millions are Sikhs; the rest are chiefly Hindus.

The average population is 188 to the square mile.

The founder of the **Sikh** religion was Nanak, born in 1469 A.D. He tried to unite Hindus and Muhammadans. Divine honours are now paid to him. Smoking is forbidden, but the use of fermented liquors<sup>4</sup> is allowed. The word *Sikh* means *disciples*. Great reverence is paid to their sacred book, called the *Adi Granth*.

Under Ranjit Singh, the Sikhs conquered several of the neighbouring districts. After his death, the army invaded the British territory,

<sup>1</sup> Green plants; *vireo*, to be green. <sup>2</sup> Not having. <sup>3</sup> Strong; *ribur*, a very hard kind of tree. <sup>4</sup> Liquors like wine, beer, and toddy.

and the Punjab was annexed in 1849. Delhi was transferred to the Punjab in 1858, and a Lieutenant-Governor was appointed in 1859. The revenue is about 7 crores.

**DIVISIONS.**—There were ten Commissionerships, which have been formed into six Divisions. In the centre, LAHORE; eastwards, JALANDHAR; south-east, DELHI; along the western frontier, DERAJAT and PESHAWAR; north-west of Lahore, RAWALPINDI.

The Commissionerships contained 32 districts, viz., LAHORE: Lahore, Gujranwala and Firozepore; AMRITSAR: Amritsar, Sialkot, Gurdaspur; JALANDHAR: Jalandhar, Hoshiarpur, Kangra; UMBALLA: Umballa, Ludhiana, Simla; DELHI: Delhi, Gurgaon, Karnal; HISSAR<sup>1</sup>: Hissar, Rohtak, Sirsa; MULTAN: Multan, Jhang, Montgomery, Muzaffargarh; DERAJAT: Dera Ismail Khan, Dera Ghazi Khan, Bannu; PESHAWAR: Peshawar, Kohat, Hazara; RAWALPINDI: Rawalpindi, Jhelum, Gujarat, Shahpur.

**TOWNS.**—LAHORE, near the Ravi, the seat of Government, was for some time the capital of Akbar. The population is about 177,000.

The city contains the tomb of Ranjit Singh, and some other fine buildings. Mean-Meer, the military station, is a few miles distant. Lahore is 713 miles from Allahabad by rail.

Amritsar, now smaller than Lahore, and midway between the Ravi and the Beas, is the sacred city of the Sikhs, and noted for its manufactures of shawls, silk and cotton.

One of the Sikh gurus formed a tank here, which he called *Amritsar* (Pool of Immortality). Govindgarh, a strong fortress, built by Ranjit Singh, commands the city.

From Amritsar a railway proceeds north-eastward to Pathankot, the nearest railway station to Dalhousie, a sanitarium.

South-east of Amritsar, Jalandhar, a military station. Northward, Kangra, with a famous hill fort, which, under the name of Nagar-kote, was plundered by Mahmud of Ghazni.

**Ludhiana**, near the Sutlej, has shawl manufactures.

The district is called SIRHIND. Ludhiana is in Cis<sup>1</sup>-Sutlej Territory, and was the British frontier before the first Sikh war. Westward, Aliwal, Sobraon, Firozshah, and Mudki, where bloody battles took place between the Sikhs and British.

**Umballa**, between the Sutlej and Jumna, is a large military station. Northward on the Lower Himalayas, **Simla**, the summer residence<sup>1</sup> of the Viceroy.<sup>2</sup>

South of Umballa, **Thaneswar**, plundered by Mahmud of Ghazni. Near this is said to be the *Kurukshetra* field, where the great battle of the Mahabharat was fought. About midway between Umballa and Delhi, **Panipat**, the scene of great battles.

**Delhi**, on the Jumna, the largest city in the Punjab, was the capital of an ancient Hindu kingdom, and afterwards of the Mogul Empire.

The present Delhi was built by the Emperor Shah Jehan. It contains the palace of the Mogul Emperors, and a magnificent<sup>3</sup> mosque. The distance from Calcutta by rail is 954 miles. The ruins of old Delhi are a few miles distant.

**Multan**, south-west, near the Chenab, a military station, is a large manufacturing town.

**Dera Ismail Khan** and **Dera Ghazi Khan** are two towns on the Indus. The **Gomal Pass**, north-west of Dera Ismail Khan, is the principal route to Ghazni, in Afghanistan. **Mithankot** is at the junction of the *Panjnad* with the Indus.

On the Indus, at its junction with the **Kabul River**, **Attock**, the principal route across the Indus. Westward, **Peshawar**, near the foot of the **Khaiber Pass**, a large military station, connected with Lahore by the North-Western Railway.

The **Khaiber Pass**, and the **Kurram Valley**, further south are the two principal routes from India to Kabul.

**Rawalpindi**, between the Jhelum and the Indus, is a military station. North-east, **Murri**, a sanitarium. Near the Chenab, **Gujrat**, where the Sikhs were finally defeated by the British. **Chilianwala**, where a bloody battle was fought with the Sikhs, is in the neighbourhood. Not far from this Alexander the Great defeated Porus, 327 B.C.

**Simla** is the smallest district; **Dera Ismail Khan** is the largest; **Umballa** contains the largest number of inhabitants; **Simla**, the fewest. **Jalandhar** has the densest population, 597 to the square mile; **Kohat** is the most thinly peopled, about 64 to the square mile.

**Largest Towns**.—Delhi, population, 193,000; Lahore, 177,000; Amritsar, 137,000; Peshawar, 84,000; Umballa, 79,000; Multan, 75,000; Rawalpindi, 74,000; Jalandhar, 66,000.

1 Dwelling house. 2 One who rules in place of a king, the Governor-General: *vice*, in place of; *rex*, a king. 3 Very grand: *magnus*, great; *facio*, to make.

### Protected States in the Punjab.

With Cashmere, or Kashmir, the Native States under the Lieutenant-Governor of the Punjab are larger in area than the British districts; but contain only one-third of the population.

There are 35 states, with an area of 118,000 square miles, and a population of 7 millions. Cashmere is under the Viceroy.

The principal Native States are CASHMERE in the north; BHAWULPORE in the south; the SIKH STATES in the east; and the HILL STATES on the Himalayas.

The Kingdom of Cashmere includes the beautiful valley of CASHMERE, in the south-west; BALTIstan, or LITTLE TIBET, in the north; LADAKH, in the north-east; and JAMMU, in the south.

The **Muztagh**,<sup>1</sup> or **Karakoram**<sup>2</sup> Mountains, lie partly between Cashmere and Eastern Turkistan. The **Karakoram Pass** is 18,317 feet above the sea. The range contains a peak, called K,<sup>2</sup> 28,278 feet above the sea, supposed to be next in height to Mount Everest. It is now named Mount Godwin-Austen, after the gentleman by whom it was first surveyed. **Dapsang** is another lofty peak.

Cashmere was transferred<sup>3</sup> to Golab Singh by the British after the conclusion<sup>4</sup> of the first Sikh war. Ladakh was taken by him without resistance. The area is rather less than that of the North-West Provinces, but the population is only about 2½ millions.

Cashmere forms a basin, surrounded on every side by lofty mountains. It is supposed that the whole of the valley was once the bed of a large lake. In the centre there is a tract of rich land, traversed by the Jhelum. The Jhelum, in its course, forms the Wular lake. The valley is noted for its cool climate and roses. It was a favourite retreat, during the hot season, of the Muhammadan emperors of India. It lately suffered much from earthquakes.

Shawls, made of the inner hair of a species of goat, are the most noted manufacture, but it has declined.

The Cashmiris are fair and handsome; the natives of Ladakh are somewhat like the Chinese.

**Towns.**—The capital is **Srinagar**, on the Jhelum; **Leh**, the chief town in Ladakh, is near the Indus.

A lake near Srinagar is noted for its floating vegetable gardens. **Islamabad** is south-east of Srinagar, on the Jhelum. **Iskardo**

<sup>1</sup> icy Mountains. <sup>2</sup> Black Stone Mountains. <sup>3</sup> Handed over: *trans.* beyond; *fero*, to carry. <sup>4</sup> End.

(or Skardo) is the capital of Baltistan. Gilghit is a town in the north-west. Jammu lies to the south of the Himalayas. The title, Maharaja of Cashmere and Jammu, is sometimes used.

BHAWULPORE stretches south of the Ghara and the Indus. The chief town is **Bhawulpore**, on the Ghara.

With the exception of a narrow strip, watered by the Ghara, the country is an arid plain. Irrigation works are in progress.

PATIA'LA, a fertile district in Sirhind, is the principal of the protected Sikh States. It is situated to the south of Ludhiana. The chief town is **Patia'la**, towards the east.

JHEEND, NABHA, KAPURTHALA, MANDI, and FARIDKOT, are other Sikh States. They are in *Cis*<sup>1</sup>-Sutlej Territory, or east of the Sutlej.

CHAMBA, east of Jammu, and BUSSAHIR, or BASHAHR, intersected by the Sutlej, are two of the chief hill states.

#### PROTECTED STATES UNDER THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA.

##### Rajputana.

RAJPUTANA, to the east of Sind and south of the Punjab, is rather larger than the Bombay Presidency. A small district in the centre is under British rule; the rest is divided into 20 Native States, with a population of about 12 millions.

The area is about 130,000 square miles.

The Aravalli Hills divide Rajputana into two parts. The districts to the west are arid, including the **Great Indian Desert**.

The **Chambal**, with its tributary the **Banas**, is the principal river, and forms part of the north-eastern boundary. The **Luni** flows south-west into the **Ran** of Cutch.

Salt is obtained from the **Sambhar Lake**, north of Ajmere. Wheat and millet are the principal grains.

The **Rajputana-Malwa** Railway passes through the country, uniting Delhi and Agra with the Baroda Railway on the west, and with the Peninsula Railway on the east.

PEOPLE.—The Rajputs claim to belong to the Kshatriya caste. Dialects of **Hindi** are spoken. There are very few Muhammadans. The Province is so called from the Rajputs being the ruling class. Marwari money-lenders are numerous in the cities, and are found all over India.

The Rajputs attained considerable power in India about the twelfth century of the Christian era, but the Mussalmans greatly re-

<sup>1</sup> *Cis*, on this side.

duced their influence. Sati and infanticide<sup>1</sup> formerly prevailed to a great extent. Female infants were put to death to avoid the enormous expense foolishly incurred at marriages. Great efforts have been made by the British Government, with considerable effect, to put a stop to such atrocities.<sup>2</sup> An Association was lately formed to prevent early marriages and to reduce marriage expenses, which has been very successful.

Jats, Bhils, and other tribes are numerous.

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.—In the north BIKANIR and ULWAR; in the east, KISHENGARH, JEYPORE, BHURTPORE, DHOLORE, KERAULI, TONK; in the south, BOONDI, KOTAH, JHALAWAR, PARTABGARH, BANSWARA, DUNGARPORE, MEYWAR, or OODEYPORE, SIROHI; in the west, JODHPORE, or MARWAR, and JEYSULMERE.

The Agent of the Governor-General, and the Political Agents under him, exercise some control over the Native States. All the princes are Hindus, except the Nawab of Tonk, who is a Muhammadan. Their territories are generally portioned out among *Thakurs*, or chiefs, over whom, in some cases, they have little control. Formerly wars were so frequent, that nearly every man went armed. The cities are generally well built.

JODHPORE, or MARWAR, in the south-west, is the largest of the Rajput States. *Jodhpore*, the capital, is near the centre.

JEYPORE (Jaipur), in the north-east, is the richest and most populous of the Rajput States. The capital, *Jeypore*, is one of the finest cities in India.

OODEYPORE, or MEYWAR, lies to the south of Ajmere. *Oodeypore*, the capital, in the south, has a fine palace. In the north-east, *Chittore*, the ancient capital.

The Maharaja claims to be descended from the Solar Race, and is looked upon as the highest of the Rajput Princes.

SIROHI, south of Jodhpore, contains *Abu*, a sanitarium, where the Agent of the Governor-General frequently resides. *Abu* is noted for its magnificent Jain temples.

BIKANIR and JEYSULMERE are large, arid<sup>3</sup> states in the west, with capitals of the same name.

The wells are two or three hundred feet deep. Jeysulmere is the most thinly peopled of the Rajput States. Jodhpore and Bikanir are now connected by a branch line with the Rajputana-Malwa Railway.

BHURTPORE lies west of Agra. *Bhurtpore*, the capital, is noted for its sieges.

ULWAR is north-west of Bhurtpore, on the railway to Delhi.

<sup>1</sup> Murder of infants: *infans*, an infant; *cædo*, to kill. <sup>2</sup> Cruelties; *atrox*, cruel. <sup>3</sup> Dry; *aridus*, dry.

### Central India Agency.

There are 71 Protected States, rather smaller in size than the North-West Provinces, under the Governor-General's Agent, who resides at Indore. They are bounded on the south by the Central Provinces; on the north by the North-West Provinces and Rajputana.

The area is about 75,000 square miles. The population is about 10 millions.

The principal States are REWAH and BUNDELKHAND, in the east; GWALIOR, or SINDHIA'S DOMINIONS, in the north; BHOPAL and INDORE, or HOLKAR'S TERRITORIES, in the south.

Rewah, about half the size of Ceylon, is the second in extent of the Central India States. **Rewah**, the chief town, is a small place.

Rewah lies to the south of Allahabad. The Sone, which traverses the country, rises in the plateau of Amarkantak in the south. Rewah is rich in mines and forests. The Umaria coal-field is in the south. The population is about 2 millions. Rewah belongs to the Bhagelkhand Agency.

BUNDELKHAND, the country of the Bundela Rajputs, lies to the west of Rewah. A great part of it is British territory; the remainder is divided among 35 Native States and Jaghires.

The Bundelas took the country about 500 years ago. They were notorious for robbery.

PUNNAH, in the east, is noted for its diamonds. The Rajah of TEHRI, or ORCHHA, in the west, is considered the head of the Bundelas.

The GWALIOR TERRITORIES, under Sindhia, form the largest of the Central Indian States. They include detached districts between the Chambal and the Narbada, larger than Mysore, with a population of about 3 millions.

Some parts in the north are hot, rocky and sandy; the southern districts, in the plateau of Malwa, are cool and fertile. Hindi is the prevailing language.

The founder of the Sindhia family was Ranoji Sindhia, the slipper-bearer of the Peshwa, who died about 1756. This Mahratta

dynasty acquired extensive territories in Central India, but they were greatly abridged<sup>1</sup> after the Mahratta forces had been repeatedly defeated by the British.

TOWNS.—The capital is **Gwalior**, or **Lashkar**, in the north, with a famous hill fort; in the south, on the *Sipra*, **Ujjain**, near which are the ruins of ancient **Ujjain**, the capital of Malwa.

Gwalior is connected with Agra by rail. **Morar**<sup>2</sup> was a British military station, near Gwalior, lately given over to Sindhia. The Sipra is a tributary of the Chambal. Ujjain was the first meridian of Hindu geographers, and the year 57 B.C., in which its celebrated king Vikramaditya began his reign, forms a Hindu era.<sup>3</sup> **Bhilas**, to the east, on the borders of Bhopal, has some Buddhist remains in the neighbourhood; **Neemuch**, in the west, is a British military station.

• **INDORE** consists of detached districts on both sides of the *Narbada*. It produces large quantities of opium.

The area is about 8,000 square miles,—one-third of the size of Ceylon. Bhils are numerous in some hilly parts.

The founder of the Holkar family was a ryot born in 1693, who became one of the most distinguished of the Mahratta chiefs. One of his descendants, joined by great numbers of freebooters,<sup>3</sup> laid waste the country on the banks of the Jumna, but was defeated and driven back by Lord Lake.

TOWNS.—**Indore**, the capital, lies north of the Vindhya Hills. **Mhow**, a British military station, is near Indore.

Indore is connected by rail with Ajmere, Gwalior, and the Peninsula Line.

**BHOPAL**, north of the *Narbada*, is under a Mussalman Begum. The capital is **Bhopal**, near the *Betwa*.

Bhopal is somewhat smaller than Indore, both in area and population. The Political Agent resides at **Sehore**, west of Bhopal.

**DHAR** is a small state, west of Indore. **Ratlam**, west of Ujjain is on the Rajputana-Malwa Railway.

### THE CENTRAL PROVINCES.

The **CENTRAL PROVINCES** lie between the Nizam's Dominions and Chota Nagpore, and are almost surrounded by Native States. They are a little larger than the North-West Provinces.

The area is about 86,000 square miles.

<sup>1</sup> Made smaller. <sup>2</sup> A time from which years are counted. <sup>3</sup> Robbers.

**SURFACE.**—The **Satpura Range** divides the Central Provinces into nearly two halves. To the north, the **Vindhya Hills** overlook the valley of the **Narbada**; to the south of the Satpura Range, the country slopes to the south-east, and is watered by the **Warda** and **Wainganga** tributaries of the **Godavari**. The **Warda** and **Wainganga**, after their junction, are called the **Pranhita**.

Portions of the Satpura Range have different names, as the **Mahadeo Hills**, and **Pachmarhi Hills** south of Jubbulpore. The **Amarkantak Plateau**, south-east from Jubbulpore, contains the sources of the **Narbada**. The Plateau of **Chhattisgarh** lies to the east, and is drained by the **Mahanadi**. A large proportion of the Central Provinces is hilly and covered with jungle.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Coal is found in several districts. The valley of the **Warda** is noted for its cotton; the plain of the **Wainganga** is the rice-field of the Central Provinces; Chhattisgarh produces large quantities of wheat.

**RAILWAYS.**—A branch of the Peninsula Railway extends from Bhosawal to Nagpur. The Bengal-Nagpur Railway connects Nagpur with Calcutta.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 11 millions, of whom about 2 millions are Gonds and other aboriginal tribes. **Hindi** is the prevailing language; **Marathi** is spoken in the west, and **Uriya** in the east.

The population is about 125 to the square mile.

The original inhabitants were wild forest tribes. The Gonds, whose language is Dravidian, afterwards occupied the country. Their name probably means highlanders, and the province was called **GONDWANA**. The Gonds have flat noses and thick lips. They never had a written language; they worship evil spirits.

The number of Muhammadans in the Central Provinces is very small, about one in 37.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Central Provinces are under a Chief Commissioner.

The Gonds had several lines of kings. They were conquered by the Muhammadans, and afterwards the Mahrattas seized the country. The Saugor and Narbada Districts were ceded to the English in 1818, and on the death of the last Raja, in 1853, Nagpur was annexed. In 1861 the districts were united under the name of the **CENTRAL PROVINCES**.

**DIVISIONS.**—There are 4 Commissionerships: **NAGPUR** in the south; **JABALPUR** in the north; **CHHATTISGARH** in the east; and **NARBADA** in the west; which are divided into 19 districts.

**TOWNS.**—**Nagpur**, the chief town in the Central Provinces, was the capital of a Mahratta Raja.

The fort is on the **Sitabaldi Ridge**. The cantonment is at **Kampti**, about 9 miles distant. Nagpur is connected with **Bombay** and **Calcutta** by rail. Population, 117,000.

**Hinganghat**, south of Nagpur, is a great cotton mart.<sup>1</sup> Southward, **Warora**, with coal mines. Still farther south, **Chanda**, once a Gond capital.

**Jabalpur** is a well-built trading town, where the **East Indian** and **Peninsula Railways** unite. North-west, **Saugor**, a military station on a beautiful lake.

North-west of Nagpur, **Chhindwara**; westward on the **Narbada**, **Hoshangabad**; southward, **Betul**; westward on the **Tapti**, **Burhanpur**, a Muhammadan capital, near which is **Asirgarh**, a hill fort. At **Khandwa**, in the west, the **Rajputana-Malwa Railway** joins the **Peninsula Railway**. At **Bilaspur**, north-east of Nagpur, a line branches off from the **Bengal-Nagpur Railway** to join the **East Indian Railway**. Eastward, **Raipur**, a trading town; still farther east on the **Mahanadi**, **Sambalpur**, in a district producing some diamonds.

### Protected States under the Central Provinces.

There are several Native States in the south-east, mostly covered with jungle and inhabited by rude tribes. The largest of them is **BASTAR**. Its capital **Bastar**, or **Jagdalpur**, on the **Indrawati** a tributary of the **Godavari**, consists of mud huts.

### HYDERABAD, OR THE NIZAM'S DOMINIONS.

The **NIZAM'S DOMINIONS** form the largest and most important of the Protected States. They are bounded on the north-east by the Central Provinces; on the south by the **Madras Presidency**; and on the west by the **Bombay Presidency**. They are nearly as large as the Central Provinces, and the population is about  $11\frac{1}{2}$  millions.

The whole of the country forms part of the table-land of the **Deccan**. The **Pain Ganga**, a tributary of the **Godavari**, forms part of the

<sup>1</sup> Place of trade; from market.

northern boundary ; the **Godavari** traverses the northern districts, and forms part of the eastern boundary ; the **Tungabhadra** and the **Krishna** form the southern boundary. Coal is found at **Singareni**, in the south-east. The soil is generally fertile, but many parts are covered with jungle. Ragi and other grains, cotton, and oil-seeds are the principal productions. The inhabitants are chiefly *Telugus* in the east and *Mahrattas* in the west ; there is a considerable number of *Muhammadans*, who speak *Hindustani*.

The Nizam's Railway branches off from Wadi, on the Peninsula Railway, passes through Hyderabad, and joins the East Coast Railway at Bezwada.

The Subahdar<sup>1</sup> of the Deccan, styled *Nizam-ul-Mulk* (Regulator of the State), declared himself independent of the Mogul Empire on the death of Aurungzebe.

The Nizam is a *Muhammadan*. The late Prime Minister, Sir Salar Jung, was an able statesman. Hyderabad is under the Government of India.

The army, called the Nizam's Contingent,<sup>2</sup> is under British officers. Berar was assigned to the British for its payment.

**TOWNS.**—**Hyderabad**, the capital, on a tributary of the Krishna, is a large city, containing a number of Arabs and Pathans. **Secunderabad** and **Bola'rum** are military stations near Hyderabad. Total population, 415,000.

<sup>1</sup> Next to Madras, Hyderabad is the largest city in South India. A branch line connects it with the Peninsula Railway. **Golconda**, near Hyderabad, with a strong fort, was once noted for its trade in diamonds.

**Warangal**, north-east of Hyderabad, on the Nizam's Railway, was the capital of the Hindu Kingdom of **Telingana**, or **Andra**. **Bidar**, north-west of Hyderabad, was a *Muhammadan* capital. West of Hyderabad, on the Peninsula Railway, **Gulburga**, with numerous tombs.

**Gulburga** was the capital of the **BAHMINI** Kingdom. **Kalyan**, west of Bidar, was the **CHALUKYA** capital. Southward in the Doab, between the Krishna and Tungabhadra, **Raichore**, where the Madras and Peninsula Railways unite.

In the north-west, **Aurungabad**, the favourite city of Aurungzebe. **Daulatabad**, or **Deogarh**, with a strong hill fort, is near Aurungabad. North-east of Aurungabad, **Assaye**, a village where Wellesley defeated the *Mahrattas*.

<sup>1</sup> Governor of a province : *subah*, a province ; *dar*, holding. <sup>2</sup> Share of soldiers.

**Ellora**, near Daulatabad, and **Ajunta**, in the north-east, are noted for their cave-temples. **Jaulna**, east of Aurungabad, is a military station. South-east, **Nandair**, on the Godavari, where a Sikh Guru was assassinated.<sup>1</sup>

### BERAR.

BERAR, west of the Central Provinces, consists of districts assigned<sup>2</sup> by the Nizam in 1853 for debts due to the British Government. The Province is sometimes called the HYDERABAD ASSIGNED DISTRICTS.

The area is 17,700 square miles. The surplus<sup>3</sup> revenue is paid to the Nizam, the British Resident at whose court acts as Chief Commissioner.

Berar is noted for its cotton. The population is nearly 3 millions. **Marathi** is generally spoken. The Province is divided into EAST and WEST BERAR.

Berar is traversed by the Peninsula Railway to Nagpur.

The chief station is **Ako'la**, towards the centre. North-east, **Amracti**<sup>4</sup> (umroutee), a great cotton mart. Northward, **Ellichpur**, once a Muhammadan capital.

**Khamgam**, west of Akola, is another great cotton mart. **Gawilgarh**, a famous hill fort, is west of Ellichpur. **Argalim**, where Wellesley defeated the Mahrattas, lies north-west of Akola.

### THE BOMBAY PRESIDENCY.

The BOMBAY PRESIDENCY includes a long strip along the West Coast of India and nearly the whole of Sind. It is bounded on the north by Baluchistan and Rajputana; on the east by the states of Central India and the Nizam's Dominions; south by Mysore; west by the Arabian Sea and Baluchistan.

The area is about 125,000 square miles.

The Bombay Presidency contains about one-twelfth of India. It is rather smaller than the Madras Presidency.

**SURFACE.**—The Western Ghats separate a rugged strip of land along the coast from the western parts of the plateau of the Deccan. The **Sabarmati**, **Mahi**, **Narbada**, and **Tapti**, flow through the northern districts into the Gulf

<sup>1</sup> Murdered secretly or by surprise. <sup>2</sup> Given up to: *ad*, to; *signum*, a mark. <sup>3</sup> More than is needed; *super*, above; *plus*, more. <sup>4</sup> Incorrectly written *Omrawutty*.

of Cambay. The Godavari and the Krishna, with their tributaries, water the Deccan. Sind is chiefly a large plain, including the lower course and delta of the Indus.

The Bima, with which the Sina unites, is the principal tributary of the Krishna in the Bombay Presidency.

**CLIMATE.**—The fall of rain is great along and below the Western Ghats, by which the temperature is cooled; Sind is hot and dry.

The rainfall below the Ghats is about 80 inches a year; over a great part of the Deccan it is less than 30 inches a year. The heat is very great in Upper Sind.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Grain and cotton are the principal crops. Cocoa-nut trees are numerous along the Western Coast. The forests on the Ghats yield teak and other timber.

Joar and bajra are the principal grains above the Ghats; rice is raised chiefly along the coast; wheat, in the north. Khandesh, Dharwar, Kaladgi, and Broach are the chief cotton districts. Khandesh has the largest number of cattle.

**PEOPLE.**—The total population is about 19 millions. Marathi is spoken around Bombay; Canarese in the south; Gujarati around the Gulf of Cambay, and Sindi in Sind.

There are about 150 inhabitants to the square mile. Bhils and other wild tribes are found in the hilly districts in the north and east of the Deccan. There are about 80,000 Parsis in Western India, and a few Jews.

**REVENUE.**—The revenue is about 13 crores a year.

The revenue is next to that of the Lower Provinces. About one-fourth of it is derived from opium.

**COMMERCE.**—Bombay is the greatest commercial port in Asia. Its *foreign* trade, amounting to about 85 crores a year, is larger than that of Calcutta, while its *coasting* trade is nearly double.

The chief *exports* are cotton, opium, oil-seeds, wheat, cotton goods and wool; the chief *imports* are cotton goods, metals and machinery, coal and liquors.

Out of every rupee of the foreign trade of India, Bombay has about 7 annas. The opium comes from Malwa and is sent to China.

**RAILWAYS.**—One branch of the Indian Peninsula Railway extends from Bombay towards Calcutta, another towards Madras. The Bombay, Baroda, and Central India Railway goes northward round the Gulf of Cambay. The North-Western Railway connects Karachi with Delhi. The Southern Mahratta Railway traverses the south of the Presidency; and there are smaller lines.

The only good harbours are Bombay and Karachi.

**RELIGION.**—Hinduism is the prevailing religion. About one in five are Muhammadans. There are some Jains, Christians, and Parsis.

In ancient times, Buddhism was very generally professed, and there are large cave-temples formed by its adherents.<sup>1</sup>

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Bombay Presidency is under a Governor, aided by two Councils.

\* In early times the **Sah**, **Vallabhi**, and other dynasties<sup>2</sup> reigned in Gujarat; **Kalyan**, in Maharashtra, was the capital of the **Chalukya** line. The **Bahmani** kingdom, established in 1347 A.D., was the first independent Muhammadan state in the Deccan. Five kingdoms were formed out of its ruins, the capitals of which were **Bijapur**, **Ahmed-nagar**, **Golconda**, **Ellichpur**, and **Bidar**. **Ahmedabad** was the capital of a Muhammadan kingdom in Gujarat. About the middle of the seventeenth century, the **Mahrattas** rose into power, and extended their sway<sup>3</sup> across the peninsula. The British took the western districts from the **Peshwa** in 1818.

**DISTRICTS.**—Bombay; **NORTHERN DIVISION**: **Kola'ba**, **Tanna**, **Surat**, **Broach**, **Kaira** and **Panch Mahals**, **Ahmedabad**, **Khandesh**, and **Nasik**. **SOUTHERN DIVISION**: **Ahmednagar**, **Poona**, **Sata'ra**, **Sholapore**, **Kaladgi**, **Belgaum**, **Dharwar**, **North Canara**, and **Ratnagiri**. **SIND**: **Kara'chi**, **Hyderabad**, **Shikarpore**, **Thar** and **Parkar**, and **Upper Sind Frontier**.

**BOMBAY.**<sup>4</sup> situated on a small island now united with the mainland, has the finest harbour, and is the second largest city in India. The population is about 822,000.

Bombay is connected by a causeway<sup>5</sup> with the larger island of **Salsette**, which is, in like manner, connected with the mainland. The Portuguese took possession of Bombay in 1532. In 1661 it became the property of **Charles II.** of England, forming part of the dowry<sup>6</sup> of his queen; and in 1686 the chief factory of the English was transferred to it from Surat.

Bombay is about 1,400 miles from Calcutta by rail; and about 800 from Madras. Bombay time is 63 minutes later than Calcutta time. The distance from Bombay to London by the Suez Canal is about 6,300 miles. Letters reach England, by Brindisi, in Italy, in 15 days.

<sup>1</sup> Followers: *ad*, to; *hæro*, to stick. <sup>2</sup> Lines of kings; *dynastes*, lord. <sup>3</sup> Rule. <sup>4</sup> The name comes from **Mamba**, a goddess worshipped in Bombay. <sup>5</sup> A raised road paved with stones. <sup>6</sup> Marriage portion.

Bombay is nearly in the same latitude as Prome, Timbuctoo, and San Domingo in the West Indies.

**Elephanta**, a small island in Bombay harbour, and Salsette to the north, contain cave-temples.

### Northern Division.

**KOLA'BA** is a small collectorate to the south of Bombay between the Ghats and the sea. The chief station is **Alibagh**.

**TANNA**, or the Northern Konkan, lies along the coast north of Bombay. Chief station, **Tanna**, on the island of Salsette. Eastward, **Kalian**, where the two branches of the Peninsula Railway unite. Southward, at the *Bhore Ghat*, the Railway to Madras ascends about 2,000 feet; northward, at the *Thull Ghat*, the Railway to Calcutta rises to nearly the same height. Near the coast, **Bassein**, once a flourishing Portuguese settlement.

**SURAT** lies along the coast on both sides of the Tapti.

At **Surat**, on the Tapti, the first English factory in India was established in 1612.

Surat is the fourth city for population in the Presidency.

**BROACH** is a small district to the north of Surat and east of the Gulf of Cambay. Chief town, **Broach**, on the Narbada, an ancient seaport, with a large cotton trade.

**KAIRA** is between Ahmedabad and the Mahi. The largest town is **Nariad**. The district **PANOH MAHALS** forms part of the Kaira collectorate, but is under a separate officer.

**AHMEDABAD** lies chiefly to the west of the Sabarmati and the Gulf of Cambay. **Ahmedabad**, on the Sabarmati, was once the Muhammadan capital of Gujarat, and is the third city in the Bombay Presidency.

Ahmedabad contains several fine buildings, more or less decayed. **Gogo**, or **Gogha**, is a small port to the west of the Gulf of Cambay; northward, **Dholera**, noted for its cotton.

**KHANDESH**, in the north-east, traversed by the Tapti, is a large district, much of which is covered with jungle. Chief station, **Dhulia**, near the centre.

Khandesh contains many Bhils. It was ravaged<sup>1</sup> by Holkar in 1802. At **Bhosawal**, in the east, the Nagpur Railway joins the main line.

**NASIK** lies to the south of Khandesh. Chief station, **Nasik**, a place of pilgrimage.

Nasik is near the source of the Godavari. There are some cave-temples, of Buddhist origin, in the neighbourhood.

<sup>1</sup> Wasted, plundered; *rapio*, to carry off by force.

### Southern Division.

AHMEDNAGAR lies to the south of Nasik, and slopes to the eastward. Chief station, **Ahmednagar**, on the *Sina*, once the capital of a Muhammadan kingdom.

Ahmednagar was taken by the British in 1803. It is on the line of railway connecting Dhond and Mummar, on the southern and northern branches of the Peninsula Railway. Travellers from Madras to Calcutta or North India save some distance by taking this line.

POONA lies south of Ahmednagar, and east of the Western Ghats. Chief town, **Poona**, a large military station, and the last capital of the Peshwa.

At Kirki and Koregam, near Poona, battles were fought between the English and the Mahrattas. **Singarh** and **Purandhar** are noted hill forts near Poona. **Karli** has ancient cave temples.

SATA'RA is a hilly district, south of Poona. The chief station, **Satara**, in the west, was for some time the Mahratta capital. North-west, **Mahableshwar**, visited by Europeans on account of its cool climate.

Mahableshwar, 4,500 feet above the sea, is near the source of the Krishna.

SHOLAPORE is a hot, dry district to the east of Poona and Satara. Chief station, **Sholapore**, a large trading town.

Pandharpur, on the Bima, is a place of pilgrimage. Barsi, to the north-east, is a trading town.

KALADGI lies to the south of Sholapore. Chief station, Bagalkot, on the Gutpurga, a tributary of the Krishna. North-east, Bijapur formerly the capital of a Muhammadan kingdom.

BELGAUM, north-east of Goa, is partly surrounded by native states. Chief town, **Belgaum**, a military station.

DHARWAR, forming the south-east corner of the Bombay Presidency, is noted for its cotton. Chief station, **Dharwar**, connected by rail with Bellary.

Hubli, near Dharwar, has a large cotton trade.

The Southern Mahratta Railway runs eastward from Marmagao, near Goa, to Bezwada, with branches running northward to Poona and Sholapore.

NORTH CANARA, on the coast, the most southern district of the Bombay Presidency, has valuable forests. Northward, **Karwar**, with a harbour; southward, **Coompta**,

where cotton is shipped ; still farther south, Honawar. To the eastward of Honawar are the celebrated *Falls of Gersoppa*, about 900 feet in height.

North Canara was formerly under the Madras Government. Canarese is the language chiefly spoken in North Canara, Dharwar, Belgaum and Kaladgi.

RATNAGIRI, or the Southern Konkan, lies along the coast, south of Kolaba. Chief station, Ratnagiri, on the coast near the centre ; southward near Goa, Vingorla, a small port.

### Sind.

SIND is about half the size of Bengal. The climate is hot and dry. The banks of the Indus yield rich crops, but by far the greater part of the Province is barren. The population exceeds 2 millions, about three-fourths of whom are Muhammadans.

Sind derives its name from the river Indus. It is sometimes called the Egypt of India. Sind was the first province in India which suffered from Muhammadan invasions. In 1779 it was seized by some Baluchi chiefs, who ruled it as the Amirs of Sind. They were very fond of hunting, and sometimes destroyed villages to form preserves for game.<sup>1</sup> In 1843 the Amirs were defeated by Sir Charles Napier, and Sind was annexed. Sindi is the prevailing language. Baluchis are numerous in the west.

The villagers are chiefly Muhammadans ; the townspeople, Hindus.

KARA'CHI is a large collectorate in the south-west. Chief station, Karachi, a sea-port with considerable trade, and the largest town in Sind.

Eastward, Tatta, near the Indus, the old capital of Sind. A railway extends from Karachi to Kotri, on the Indus, and thence to the Punjab. Steamers formerly sailed up the river as far as Multan.

HYDERABAD, noted for its manufactures, lies to the east of the Indus. Chief town, Hyderabad, near the Indus, formerly the capital of the Amirs.

At the village of Miani, a few miles north of Hyderabad, Sir Charles Napier defeated the Amirs.

The THAR and PARKAR Districts, to the east of Hyderabad, contain large sandy tracts, destitute of water. The chief Station is Umarkot, the birth-place of Akbar.

<sup>1</sup> Places where deer, etc., are kept.

SHIKARPUR lies north of Karachi. The chief station, **Shikarpur**, west of the Indus, is a place of some trade.

South-east of Shikarpur, Sukkur, on the right bank of the Indus, with Rohri opposite on the left bank, and the island fort of Bukkur between them. The Indus is here crossed by a fine railway bridge. **Larkhana** is west of the Indus.

The **UPPER SIND FRONTIER** lies to the north of Shikarpur; chief station, Jacobabad. The Sind-Pishin Railway, from Ruk Junction near Sukkur, passes through Shikarpur and Jacobabad up the **Bolan Pass** to British Baluchistan.

Of all the Districts, **Karachi** is the largest, and, exclusive of Bombay, **Broach** is the smallest. **Satara** has the largest population, the **Upper Sind Frontier** the smallest. **Kaira** has the densest population, 500 to the square mile; **Thar** and **Parkar** are the most thinly peopled, 16 to the square mile.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Bombay, population, 822,000; Poona, 161,000; Ahmedabad, 148,000; Surat, 109,000; Karachi, 105,000; Sholapore, 62,000; Hyderabad, 58,000; Hubli, 52,000; Shikarpur, 42,000.

### Protected States in Western India.

The Bombay Presidency has the largest number of Protected States, but many of them are very small. Including Baroda, which is under the Supreme Government, their total area is about 78,000 miles—more than half the size of the British Territory; their population is about  $10\frac{1}{2}$  millions.

**KHAIRPUR** is in the north-east of Sind. Chief town, **Khairpur**, not far from the Indus.

**CUTCH** is a long semi-circular peninsula, to the north of the Gulf of Cutch, and separated from Sind by a shallow salt lake, called the **Great Runn, or Ran.**<sup>1</sup>

The Runn is a sandy hollow, covered with water during the south-west monsoon, but dry at other periods, and encrusted with salt. It contains several islands. Wild asses and swarms of flies are the only living creatures by which it is frequented. There is a smaller Runn forming the eastern boundary of Cutch.

Two ranges of hills run from east to west. The soil is in general sterile.<sup>2</sup> Horses and wild asses are numerous. The inhabitants are Mussalmans and Hindus in about equal proportions. The head of the Government is called the **Rao**, under whom there are about 200 chiefs.

<sup>1</sup> From *aranya*, desert. <sup>2</sup> Barren.

The chief town is **Bhuj**, near the centre; on the coast, **Mandavi**, a sea-port.

In 1819, Bhuj was nearly destroyed by an earthquake, which raised an enormous mound of sand, called by the people, *Allah Bandh*, the mound of God, and submerged<sup>1</sup> an adjacent tract of land.

The GUZERAT, or GUJARAT, STATES lie around the Gulf of Cambay, beyond British Territory. **BARODA**, under the Gaekwar, is the most important. The principal other divisions are the KATHIAWAR PENINSULA, between the Gulfs of Cutch and Cambay; **PAHLUNPUR**, in the north; **MAHI KANTA**, in the north-east; and **REWA KANTA**, in the south-east. There are numerous chiefs, some tributary to the British, others to the Gaekwar.

Kathiawar is hilly, but a great portion of Gujarat is a rich plain producing large quantities of grain, cotton, and sugar. **Gujarati** is the common language. Kattis, Kulis, Bhils and other tribes inhabit the hilly districts. Hinduism is the prevailing religion. Jains are more numerous than in any other part of India. The Gaekwar was formerly under the Peshwa, but made himself independent. He has about 2½ millions of subjects.

The chief towns in the Gaekwar's Dominions are **Baroda**, the capital, east of the Gulf of Cambay, and **Deesa**, in the north, a military station.

**Cambay**, now much decayed, near the mouth of the Mahi, is under a Nawab.

The chief towns in KATHIAWAR are **Rajkote**, near the centre; **Bhaunagar**, in the east; with **Porbandar**, a seaport, and **Dwarka**, a place of pilgrimage, in the west. **Somnath**, on the south coast, had a famous temple, plundered by Mahmud of Ghazni. Near **Junagarh**, there is a sacred mountain, called **Girnar**, with Jain temples.

Some of the Kathiawar Princes are among the most enlightened in India. They have done much for railways and education. The Peninsula is traversed by the Bhaunagar-Gondal-Junagarh-Porbandar Railway, constructed at the expense of the Native States.

There are several Native States and Jaghires in the Mah-ratta country. Two of the most important are **KOZHAPUR**, south-east of Ratnagiri, and **SAWANTWARI**, north of Goa.

**JANJIRA** is a small state, south of Bombay, under a Nawab, a Sidi, or Abyssinian, by descent.

<sup>1</sup> Plunged under water: *sub*, under; *mergo*, to plunge.

## THE MADRAS PRESIDENCY.

The MADRAS PRESIDENCY includes the south of the Peninsula, and a long strip of territory on the west coast of the Bay of Bengal. It is washed on three sides by the sea, and is bounded on the north by Orissa, the Central Provinces, the Nizam's Dominions, and Mysore. It is rather larger than the Bombay Presidency, containing 140,000 square miles.

The native states of Travancore and Cochin occupy part of the South-Western Coast. The coast-line is about 1,800 miles in length. The Madras Presidency comprises about one-eleventh of India.

**SURFACE.**—The Presidency includes part of the table-land of the Deccan; but it consists chiefly of the districts lying between the Ghats and the sea. The Eastern Coast, except in the north, is generally flat.

The **Western** and **Eastern Ghats** are the chief mountain ranges, which are linked<sup>1</sup> in the south by the **Nilgiris**. The **Shevaroy Hills** are a detached<sup>2</sup> group, south-west of Madras. The **Anamalais**<sup>3</sup> and the **Pulnis** are spurs to the eastward, from a continuation of the Western Ghats.

**Dodabetta**,<sup>4</sup> the highest peak of the Nilgiris, is 8,760 feet above the sea. The **Palghat Gap**, south of the Nilgiris, is the only break in the line of the Western Ghats. The Anamalais contain **Anamudi** Peak, the highest point yet known in South India, 8,850 feet above the sea. The **Nagari Hills** are a small range, north-west of Madras.

**RIVERS.**—The **Godavari** and the **Krishna** in the north; the **Northern Pennar**, the **Palar**, the **Southern Pennar** and the **Cauvery** towards the centre, enter the Bay of Bengal.

The Cauvery, or Kaveri, is the largest river south of the Krishna. Its principal tributaries are the **Bhava'ni** and the **Amravati**. It forms a large delta. The northern mouth of the river, the **Coleroon**, is the most important. Like many of the large rivers of India, it is regarded as sacred by the Hindus. The **Vaigai** and the **Tamrapurni** enter the sea to the south.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is hot, especially on the East Coast. The extremes of heat and cold are not so great as

1. Joined together, like the links of a chain. 2 Separate from others. 3 Elephant Hills. 4 Canarese—*Doda*, great; *betta*, hill.

in North India. The districts in the table-land of the Deccan receive only a small supply of rain; the fall is large on the West Coast.

The West Coast has about 130 inches of rain a year; the East Coast, about 50. The Ghats intercept the rain-clouds, and the fall in the table-land is only about 30 inches a year. The supply of rain decreases towards the south.

Calcutta and Bombay have nearly the same mean annual temperature, 79°. Madras is hotter, 82°.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Iron is plentiful; some gold is found; salt is obtained from sea-water; a few diamonds are met with in the Godavari and Kistna Districts.

Rice is cultivated along the coast; various kinds of millet, especially ragi, are the chief grains in the interior; oil-seeds, tobacco, and sugar-cane, are other articles of produce; cotton and indigo are raised in some districts. Cocoa-nut trees are numerous on the West Coast; coffee is grown on the Western Ghats and Nilgiris.

Tanjore is a large rice-field; Bellary, Tinnevelly, Kurnul, and Kistna are the chief cotton districts; South Arcot and Nellore produce most indigo; Godavari and Madura are noted for their tobacco.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 35½ millions, nearly all Dravidians. **Telugu** is spoken in the north-east; **Tamil** in the south-east; **Canarese** in the north-west, and **Malayalam** in the south-west.

The Madras Presidency contains about one-eighth of the people of India. The number of inhabitants to the square mile is 252. In density of population, it is next to the North-West Provinces.

**Uriya** is spoken on the borders of Orissa. **Telugu** extends southward along the coast to about 30 miles north of Madras, and inland to the middle of the Peninsula. **Tulu** is spoken to some extent in South Canara.

**INDUSTRIES.**—About two-thirds of the people are employed in agriculture. Cotton cloths, indigo, sugar, brass vessels, and pottery, are the principal manufactures.

**CANALS.**—There are irrigation canals from the Godavari, Krishna, and Cauvery. The Buckingham Canal, for boats, runs north and south from Madras. The backwaters on the south-west coast are used for navigation.<sup>1</sup>

1 The sailing of ships or boats; *navis*, a ship.

**RAILWAYS.**—The **Madras Railway**, 858 miles in length, stretches across the country to Beypore, and has branches to Raichore, Bangalore, and the foot of the Nilgiris. The **South Indian Railway** extends from Madras to Tuticorin, with some branch lines. The **Southern Mahratta Railway** runs across the north of the Presidency. The **East Coast Railway** is to connect Madras and Calcutta.

**COMMERCE.**—The chief *exports* are hides, cotton, coffee, oil-seeds, rice, indigo, oils, and sugar; the chief *imports* are cotton goods, rice, metals, liquors, and timber.

The annual value of the foreign trade is about 17 crores a year—about one-fifth of that of Bombay. Madras has about 1½ annas in the rupee of the foreign trade of India. Next to Madras, Cocanada, Tuticorin, Cochin, and Calicut are the principal seaports.

**RELIGION.**—The great bulk of the people are Hindus; Muhammadans are one in sixteen. Christians are more numerous than in any other part of India.

The majority<sup>1</sup> of the Hindus are Saivas. The temples are the largest in India. Most of the Christians are in the South.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Presidency is under a Governor, aided by two Councils.

In early times there were several Hindu kingdoms in South India, often at war with one another. **ANDRA**, or **TELINGANA**, occupied the Telugu country; the **CHOLA** kingdom included the north, the **PANDYAN** kingdom, the south of the Tamil country; a race of kings, called **CHERAS**, ruled over the Malayalam country; the kingdom of **VIJAYANAGAR** occupied the Canarese country. A great part of South India was conquered by the Muhammadans, and new states were formed.

Madras was founded by the English in 1639. Chingleput, called the Jaghire, was acquired in 1763; two years later, the Northern Circars were ceded. Most of the other districts came under the British about the close of last century.

**REVENUE.**—The revenue is about 11 crores a year.

**POLITICAL DIVISIONS.**—The Madras Presidency is divided into 22 Districts; viz., along the *East Coast*, Ganjam, Vizagapatam, Godavari, Kistna, Nellore, Madras, Chingleput, South Arcot, Tanjore, Madura, and Tinnevelly; on the *West Coast*, Malabar and South Canara; *inland*, Cyddapah, Kurnul, Bellary, Anantapur, North Arcot, Trichinopoly, Salem, Coimbatore, and the Nilgiris.

1 Greater part; *major*, greater.

### Madras and adjoining Districts.

MADRAS, the capital of the Presidency and the largest city in South India, is situated on the coast. Its trade is considerable. The population is about 450,000.

Madras is defended by Fort St. George, from which the Presidency derives its official name. A harbour has been constructed. It is 770 miles from Calcutta by sea, and nearly 800 miles from Bombay by rail.

Madras time is kept on Indian railways. It is 33 minutes behind Calcutta time and 30 minutes in advance of Bombay time.

Madras is nearly in the same latitude with Bangkok, Mangalore, Aden, and San Salvador in Central America.

CHINGLEPUT encircles Madras, except on the east. Chief station, Saidapet, near Madras. The largest town is Conjevaram, in the south-west, noted for its temples. Chingleput, near the Palar, was the former chief station.

Poonamalee, Pallavaram, and St. Thomas' Mount are military stations near Madras. Salt is manufactured at Ennore, a few miles north of Madras. Conjevaram, properly Kanchipuram, was the capital of the Chola Kingdom. Pulicat, in the north on Pulicat Lake, and Sadras, on the south coast, were formerly Dutch Settlements. Near Sadras is Mahabalipuram, or the Seven Pagodas, with rock-cut temples.

NELLORE, to the north of Chingleput, is noted for its fine cattle. Chief station, Nellore, on the Northern Pennar; northward, Ongole.

Venkatagiri, in the south-west of Nellore, is the residence of a Raja

### Northern Circars.

The four districts north of Nellore along the coast were formerly called the NORTHERN CIRCARS.

They were taken from the French by Clive, and ceded to the British by the Emperor of Delhi.

The KISTNA District, on both sides of the Krishna, includes the delta of the river, and is watered by numerous canals. Chief station, Masulipatam, a sea-port, near one of the mouths of the Krishna. Bezwad'a, on the Krishna, has a large anicut<sup>1</sup>; south-west, Guntoor.

1 An anicut is a dam built across a river to raise the level of the water.

## THE MADRAS PRESIDENCY.

The coast is low and subject to cyclones. The first English <sup>king-</sup> ~~settlement~~ on the East Coast was founded at Masulipatam in 1620. ~~Mac~~ and dates from 1639.

At Bezwada, the Southern Mahratta, the Nizam's, and the ~~Ea~~ <sup>dras</sup> ~~all~~ <sup>tre</sup> Coast Railways unite.

The GODAVARI District lies on both sides of the Godavari. The delta is fertile and noted for its tobacco. Chief station, **Rajahmundry**, on the Godavari. South-west near the Colair Lake, **Ellore**, the largest town, with carpet manufactures; **Cocanada** and **Coringa** are sea-ports near the northern mouth of the Godavari.

There is a large anicut across the Godavari at Dowlaishvaram, a little below Rajahmundry. The Delta is watered by numerous canals. Tobacco is grown on islands, called lankas, formed by the river. Efforts have been made to enable steamers to ascend the Godavari. **Madapollam**, a suburb of **Narsapur**, in the south, on a branch of the Godavari, was once noted for its cotton manufactures.

VIZAGAPATAM, north of the Godavari District, is hilly, and contains numerous zemindaris. Chief station, **Vizagapatam**, a sea-port, noted for its boxes made of horn, &c.; northward, **Bimlipatam**, a sea-port; inland, **Vizianagram**.

Telugu is spoken on the coast: Uriya in the interior. Waltair is a military station near Vizagapatam. Vizianagram is a rich zemindari; northward, Robbilli, also a large zemindari. Eastward Jeypore, a very large zemindari, under a raja and several chiefs.

GANJAM, the most northern district of the Presidency, borders on Orissa, and contains many Uriyas. The hill tracts are peopled by Khonds, formerly given to human sacrifices, and other tribes. Chief station, **Chetterpore**, in the north, near **Ganjam**, the former chief station; south-west, **Berhampore**, the largest town in the district and a military station; **Calingapatam** and **Gopalpur** are sea-ports; southward, **Chicacole**, a little inland.

The name Khonds, properly Kandhs, denotes hill-men, or Highlanders. The Khonds formerly thought that unless they offered human sacrifices their fields would not yield good crops. The cruel custom was suppressed by the British. Gumsur, in the north, has valuable forests. Aska manufactures sugar. Calingapatam was the ancient capital of the KALINGA Kingdom.

### Ceded Districts.

**CUDDAPAH**, west of Nellore, produces cotton. Chief station, **Cuddapah**, on a tributary of the Pennar; southward, on the Ghats, **Madanapalli**.

The town Cuddapah is low and hot; Madanapalli is elevated and cool.

**KURNUL**, north of Cuddapah, is hilly. Chief station, **Kurnul**, on the Tungabhadra.

The west of Kurnul was formerly under a Nawab. **Nandyal**, south-east, and **Cumbum**, eastward, are other towns. A canal, from the Tungabhadra, has been formed to irrigate Kurnul and part of Cuddapah.

**BELLARY** is a hot district, south-west of Kurnul. Chief station, **Bellary**, with a fort on a rock; north-east, **Adoni**, once strongly fortified.

Bellary contains numerous large rocks, rising abruptly, some of them crowned with forts, called *drooqs*. The rainfall is scanty, and there are very few trees. Bellary is a large military station and is connected with the Madras Railway by the Southern Mahratta Railway. The ruins of **Vijayanagar**, or Bijanagar, the capital of a great Hindu kingdom, are on the Tungabhadra, north-west of Bellary.

**ANANTAPUR**, formerly the south-eastern part of Bellary, was lately formed into a separate district. Chief station, **Anantapur**; northward, **Gooty**, with fortified<sup>1</sup> hills.

Bellary, Cuddapah, and part of Kurnul, were ceded by the Nizam, in 1800, and are therefore sometimes called the CEDED DISTRICTS. Parts above the Ghats were called **Balaghat**; those below, **Payenghat**.

### Southern Coast Districts.

**SOUTH ARCOT** lies south of Chingleput and North Arcot. Chief station, **Cuddalore**, on the coast. Near it are the ruins of **Fort St. David**. North-west, **Gingee**, a hill fort. South Arcot encloses the French Settlement of **PONDICHERRY**.

Southward on the coast, **Porto Novo**; a little inland, **Chilambaram**, with large temples.

**TANJORE**, the richest district in South India, occupies the delta of the Cauvery. Chief station, **Tanjore**, on a branch of the Cauvery; north-east, **Kumbakonam**, a place of pilgrimage; on the coast, **Negapatam**, a sea-port, and **Tranquebar**, which formerly belonged to the Danes.

<sup>1</sup> Made strong: *fortis*, strong; *facio*, to make.

A brother of the Mahratta Sivaji conquered Tanjore, but his kingdom was handed over to the English in 1799. The town contains the Raja's palace and some large temples. **Mayavaram** and **Shiyali** are in the north-east. Negapatam, connected with Madras by railway, ships large quantities of rice for Ceylon. **Nagore**, a small port near Negapatam, contains many Muhammadans. Near the centre of the district, **Mannargudi**.

**MADURA** is a large district to the south of Trichinopoly. Chief station, **Madura**, on the Vaigai, an ancient city, with some large temples; north-west, **Dindigul**, with an old fort on a rock; south-east, **Ramnad**, in a low sandy district.

Madura was the capital of the Pandyan kingdom and famous for its Hindu College. **Sivagunga** and **Ramnad** are two large zemindaris in the Madura District.

• The island of **Rameswaram**, east of Madura, is much frequented by pilgrims.

Here Rama is fabled<sup>1</sup> to have crossed over to Ceylon. Rameswaram is separated from the mainland by the Paumben Channel. Formerly only boats could pass through. It has been deepened by the British Government, and is now navigable for ships of some size.

**TINNEVELLY**, the most southern district, is sandy, but produces large quantities of cotton and jaggery. **Palamcottah** and **Tinnevelly** lie near each other, separated by the River Tamrapurni. Eastward on the coast, **Tuticorin**, from which cotton is shipped.

Christianity has made considerable progress in this district. There are numerous schools and several large beautiful churches.

The South Indian Railway passes through Chingleput, Cuddalore, Kunbakonam, Tanjore, Trichinopoly, and Madura to Tuticorin, with some branch lines.

The **CARNATIC**.—The coast districts from Nellore southward, with North Arcot and Trichinopoly, were formerly called the **CARNATIC**, by the English. The Karnataka country properly denoted the Hindu kingdom of Vijayanagar, where Canarese was spoken.

### Inland Districts.

**NORTH ARCOT** lies to the west of Chingleput. Chief station, **Chittoor**,<sup>2</sup> west of Madras; on the Palar, **Arcot**, once the capital of the Nawabs of the Carnatic; westward,

1 Told in a story; *fab'ula*, a tale. 2 Little Town.

**Vellore**, also on the Palar, the largest town; northward, **Tirupati**, a place of pilgrimage.

The **Nagari Hills** are in North Arcot. **Ambur**, **Arni** and **Wandiwash**, in the south, are mentioned in the Carnatic wars; **Satghur**, in the west, produces fine oranges.

**TRICHINOPOLY** lies between South Arcot and Madura. Chief town, **Trichinopoly**, on the Cauvery, a military station, and the second city in the Presidency.

The delta of the Cauvery commences near Trichinopoly. During the last century, Trichinopoly was besieged several times; the fortifications have now fallen into decay. **Trichinopoly** is noted for its cheroots and jewelry. There is a large rock, with temples, near the town. **Srirangam**, on an island of the Cauvery near Trichinopoly, contains the largest temple in India.

**SALEM**, west of Arcot and south of Mysore, is noted for its steel. Chief town, **Salem**, near the foot of the Shevaroy Hills.

The Shevaroys produce coffee. **Yercaud**, on the Hills, is a sanatorium. North-east on the railway, **Vaniambady** and **Tripathore**; on the border of Mysore, **Oosoor**. **Dharmapuri** is north of Salem, and **Namkal** to the south. The northern part of the district was formerly called **Baramahal**, because it contained 12 subdivisions.

**COIMBATORE** lies to the west of Salem. Chief station, **Coimbatore**, not far from the foot of the Nilgiris.

The Nilgiris lie to the north-west of the district; the Anamalais to the south-west. There is a short branch railway from Coimbatore to the foot of the Nilgiris. **Dharapuram** is in the south-east, near the Amravati. **Bhavanikadal**, at the junction of the Bhavani and Cauvery, is a place of pilgrimage. At **Erode**, near the Cauvery, the railway from **Negapatam** joins the **Madras** line. South-east, on the Amravati, **Caroor** (Black Town), once a native capital.

The **NILGIRIS** and **WYNAD** form a district under a Commissioner. The Nilgiris are frequented by Europeans on account of their cool climate. Chief station, **Ootacamund**; south-east, **Coonoor**.

The Nilgiris produce coffee and tea. They are inhabited by several hill tribes. **Wellington** and **Kotagiri** are other stations.

**WYNAD**, formerly belonging to Malabar, yields gold, and contains numerous coffee estates. The chief station is **Manantoddy**.

### Districts on the West Coast.

The districts on the West Coast have a moist climate. The Western Ghats yield coffee, teak, sandalwood, and cardamoms. Canarese and Tulu are spoken in the north; Malayalam is current in the south.

MALABAR lies between Cochin and South Canara. Muhammadans, called Mapilahs, are numerous. Chief station, Calicut,<sup>1</sup> on the coast, the western terminus of the Madras Railway; near Calicut, Beypore; southward, Cochin, a place of some trade; northward, Tellicherry, a small sea-port, and Cannanore, a military station.

Calicut was the first place in India visited by the Portuguese under Vasco da Gama in 1498. Palghat, in the east, is in the Palghat Gap. South of Calicut, Ponani, at the mouth of the Ponani River.

SOUTH CANARA, north of Malabar, is a narrow strip of country, west of the Ghats. Chief town, Mangalore, on the coast, with some trade.

Tulu is spoken by most people in this district. Mangalore was frequently taken and retaken during the wars with the Hyder family.

Vizagapatam, including the zemindaris, is the largest district, and has the largest population. Omitting Madras, the Nilgiris are the smallest district, have fewest inhabitants, and are most thinly peopled—76 to the square mile. Tanjore is the richest and most densely-peopled district, containing 501 inhabitants to the square mile.

LARGEST TOWNS.—Madras, population, 452,000; Trichinopoly, 91,000; Madura, 87,000; Salem, 68,000; Calicut, 66,000; Bellary, 60,000; Negapatam, 59,000; Tanjore and Kumbakonam, each 54,000.

### MYSORE.

MYSORE lies west of Madras, in the table-land of the Deccan. It is as large as Ceylon; and contains about 4 millions of inhabitants. The vernacular is Canarese.

The area is about 28,000 square miles. Mysore is surrounded by hills except towards the north. The surface is undulating, interspersed with hills, some isolated,<sup>2</sup> others in ranges. There are several hills crowned with forts, called *droogs*. The northern parts are drained by the **Tunga**, **Bhadra**, and **Hugry**, tributaries of the Krishna; the southern by the **Cauvery** and its affluents.<sup>3</sup> There are numerous tanks. Gold-mining has been lately recommenced. Ragi is the

<sup>1</sup> Cotton cloths, called *calicoes*, derive their name from Calicut. <sup>2</sup> Standing alone; <sup>3</sup> Tributaries: *ad*, to; *flu*, to flow.

principal grain; sugar is manufactured to some extent; coffee is grown on the Western Ghats, which also yield timber. The Mysore section of the Southern Mahratta Railway runs through the state, and Bangalore is connected with the Madras Railway.

**Mysore** attained considerable power under Hyder Ali and Tippu Sultan. At present it is under a Maharaja.

The Government of Mysore was assumed by the British in 1832 on account of the misconduct of the Raja. It was handed over to the present Maharaja on his attaining his majority.

Mysore is divided into NUNDIDROOG in the east; ASHTAGRAM in the south; and NUGGUR in the north.

Nundidroog includes the districts of Bangalore, Colar, and Toomkoor; Ashtagram,<sup>1</sup> Mysore and Hassan; Nuggur, Shimoga, Chituldroog and Kudoor.

**Towns.**—**Bangalore**, towards the east, is the residence of the Mysore Commissioner, and a large military station. It is noted for its gardens.

Bangalore is about 3,000 feet above the sea. The population is about 180,000. A branch line from Jollarpet connects it with the Madras Railway. Eastward, Colar, the birth-place of Hyder Ali; northward, Nundidroog.

**Mysore**, in the south, is the residence of the Maharaja. **Seringapatam**, northward on an island in the Cauvery, was the capital of the Hyder family.

Tippu was killed at the storming <sup>2</sup> of Seringapatam by the British. It is now almost deserted, on account of its unhealthiness. In the north-west, Nuggur, or Bednore, plundered by Hyder Ali; east of Bednore, Shimoga; northward, Harihar.

COORG is a small British district, to the west, under the Chief Commissioner of Mysore. It is very mountainous. Coffee and cardamoms are the most noted productions. The chief station is **Merka'ra**.

### **Protected States under the Madras Presidency.**

**TRAVANCORE**, the principal Native State, lies to the north-west of Cape Comorin. It is well watered and fertile.

Travancore is noted for its pepper and cardamoms. The population is about 2½ millions.

1 Eight villages. 2 Taking by open force.

TOWNS.—Towards the south, **Trevandrum**, the capital; northward, **Quilon**, a military station; still farther north, **Aleppi**, a sea-port.

Southward, near Cape Comorin, **Kolachel**, a small port, and **Nagercoil**, a little inland.

**COCHIN** is a small state between Travancore and Malabar. The capital is **Ernakulam**, near Cochin; northward, **Trichur**.

Travancore and Cochin are noted for their water communication. Both contain large numbers of Christians.

**PUDUKOTTAI** is a small state, south-west of Tanjore, under the Tondiman Raja.

#### INDEPENDENT STATES.

NEPAL is a long, narrow country, stretching along the Himalayas from Kumaun to Sikkim.

It contains the loftiest peaks of the Himalayas yet discovered. There are numerous streams, which flow through valleys of great fertility. Rice is the principal article of food. The large forests contain valuable timber trees. The sheep is employed as a beast of burden in the higher districts.

The original inhabitants are of Mongolian origin, but the *Goorkhas* are the ruling tribe. The Goorkhas are small and ugly, but hardy, and noted for their bravery. Jung Bahadur, the nephew of the prime minister, raised himself to supreme power. He died a few years ago.

The capital is **Khatmandu**, containing numerous wooden temples.

**BHUTAN** is a mountainous country to the east of Sikkim. The capital is **Tassisudon**.

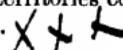
The people are of Tartar origin. Buddhism is the prevailing religion. The ruler is styled the Deb-Raja. The lower parts of Bhutan, called the **Dooars** (doors), were ceded to the English a few years ago.

#### FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.

The FRENCH Territories in India consist of **Pondicherry** and **Kârikal**, on the coast of the Carnatic; **Mahe**, on the Malabar Coast; **Yanam**, in the Godavari District; and **Chandernagore**, on the River Hugli.

They contain less than 200 square miles, and about 285,000 inhabitants. **Pondicherry** is the residence of the Governor.

The PORTUGUESE Possessions consist of the small district of **Goa**; **Daman**, north of Bombay; and the island of **Diu**, on the coast of the Kathiawar Peninsula.

Goa was once the splendid capital of the Portuguese dominions in the East; it is now in ruins. Panjim, or **New Goa**, has been built nearer the sea. The Portuguese territories contain 1,086 square miles, and a population of about 450,000. 

### COMPARATIVE VIEW OF INDIA.

#### BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

##### Provinces ranked according to Size.

The Lower Provinces; Madras, Bombay; North-West Provinces, with Oudh, and the Punjab, nearly equal; the Central Provinces, Assam, Berar, Ajmere, Coorg.

##### Provinces ranked according to Population.

The Lower Provinces, Madras, North-West Provinces and Oudh, the Punjab, Bombay, Central Provinces, Assam, Berar, Ajmere, Coorg.

##### Provinces ranked according to Density of Population.

Lower Provinces, North-West Provinces, and Oudh, Madras, Punjab, Ajmere, Berar, Bombay, Central Provinces, Coorg, Assam.

##### Towns ranked according to Population.

Calcutta, Bombay, Madras, Lucknow, Benares, Delhi, Cawnpore, Lahore, Allahabad, Agra, Patna, Poona, Ahmedabad, Amritsar, Bareilly, Meerut, Nagpur, Howrah, Surat, Karachi; each with upwards of 100,000 inhabitants.

Trichinopoly, Madura, Peshawar, Jubbulpore, Mirzapore, Dacca, Ganya, Ambala, Fyzabad, Shahjehanpore, Farrukhabad; each with upwards of 75,000 inhabitants.

#### NATIVE STATES.

##### Ranked according to Size.

Hyderabad, Cashmere, Jodhpore, Gwalior, Mysore, Bikanir, Jeysulmere, Bhawulpore, Jeypore, Bustar, Oodeypore; each containing upwards of 12,000 square miles.

##### Ranked according to Population.

Hyderabad, Mysore, Gwalior, Jeypore, Travancore, Jodhpore, Cashmere, Baroda, Oodeypore, Patiala, Indore; each containing upwards of one million inhabitants.

Hyderabad, Bangalore, Jeypore, Srinagar, and Baroda are the largest Towns.

## CHIEF TOWNS ON THE COAST.

*From West to East.*

Karachi, Porbandar, Gogo, Cambay (Mahi), Broach (Narbada), Surat (Tapti), BOMBAY, Ratnagiri, Vingorla, Panjim, or New Goa, Marmagao, Karwar, Coompta, Honawar, Mangalore, Cannanore, Tellicherry, Calicut, Beypore, Ponani, Cochin, Allepi, Quilon, Kolachel, Tuticorin, Negapatam, Tranquebar, Cuddalore, Pondicherry, MADRAS, Masulipatam, Coringa, Cocanada, Vizagapatam, Bimlipatam, Gopalpur, Puri, Balasore, CALCUTTA (Hugli), Chittagong.

## CHIEF TOWNS ON THE GANGES.

*Descending the River.*

Hardwar, Farrukhabad, Cawnpore, Allahabad, Mirzapore (all on right bank), Benares (left bank), Ghazipore, Buxar, Dinapore, Patna, Monghyr, Bhagulpore, Rajmahal, Murshidabad, Hugli (all right bank), Calcutta (left bank). Delhi, Muttra, and Agra are on the Jumna (right bank).

## CHIEF TOWNS ON THE INDUS.

Attock (left), Kalabagh, Dera Ishmael Khan, Dera Ghazi Khan, Mithunkote, Sukkur (all right bank), Rohri (left), Larkhana (right), Hyderabad (left), Kotri (right).

## CHIEF CENTRES OF INDUSTRY.

(Exclusive of agriculture, weaving, the manufacture of coarse pottery and brass vessels, carried on everywhere.)

**Coal-Mining.**—Western Bengal and the Central Provinces.

**Salt.**—Sambhar Lake, Kalabagh, the coast near Bombay and Madras.

**Opium.**—Behar and Malwa.

**Indigo.**—Bengal, Behar, the Madras Presidency.

**Jute.**—Bengal.

**Cotton-spinning.**—Bombay, Broach, Ahmedabad, Calcutta Madras, Cawnpore, Indore.

**Silk Manufacture.**—Bengal and Mysore.

**Shawls.**—Cashmere, Amritsar, Ludhiana.

**Jewelry.**—Trichinopoly, Cuttack, Cutch.

**Blackwood Furniture and Sandalwood Boxes.**—Bombay.]

**Lacquered Ware.**—Cashmere.

## CHIEF LINES OF RAILWAY IN 1892.

The rails on the chief lines of railways in India are  $5\frac{1}{2}$  feet apart. This is called the **Standard Gauge**. Others are constructed on the **Metre Gauge**, about 3 feet 3 inches. The principal lines on each gauge are given on the following page.

**Standard Gauge.**

East Indian State Railway, 1,564 miles in length; Eastern Bengal, 218 miles; Bengal-Nagpur, 860 miles; Oudh and Rohilkhand, 899 miles; North-Western, 2,360; Bombay, Baroda, and Central India, 461 miles; Indian Midland, 677 miles; Great India Peninsula, 1,288 miles; Madras, 839 miles.

**Metre Gauge.**

Northern Bengal Railway, 478 miles; Bengal and North-Western, 755 miles; Rajputana-Malwa, 1,674 miles; Jodhpur-Bikanir, 361 miles; Bhaunagar-Gondal-Junagarh-Porbandar, 375 miles; Southern Mahratta, 1,409 miles; South Indian, 1,161 miles; Burma, 571 miles; Assam-Bengal, under construction, 742 miles.

Some of the above lines are now being extended, and there are numerous shorter lines.

**FOREIGN TRADE OF INDIA.****Exports ranked according to Importance.**

The Foreign Trade of India is chiefly with Britain, China, France, the Straits Settlements, the United States and Ceylon. The trade with Britain is greater than with all the other countries taken together.

**Opium.**—From Bombay and Calcutta, sent to China and the Straits Settlements.

**Cotton.**—From Bombay, Madras, and Bengal, sent to Britain, the Mediterranean, France, and China.

**Grain.**—*Rice*, from Burma, Bengal and Madras, sent to Europe and Ceylon. *Wheat*, from North-West Provinces, the Punjab, and Central Provinces, sent to Britain, and the continent of Europe.

**Oil-seeds.**—From Bengal, Bombay, and Madras, sent to Britain, France, and the United States.

**Jute.**—From Bengal, sent to Britain, the United States, and France.

**Indigo.**—From Bengal, Madras, and Bombay, sent to Britain, France, the Mediterranean, and the United States.

**Hides.**—From Bengal and Madras, sent to Britain, the United States, and the Mediterranean.

**Tea.**—From Assam and the Himalayas, sent to Britain and Australia.

**Coffee.**—From Madras, sent to Britain, France, Turkey, and the Persian Gulf.

**Wool.**—From Bombay, sent to Britain.

**Silk.**—From Bengal, sent to Britain, France, and the Mediterranean.

**Saltpetre.**—From Bengal, sent to Britain, America, and China.

**Trade ranked according to Countries.**

**Britain.**—The bulk of the trade, except in opium, is with Britain.

**China.**—*Exports* to, opium, cotton goods and cotton; *imports* from, treasure, raw silk and sugar.

**France.**—*Exports* to, oil-seeds, cotton, indigo, coffee, and raw silk; *imports* from, clothing and liquors.

**Straits Settlements.**—*Exports* to, opium, rice and cotton goods; *imports* from, spices, raw silk and tin.

**United States.**—*Exports* to, jute, oil-seeds, indigo, hides; *imports* from, kerosine oil.

**Italy.**—*Exports* to, cotton, oil-seeds, hides and wheat; *imports* from, corals, beads, &c.

**Belgium.**—*Exports* to, cotton, oil-seeds, and grain.

**Ceylon.**—*Exports* to, rice and cattle; *imports* from, spices and timber.

**Austria.**—*Exports* to, cotton, indigo, hides.

**Mauritius.**—*Exports* to, grain; *imports* from, sugar.

**Persian Gulf.**—*Exports* to, cotton goods, rice, indigo and coffee; *imports* from, treasure, wool, horses, fruits, pearls, cotton, and raw silk.

**Russia.**—*Imports* from, kerosine oil.

### CEYLON.

CEYLON, the Lanka of the Hindus, is a large island in the Indian Ocean, to the south of India.

It is nearly connected with the mainland by the islands of Mannar and Rameswaram, and a ridge of sand-banks, called **Adam's Bridge**.

The Hindus term the sand-banks Rama's Bridge, asserting that it was formed for him by Hanuman, the monkey god. The northern part of the channel between India and Ceylon is called **Palk Strait**; the southern, the **Gulf of Mannar**.

Ceylon is shaped like a mango. It contains about 24,500 square miles, and is about the same size as Oudh.



*Fishing for Pearls.*

**SURFACE.**—The coasts and northern half of the island are low; in the interior there are elevated plains and lofty mountains.

In the north there are several low islands. Some parts of the coast contain shallow lakes connected with the sea. The table-lands in the interior vary from 1,000 to 6,000 feet in height. **Adam's Peak**,

long supposed to be the highest mountain in the island, is 7,352 feet above the sea. On its top a rude representation of a footprint has been formed of lime, which is venerated<sup>1</sup> as an impression<sup>2</sup> left on the rock by Buddha. **Pedrotalagala**, the highest mountain, is 8,295 feet in height.

**RIVERS.**—The **Mahawili Ganga** is the principal river; there are numerous smaller streams.

The **Mahawili Ganga** is about 150 miles in length. The **Kalany Ganga** and **Kalu Ganga**, on the western coast, and the **Walaway Ganga**, in the south-east of the island, have each a course of about 70 miles.

**CLIMATE.**—The heat is not so great as on the neighbouring coast of India.

The north-eastern coast resembles the Carnatic in climate; the south-western, the Malabar coast. Ice is sometimes formed in the highest interior tableland.

**MINERALS.**—Ceylon is noted for its precious stones; but plumbago<sup>3</sup> is the most valuable mineral. Large quantities of salt are manufactured on the coast.

**VEGETABLES.**—Tea, rice, cocoa-nuts, coffee, betel-nuts, cinnamon, and cinchona, are the principal vegetable productions.

The talipot palm is remarkable for its gigantic leaves. The forests yield valuable timber.

**ANIMALS.**—The jungles contain elephants, cheetahs, and bears. Pearl oysters are fished in the Gulf of Mannar.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 3 millions. The Siñhalese inhabit the central and southern parts of the island; the Tamils, the north-eastern districts. Moors, or Muhammadans, are scattered throughout the island.

The Veddahs (hunters) are a wild tribe in the interior.

**COMMERCE.**—Many tea and coffee plantations have been formed on the Hills by Europeans, and the trade of the island is large.

A railway runs inland from Colombo, and there is a short line, southward, along the coast.

**RELIGION.**—Buddhism is the prevailing religion among the Siñhalese, and Hinduism among the Tamils. Christianity has made some progress in different parts.

**GOVERNMENT.**—Ceylon is ruled by a Governor, appointed by the Queen of England. The Island, for many centuries, had kings of its

<sup>1</sup> Worshipped; *ven*eror, to worship. <sup>2</sup> Mark: *in*, in; *pressum*, to press. <sup>3</sup> A mineral used for pencils, etc., wrongly called blacklead.

own. In 1518 the Portuguese obtained possession of the maritime<sup>1</sup> districts, but were expelled in 1656 by the Dutch. In 1796 the English conquered the Dutch possessions, and in 1815 their authority was established over the whole island.

DIVISIONS.—Ceylon is divided into nine Provinces.

WESTERN PROVINCE.—Chief town, COLOMBO, the capital of the island, from which tea, coffee, cocoa-nut oil, and cinnamon are shipped. Population 128,000.

The Indian, China, and Australian steamers touch at Colombo, which is a much-frequented port. There is a fine breakwater.

Northward, Negombo; southward, Kalutara, connected with Colombo by rail.

SABARAGAMUWA.—Chief town, Ratnapura, south-east from Colombo.

SOUTHERN PROVINCE.—Chief town, Galle, the second seaport; south-east, Ma'tara.

EASTERN PROVINCE.—Chief station, Batticaloa; northward, Trincomalee, with one of the finest harbours in the world.

NORTHERN PROVINCE.—Chief town, Jaffna.

NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCE.—Chief town, Kurunegala.

CENTRAL PROVINCE.—Chief town, Kandy, the last capital of the Siñhalese kings.

Nuwara Eliya, 6,200 feet above the sea, is a sanitarium.

UVA.—This was formerly the south-eastern division of the Central Province. Chief town, Badulla.

NORTH-CENTRAL PROVINCE.—Chief town, Anuradhapura, the ancient capital of the island, with numerous ruins.

### THE MALDIVES.

The MALDIVES,<sup>2</sup> south-west of Cape Comorin, are numerous circular groups of low islands, formed by coral reefs.<sup>3</sup>

Coral islands are sometimes called *atolls*. Cocoa-nuts, fish and cowries are the principal exports. The inhabitants are Muhammadians. The Sultan renders annually a nominal tribute to the British Governor of Ceylon.

1 Near the sea; *ma-re*, the sea. 2 The thousand islands. 3 Chains of rock.

## INDO-CHINESE PENINSULA.

The South-Eastern Peninsula of Asia, formerly called **Further India, or India beyond the Ganges**, includes the countries between the Bay of Bengal and the China Sea. China is the northern boundary.

The area and the population are both uncertain, as only estimates have been made. The Peninsula is supposed to be about one-third less than India in extent; but to have only about one-tenth of its population.

**SURFACE.**—The interior is little known; but it probably consists of chains of mountains, running north and south, enclosing valleys each gradually widening toward the sea, and forming the bed of a large river. These rivers are the **Irawadi, Sittaung, Salwin, Menam', and Mekong, or Cambodia.**

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is generally hot and moist.

**MINERALS.**—Precious stones are found in the central districts, and there are tin mines in the south.

**VEGETABLES.**—The valleys contain fertile rice-fields, and the mountains are clothed with immense forests.

The tree which yields gutta-percha<sup>1</sup> has been felled in great quantities. Teak, ebony,<sup>2</sup> and other timber, are largely exported. The bamboo is plentiful.

**ANIMALS.**—The animals are nearly the same as those of Eastern India, with the addition of the orang-outang,<sup>3</sup> a large ape, somewhat resembling a man in appearance.

**PEOPLE.**—The inhabitants belong to the Mongolian and Malayan races.

They are robust, but in general shorter than the Hindus. Many of them blacken their teeth, and when questioned on the subject, say, “What! should we have white teeth like a dog?”

The houses are chiefly constructed of bamboos and matting, with thatched roofs. They are generally built on posts about four feet from the ground, as the rivers are subject to inundations.

The languages are monosyllabic, except the Malay in the south.

**DIVISIONS.**—In the west, **BURMA**; in the centre, the **SHAN STATES and SIAM**; in the east, **TONQUIN, ANNAM and FRENCH COCHIN-CHINA**; in the south, the **MALAY PENINSULA**.

1 A juice, somewhat like India-rubber. 2 A kind of blackwood. 3 Man of the jungle.

## BURMA.

BURMA is bounded on the west by India and the Bay of Bengal; on the south by the Bay of Bengal and Siam; on the east by Siam and the Shan States; and on the north by China. The entire area<sup>1</sup> is about 280,000 square miles—larger than the Madras and Bombay Presidencies taken together. The country is divided into LOWER and UPPER BURMA, under a Chief Commissioner.

PEOPLE.—The population is nearly 8 millions, the larger number in Lower Burma. The Burmese belong to a race which is considered intermediate between the Chinese and Malays. They are skilful in gilding, and in making large bells. Most of the men are able to read.

The number of inhabitants to the square mile is only about 29. Burma is the most thinly peopled territory belonging to the Indian Empire.

In the north-east, Shans and other wild tribes are numerous, and in some cases independent. There are many Chinese settlers.

There are few roads; commerce is carried on chiefly by boats on the rivers, but railways are in progress. In 1892 there were 571 miles of railway open.

The revenue is about 5 crores a year.

RELIGION.—Buddhism is the religion of the Burmese.

There are numerous monasteries and yellow-robed priests. Many of the images of Buddha are formed of white marble and gilded. A white elephant was considered sacred, and was worshipped by the more ignorant of the people. Many of the Burmese become priests for a time. In the hills of Lower Burma there are tribes, called Karens, a number of whom have become Christians.

## Lower Burma.

LOWER BURMA consists of a long strip of territory, on the east coast of the Bay of Bengal, extending from Chittagong to the Malayan Peninsula. It is rather larger than the Central Provinces.

The area is nearly 90,000 square miles.

SURFACE.—Lower Burma is intersected by chains of hills, running north and south, between which flow the

<sup>1</sup> Including the British Shan States.

principal rivers, the **Irawadi**, the **Sittaung**, and the **Salwin**. The country is generally hilly. The delta of the Irawadi is the only large level tract.

The coast is broken by creeks. **Ramri** and **Cheduba** are islands towards the north. The **Mergui Archipelago** consists of a large number of small islands off the south coast. The **Sittaung**, the **Salwin**, and the **Attaran**, all fall into the **Gulf of Martaban**.

**CLIMATE.**—The rainfall is large. The seasons do not vary much.

**PRODUCTIONS, ETC.**—Agriculture is the chief occupation of the people. Cotton and silk goods are manufactured to some extent. The principal **exports** are rice, timber, gums, cotton, and hides; the principal **imports**, cotton goods, raw silk, and betel-nut.

The level country forms one vast rice-field. Burma has the largest rice export in the world.

Tin is found in the south, and earth-oil in Arakan. Lacquered ware and jewelry are manufactured.

**POLITICAL DIVISIONS.**—In the north, **ARAKAN**; in the centre, **PEGU**; in the south, the **TENASSERIM PROVINCES**.

Arakan is separated from Burma and Pegu by the **Yoma Mountains**, ending in **Cape Negrais**. Its inhabitants are called **Mugs** by the English. Pegu was formerly an independent kingdom, but it was conquered last century by the Burmese.

### *Towns.*

**ARAKAN.**—**Akyab**, near the mouth of the Kuladan River, exports large quantities of rice. **Kyouk-pyu**, with a fine harbour, is on the island of **Ramri**.

Northward, on a river of the same name, **Aeng**, on the overland route to Burma; southward, **Sandoway**.

**PEGU.**—**Rangoon**, on an eastern branch of the Irawadi, is the capital of Lower Burma, and has a very large trade in rice and timber. The population is 180,000. Westward, on a branch of the Irawadi, **Bassein**; northward, on the Irawadi, **Prome**; eastward, on the **Sittaung**, **Toungoo**, a military station.

Pegu is the richest and most populous of the three provinces. The commerce of Rangoon nearly equals that of Madras. Prome

1 Articles covered with a smooth shining substance.

and Toungoo are both connected with Rangoon by rail. **Henzada** is northward on the Irawadi. **Thayetmyo**, a military station, and **Meaday**, are both on the Irawadi, near the upper frontier.

**TENASSERIM.**—The chief town is **Moulmein**, near the mouth of the Salwin, with a large timber trade; in the south, **Tavoy** and **Mergui**.

The Tenasserim Provinces are the largest of the three divisions of Lower Burma, but the most thinly peopled.

The Mergui Islands yield the birds' nests, made into soup by the Chinese.

### Upper Burma.

**UPPER BURMA** lies to the north of Pegu and Siam, and is bounded on the west by Arakan and Assam. It is more than double the size of Lower Burma, but has a smaller population.

The districts directly under British rule contain about 84,000 square miles, but the total area is about 190,000 square miles. Upper Burma is traversed by the Irawadi, which is navigable<sup>1</sup> as far as **Bhamo**, 800 miles from the sea.

Iron ore is plentiful; petroleum, or earth-oil, is collected; fine white marble is found near Mandalay, from which images are cut; there are famous ruby and jade<sup>2</sup> mines in the north. Rice is the principal crop. Much of the country is covered with forest.

Commerce is carried on chiefly by means of the rivers. There is some overland trade with China; timber is exported to Lower Burma.

**TOWNS.**—**Mandalay**, the capital, is a new city on the Irawadi. **Amarapura** and **A'va**, former capitals now deserted, are in the neighbourhood. **Bhamo**, in the north, is the seat of the overland trade with China.

Mandalay is nearly in the same latitude as Calcutta. The roofs of the palaces and temples are made of wood, curiously peaked and carved. It is now connected with Rangoon by rail.

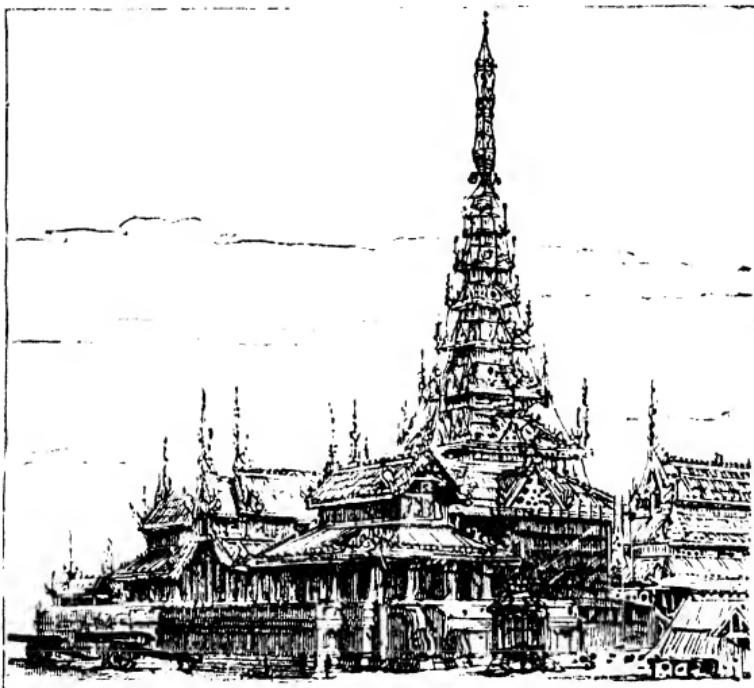
**GOVERNMENT.**—The whole of Burma is now under British rule. A Chief Commissioner presides over both provinces.

The former native government of Burma was very despotic. The king was absolute master of the lives and property of his subjects and received almost a species of adoration.<sup>3</sup> When anything belonging to him was mentioned, the word "golden" was attached to it. When he heard anything, it was said to have reached "the golden ears;"

<sup>1</sup> In which ships *can* sail; *navis*, a ship. <sup>2</sup> A hard greenish stone, much valued by the Chinese. <sup>3</sup> Worship; *ad*, to; *oro*, to pray.

a person admitted to his presence was said to have been at "the golden feet." None could build brick houses unless with royal permission.

The dominions of the king of Burma were formerly much more extensive. In 1824 the reigning monarch declared war against the British, and prepared golden chains to bind the Governor-General of India. The English troops advanced to Yandaboo, within 45 miles



THE PALACE, MANDALAY.

of the capital, when the Burmese were compelled to make peace by the sacrifice of Assam, Arakan, and the Tenasserim Provinces. In 1852 hostilities again broke out, and Pegu was annexed. To secure the peace of India, Theebaw, king of Upper Burma, was deposed in 1885, and the country became a British province. The Chief Commissioner is under the Government of India.

### SIAM.

SIAM is situated to the east of Pegu and the Tenasserim Provinces, and north of the Gulf of Siam. It also includes the northern half of the Malay Peninsula.

Siam means "the dark race;" the people themselves call their country, *Thai*, "the free." Siam is supposed to be smaller than Burma; but its limits are not exactly known, except on the west. It consists chiefly of a large fertile valley, watered by the Menam, and enclosed by two mountain ranges. Part of the country, east of the Mekong river, was lately seized by France.

PEOPLE.—The population is estimated at 6 millions. The Siamese greatly resemble the Burmese. A tuft of hair is worn on the top of the head. There are many Chinese settlers; Shans are numerous in the north, and Malays in the south.



A SIAMESE.

COMMERCE.—The chief *exports* are rice, timber, fish, and hides; the chief *imports* are cotton goods, treasure, opium, and kerosine oil. The trade is mostly with China and India.

GOVERNMENT.—The government is despotic. The brother, or son, of the sovereign is termed the second king, and has considerable influence.

The present king is acquainted with English, and desirous of the advancement of his people in civilization. Railways are in progress.

RELIGION.—Buddhism is the religion of the Siamese. They have a sacred white elephant like the Burmese.

TOWNS.—**Bangkok**, the capital, is 20 miles from the mouth of the Menam.<sup>1</sup> About half of the population live

<sup>1</sup> "Mother" of waters."

in floating houses, built on bamboo rafts, which are moored<sup>1</sup> to posts fixed in the river. The trade is chiefly in the hands of Chinese. **Ayuthia**, the ancient capital, is higher up the same river. **Zimmé** is a trading town in the north-west.

### ANNAM AND FRENCH POSSESSIONS.

The eastern coast of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula includes **TONQUIN**, or **TONG-KING**, in the north ; **ANNAM** (south country) in the middle ; and **FRENCH COCHIN-CHINA** in the south. Tonquin has been seized by the French, and the King of Annam is now under them. Recently a part of Siam was annexed.

The area is estimated at 140,000 square miles, and the population at 18 millions ; but the latter is uncertain.

Tonquin consists of the basin of the **Songkoi** (Great River), which flows into the **Gulf of Tonquin**.

Annam, also called Cochin-China, is noted for its fine poultry.<sup>2</sup> The inhabitants are short in stature, active, and cheerful. The Annams are descendants of the Chinese who conquered the country. The original inhabitants are found on the mountains in the interior. Buddhism united with the worship of ancestors, is the prevailing religion. Roman Catholic Missionaries have made numerous converts.

The provinces were united under one kingdom about the end of last century by the King of Cochin-China, whose troops were disciplined<sup>3</sup> by French adventurers.<sup>4</sup>

**TOWNS.**—**Hanoi**, up the river **Songkoi**, is the capital of Tonquin ; **Haiphong** is the chief seaport. In Annam, on the sea-coast, **Hue** (hu-é), the capital, which is fortified in the European style.

**FRENCH COCHIN-CHINA** lies to the south-west of Annam, and includes the delta of the **Mekong**. **CAMBODIA**, to the north-west of French Cochin-China, is now a French colony.

French Cochin-China contains about 23,000 square miles, and 2 millions of inhabitants. Cambodia is about one-half larger, but contains a smaller population. There is a large lake, called **Tale Sab** (Great Lake), between Siam and Cambodia.

French Cochin-China was taken from Annam in 1861. Cambodia, once a powerful kingdom, contains some magnificent ruins. It is noted for a yellow gum resin, called gamboge.

<sup>1</sup> Fastened, as ships. <sup>2</sup> House fowls. <sup>3</sup> Trained ; *disco*, to learn. <sup>4</sup> Persons who go about not certain what will happen to them : *ad*, to ; *venio*, to come.

TOWNS.—**Saigon**, the capital of French Cochin-China, is on a branch of the Mekong. **Udong**, the former capital of Cambodia, is inland.

### LAOS, OR THE SHAN COUNTRY.

The **SHAN** Country is situated near the centre of the Peninsula. It is inhabited by numerous tribes, partly subject to the surrounding kingdoms, partly independent. It is frequently called **LAOS**,—the name of one of the principal tribes.

The country is mountainous, and covered with extensive forests, containing the varnish tree, with many valuable woods. Bullocks and a fine breed of ponies are numerous and largely exported. What are termed Pegu ponies in India, come from the Shan Country. Metals and sticklac<sup>1</sup> are sent in large quantities to China.

### MALAYA.

The Malayan Peninsula is chiefly divided into numerous small States, the more northern of which are subject to the King of Siam; while those in the south are under native rulers. **QUEDAH**, from the Raja of which the East India Company obtained Wellesley Province, and **PERAK** in the north, with **JOHORE** in the south, are the principal states.

Malaya is joined to the mainland by the **Isthmus of Kraw**. The Peninsula is noted for its tin mines, worked chiefly by Chinese, and for the mangosteen, a very delicious<sup>2</sup> fruit. The inhabitants are chiefly Malays from Sumatra. They are subject to sudden bursts of passion, and much addicted to opium-eating, gambling, and cock-fighting. Some of them are pirates, but others are fishermen or carry on an extensive traffic with the neighbouring islands. The religion they profess is Muhammadanism.

### Straits Settlements.

The **Straits Settlements** include the islands of **Singapore** and **Penang**, with **Wellesley Province** and **Malacca** in the Malayan Peninsula.

The area is about 1,200 square miles, and the population about 5 lakhs.

<sup>1</sup> A kind of resin. <sup>2</sup> Very pleasant to the taste.

**Singapore** is situated on a small island at the southern extremity of Malaya. Its commerce is very extensive.

Singapore was founded in 1819 by Sir Stamford Raffles.

**MALACCA** is a district in the west of Malaya, with a town of the same name.

It was ceded to the English by the Dutch in 1825, in exchange for Bencoolen in Sumatra.

**PENANG** (betel-nut) is a small fertile island, off the west coast of Malaya. **WELLESLEY PROVINCE** is a district on the mainland, opposite Penang.

Penang was ceded to the English by the Raja of Quedah. The Straits Settlements were under the Government of India till 1867, when they were made a Crown Colony, under a Lieutenant-Governor.

### THE CHINESE EMPIRE.

The CHINESE EMPIRE is bounded on the north by Asiatic Russia; on the east by the Pacific; on the south by the Indo-Chinese Peninsula and India; and on the west by Turkistan.

It contains about 4½ millions of square miles, and a population estimated at 380 millions. It is usually reckoned the third empire in the world in extent, and the first in population.

The Chinese Empire is larger than the whole of Europe. The population is variously estimated at from 280 to 400 millions.

The principal divisions are CHINA PROPER, CORE'A, MAN-CHU'RIA, MONGO'lia, TIBET', and EASTERN TURKISTAN.

### CHINA PROPER.

CHINA PROPER, in the south-east, is about the same size as India, but contains a larger population. It is the richest and most populous part of the Empire.

The area is about 1½ millions of square miles; the population about 360 millions. The rest of the Empire, nearly twice the size, contains only about 20 millions of inhabitants.

**SURFACE.**—The greater part of China consists of a succession of river-valleys, divided by ranges of high land.

The land gradually rises towards the west. The summits of some of the mountains are covered with perpetual snow. The **Peling** and **Nanling**, the North and South Mountains, are the chief ranges.

The **Yang-tse**, the longest river in Asia, flows eastward into the Yellow Sea. The **Hoangho**, which has several times changed its course, now falls, like the **Peiho** (White River), in the north, into the **Gulf of Pechili**. It is called "China's Sorrow," from the great destruction it has often caused. The **Canton River** is in the south. The Great Canal extends from Peking to the south of the Yang-tse, a distance of 700 miles. It is the largest canal in the world. Great numbers of the Chinese live in boats on the rivers and canals.



**ISLANDS.**—**Formo'sa**, on the east coast, and **Hainan'**, in the south.

Formosa means "beautiful." It was so called by the Portuguese from its rich appearance. There are rocky islets along the south coast.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is hot in summer and cold in winter. The north is much colder than the south.

The whole of China, except a small strip in the south, lies within the North Temperate Zone.

In the south the heat during summer is excessive, and severe circular storms, called *typhoons'*, sometimes occur. The Peiho, in the north, is frozen for about three months a year.

**MINERALS.**—Copper, zinc, and quicksilver, are found in the western mountains; coal is plentiful in the north; but the most valuable mineral production is *ka'olin*, a porcelain<sup>1</sup> clay of the finest quality.

<sup>1</sup> Fine white earthenware.

VEGETABLES.—Rice and tea are the principal objects of cultivation.

The soil is in general fertile. Agriculture is conducted with much skill, and manure is carefully collected. Rice is the chief article of food. The tea-plant grows to the height of five or six feet, and bears a small white flower. The bamboo is very plentiful, and is used for many purposes. Chinese paper is chiefly made from it. The tallow and camphor trees yield valuable products.

ANIMALS.—Fish and the hog are chiefly used as food; but dogs and cats are sometimes eaten. A soup, made from the nests of a kind of swallow, is much esteemed. The country being populous and well-cultivated, there are few wild animals. Horses and cattle are not numerous. All the ground is required for the food of man. Beautiful pheasants<sup>1</sup> are found in the woods. Gold and silver fish came originally from China.

PEOPLE.—The Chinese belong to the Mongolian race. They are ingenious, industrious, thrifty, and respectful to parents. They are much attached to ancient customs, and have a great contempt for other nations.

The Chinese have square flat faces, yellow complexions,<sup>2</sup> small almond-shaped eyes, and little or no beard. They shave their hair, except one long tuft, which is plaited and twisted round the top of the head or hangs down the back.

The Chinese consider small feet the greatest beauty in women. Among the higher classes, the feet of the women are so compressed in infancy, that ever afterwards they can only hobble about. Tables and chairs are used as in Europe, but rice is eaten with a pair of small sticks. Tea is the common beverage<sup>3</sup> on all occasions.

Gambling is a favourite amusement. The use of opium prevails to a considerable extent. Its effects are very injurious.

The language is monosyllabic, each syllable representing a word but liable to be variously compounded. Words are written from top to bottom in lines. It is supposed to have been originally a kind of picture writing.

The Chinese attained a considerable degree of civilization at a very early period. They were acquainted with printing, paper-making, and the mariner's compass, long before they were known to Europeans. No advancement, however, has been made for many centuries. This is largely attributable to their veneration for antiquity, and their contempt for other nations. They style China the "Middle Kingdom," the "Flower Land," the "Celestial Empire," while the inhabitants of other countries are called "barbarians"<sup>4</sup> and "foreign devils."

The Chinese contempt for other nations is beginning to pass away. Chinese students are now sent by Government to Europe and America.

<sup>1</sup> Fez'ants, a kind of bird. <sup>2</sup> Colours of the skin. <sup>3</sup> Drink. <sup>4</sup> Rude nations.

a college, in which English is taught, has been established at the capital; railways have been commenced.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Silk, porcelain, and lacquered ware.

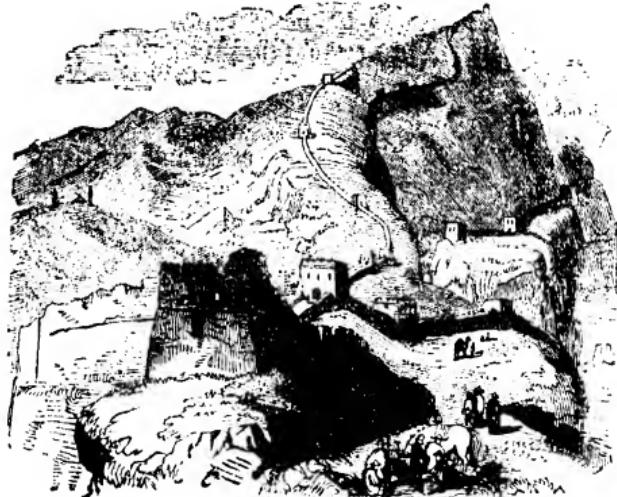
The manufactures of silk and porcelain are said to have originated in China, and in lacquered ware they have never been surpassed. The Chinese likewise excel in the carving of ivory.

**COMMERCE.**—The principal *imports* are cotton goods, opium, metals, and kerosine oil; the *exports*, silk, tea, and sugar.

Opium is imported from India; cotton goods from England and India. The foreign trade is chiefly with England, India, and the United States, though goods are likewise sent overland to Russia.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Emperor has despotic power. The principal officers are called *Mandarins* (*man-dä-reens*).

The emperor is regarded with the utmost respect, and is styled the "Son of Heaven." All state employments are given to persons found by competition to be the best acquainted with certain ancient books. Only the memory is exercised, and the learned in China possess little correct knowledge. Degrees of rank are denoted by little balls of different appearance, worn on the cap.



WALL OF CHINA.

About 2,000 years ago the Chinese erected a wall, 1,250 miles in length, to prevent the incursions<sup>1</sup> of the Tartars; but in 1279 the country was conquered by the Mongols, and in 1644 it came under the Manchu Tartars, who still occupy the throne. In 1850 what was called the *Taiping* Rebellion took place, but it was suppressed.

<sup>1</sup> Coming into a country to attack it: *in*, *in*; *curro*, to run.

Until 1842 Europeans were allowed to trade at only one port, Canton, in the south. In that year four additional ports were opened, and subsequently the number was increased to upwards of 20.

**RELIGION.**—Buddhism is the prevailing religion. Many of the higher classes are followers of Confucius. The worship of ancestors is universal.

Confucius, or more correctly, *Kungfutze* (Kung, the Master), was a famous philosopher who lived in the sixth century B.C. His system contains some good moral precepts, but the duty of man to God is overlooked. The *Taou* sect has likewise many followers. Buddha is called *Fo* in China. Buddhism was introduced about 60 B.C. The Chinese cut paper into the form of coins, houses, and articles of furniture, which they burn, supposing that their dead relatives will receive them in reality. The gods of the Chinese, according to their own proverb, are "numerous as the sands of the Havy River."

**POLITICAL DIVISIONS.**—China is divided into 18 Provinces, each about half the size of the Madras Presidency.

**CITIES.**—**Peking** (Northern Court), the capital, is situated in the north-east, near the River Peiho. The population is estimated at 500,000.

Peking consists of two portions—the Chinese and Tartar cities, the latter containing the imperial palace and gardens. Good houses in China are often covered with tiles, varnished and painted of brilliant colours. Peking is nearly in the same latitude as Constantinople, Naples, and New York.

**Nanking** (Southern Court), on the Yang-tse, was the ancient capital, and though greatly declined, is still noted for its cloth manufactures.

Its famous porcelain tower was destroyed by the Taipings.

**Canton**, in the south, was till 1842 the only place which foreign nations were allowed to visit.

Canton is near the mouth of the Canton River, and has still a large tea trade. It is nearly in the same latitude as Calcutta. It is supposed to be the largest city in China. The population is estimated at 1½ millions, but this is uncertain.

Four additional ports were thrown open in 1842: **Amoy** and **Foochow**, opposite Formosa; **Ningpo**, opposite the Island of Chusan, noted for its silk trade; and **Shanghai**, near the mouth of the Yang-tse, the chief port of China. Other ports were afterwards opened.

**Hankow**, on the Yang-tse, 700 miles from the sea, is a large trading town.

The **Han** River joins the Yang-tse at Hankow. **Wuchang** is a large city on the opposite bank of the Yang-tse, and **Hanyang** lies between the junction of the two rivers. **Ichang**, about a thousand miles up the Yang-tse, is the limit of steam navigation.

**Tientsin**, on the River Peiho, is the port of Peking. **Chefoo** is south-east of Tientsin. **Swatow**, east of Canton, has a large foreign trade.

A recent treaty<sup>1</sup> with China was concluded<sup>2</sup> at Tientsin. Chefoo is the most northerly port which is free from ice in winter. **Yunnan**, in the west, has some trade with Burma.

**FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.**—**MACAO** (Makow), belonging to the Portuguese, and **Hong-Kong**,<sup>3</sup> to the English, are two small islands south of Canton.

Macao came into the possession of the Portuguese in 1580. Hong-Kong was acquired by the English in 1842. Its chief town is **Victoria**. A small part of the mainland, called **Kowloon**, was ceded to Britain in 1861.

#### COREA.

~~C~~OREA, a peninsula to the north-east, is a kingdom formerly tributary to China. The capital is **Seul**, near the centre, in the west.

A chain of mountains runs from north to south. The inhabitants are very jealous of strangers, and little is known of the country. Until lately trade was permitted only with China and Japan.

#### MANCHURIA.

**MANCHURIA** lies north of Corea, and south of the Amur. A great part of the country now belongs to Russia. The Manchus conquered China in 1644. The capital is **Kirinou'la**, in the south.

Manchuria is mountainous. The cold in winter is severe. The Amur is blocked up by ice several months a year. Oats are the most general object of cultivation. The country contains some vast forests. The inhabitants, who consist of Chinese and Tungusians, are thinly scattered. Buddhism is the prevailing religion. **Moukden**, in the south, was the ancient capital of the Manchus. **Newchang** is the chief port.

<sup>1</sup> An agreement between nations. <sup>2</sup> Finished, completed. <sup>3</sup> Hong-Kong means sweet waters.

## MONGOLIA.

MONGOLIA, to the west of Manchuria, includes the great Desert of Gobi or Shamo.<sup>1</sup> The inhabitants are rude Tartar tribes, who wander over the immense plains, subsisting upon their flocks and herds. Urga, south of Lake Baikal, is the chief city.

Mongolia consists of a vast table-land separated from Manchuria by the Khingan Mountains. The northern parts are watered by the tributaries of the Amur and Yenisei. The centre contains the great Desert of Gobi, 1,500 miles in length, consisting of sandy or stony plains, separated by low hills. Through the middle of the desert runs a depression called by the Chinese the Hanhai (dried up sea), supposed at one time to have been covered with water. The south of Mongolia is watered by tributaries of the Hoangho. The cold winds from Siberia render the winters very severe. The Tartar tribes, ruled by their own khans, or chiefs, are nominally<sup>2</sup> subject to China. The worship of the Grand Lama is the religion of the country. Urga is the residence of the Chinese governor, and the seat of the deified<sup>3</sup> Lama. Maimatchin (trade town), on the northern frontier, was formerly the only place of trade between Russia and China.

ZUNGARIA is a territory to the west of Mongolia. Kulja, on the river Ili, is the chief town.

## TIBET.

TIBET, situated to the north of India, forms the highest part of the table-land of Asia, and is surrounded on all sides by ranges of lofty mountains. It contains several lakes, and the sources of the Indus, Sutlej, and Brahmaputra.

Tibet, styled the Switzerland<sup>4</sup> of Asia, is bounded by the Himalayas on the south, and the Kuen-lun Chain on the north. It is the highest table-land in the world, the mean elevation being about 14,500 feet. Several of the lakes of Tibet are considered sacred. Lake Tengri Nor<sup>5</sup> lies towards the centre; Lake Pal'ti, which is ring-shaped, enclosing a circular island, and Lake Manasarowar, lie north of the Himalayas. The Sanpu, called lower down the Brahmaputra, is the principal river.

The cold in winter is very severe. Gold, silver, mercury, and borax, a kind of salt, are found in some quantities.

<sup>1</sup> *Gobi*, Mongol, and *Shamo*, Chinese, both mean *desert*. <sup>2</sup> Only in name; *nōmen*, a name. <sup>3</sup> Made a god of: *deus*, God; *facio*, to make. <sup>4</sup> The most mountainous country of Europe. <sup>5</sup> Called *Sky Lake*.

Some grain is raised in the valleys, but the people are chiefly pastoral. Sheep, goats, and the *yak*, a kind of buffalo, are the principal domestic quadrupeds.

The sheep are of the broad-tailed species, and are employed as beasts of burden. The goats are covered with fine hair, which is largely exported.

The Tibetans belong to the Mongolian race. They are strong and hardy. The country is ruled by viceroys from China.

**RELIGION.**—Tibet is the chief seat of the worship of Buddha, who is supposed to live in the person of the Grand Lama.

The Tartars believe the Talé, or Grand Lama, to be omniscient,<sup>1</sup> and make long pilgrimages to pay him divine honours. He dwells in a monastery, surrounded by a great number of priests. They say that when the Lama dies, his soul merely passes into another body. There are many monasteries scattered over the country. The people of Tibet have the words *om mani padme hum*, of which they do not know the meaning, written on cylinders,<sup>2</sup> which they turn round themselves, or cause to be turned by windmills. They consider this as equal to the repetition<sup>3</sup> of the prayers.

**TOWN.**—**Lassa**, or **Lhassa**, the capital, is the residence of the Grand Lama.

The city is situated in a large valley, on one of the tributaries of the Sanpu, and contains a vast number of temples.

#### EASTERN TURKISTAN.

A Muhammadan, called Yakoob Beg, made himself master of this Chinese Province for several years, and assumed the title of Amir. He was afterwards murdered, and the Chinese have recovered possession of the Province. **Yarkand** and **Kashgar** are trading towns.

Eastern Turkistan, to the north-west of Tibet, and south of the Thian Shan, consists of an elevated plateau, surrounded on all sides except the east by lofty mountains; trade is carried on by caravans, requiring to go over high passes. Muhammadans are numerous.

The Zarim river falls into the swampy lake **Lob Nor**. Sand from the Desert of Gobi, has buried once large cities.

<sup>1</sup> Knowing all thinks: *omnis*, all; *scio*, to know. <sup>2</sup> Bodies round like rollers *kylindo*, to roll. <sup>3</sup> Saying.

## JAPAN.

The Empire of Japan consists of the islands of NIPPON, or HONDO, YEOZ, KIUSHU, SHIKOKU, and many smaller ones, situated in the Pacific Ocean, to the east of China.

The extent is about 150,000 square miles. Nippon is as large as Britain. HONDO means *Mainland*; KIUSHU, *Nine Provinces*; SHIKOKU, *Four States*. The Japanese call the whole empire NIHON, *Sunrising*. Japan comes from the Chinese name. The volcanic Kurile Islands, to the north-east, and the Loo Choo Islands, to the south-west, belong to Japan. The Empire has been called an Asiatic Britain. It occupies about the same position in Eastern Asia which Britain does in Western Europe.

**SURFACE.**—The large islands are traversed by lofty mountain ranges, containing several volcanoes. Fusiyama, or Mount Fuji, in Nippon, nearly three miles in height, is considered sacred. Earthquakes are sometimes very destructive. The valleys and plains are fertile. Lake Biwa is noted for its beauty. The coasts are indented<sup>1</sup> by numerous deep bays.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is temperate, but the north is much colder than the south. The Kuro Siwo, or Black Current, sweeps along the east coast, and makes it warmer than the west coast.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Japan is rich in minerals. Copper is exported in bars. Coal is plentiful.

Rice is the principal article of food; but beans, wheat, barley, and fish, are extensively used. The tea plant is so abundant that hedges are composed of it. Tobacco, cotton, and indigo are raised in large quantities. The varnish employed in the rich lacquered ware is obtained from a kind of tree. The process is called *japanning*, covering with varnish like the Japanese.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 40 millions. The Japanese belong to the Mongolian family. They are polite, fond of flowers and tasteful decoration.

Japanese is not monosyllabic like Chinese; but Chinese characters are largely used in writing. The *Ainos* are a less civilized race in Yezo.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Silk, cotton, porcelain, and lacquered ware. Paper is used for many purposes.

**COMMERCE.**—Cotton and woollen goods, sugar, metals, and kerosine oil, are the chief *imports*; raw silk, tea, rice, coal, and lacquer-ware, are the principal *exports*.

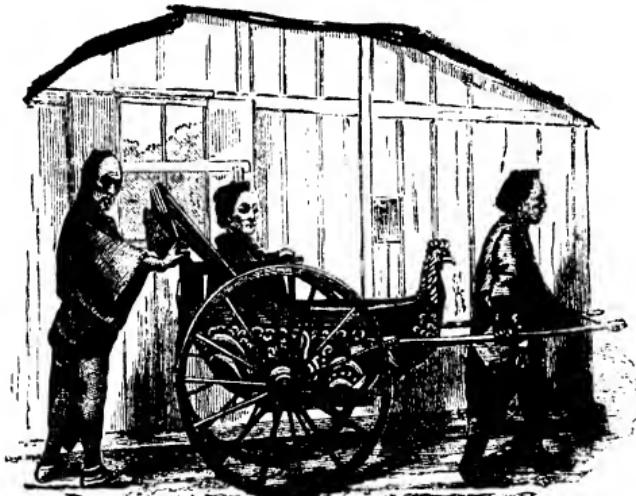
**GOVERNMENT, ETC.**—The *Mika'do*, “The ‘Venerable,’ is

<sup>1</sup> Going out and in like a row of teeth: *in, in*; *deps*, a tooth.

again supreme ruler, and considerable advance is being made in civilization.

For seven centuries the *Shogun*, or General, usurped supreme power; but in 1868, the last Shogun gave up his rights to the Mikado. The *daimios*, or chiefs, also surrendered<sup>1</sup> their authority. In 1889 a Parliament was called.

Formerly Europeans were jealously excluded from Japan; only the Dutch were allowed to send two ships a year. The country has now been thrown open. Several lines of railways have been constructed. *Jinrikishas*, small carriages drawn by men, are largely used. Japanese



JINRIKISHA.

have been sent to Europe and America, to acquire a knowledge of the arts and sciences, and numerous schools have been established. English is taught in many of the schools.

**RELIGION.**—Shintoism and Buddhism are the prevailing religions.

Shintoism consists chiefly in the worship of heroes. The Mikado was regarded as divine. Roman Catholic missionaries entered the country in the sixteenth century, and met with much success; but the converts were afterwards nearly exterminated by severe persecutions. By order of Government, Sunday is now observed as a day of rest.

**TOWNS.**—**YEDO**, now called **Tokio**,<sup>2</sup> the capital, in the east of Nippon, is much larger than Calcutta. **Yokohama** is the port of Tokio.

<sup>1</sup> Gave up. <sup>2</sup> The name means *Eastern Capital*.

Tokio lies at the head of a deep bay. The population exceeds a million. The latitude is about the same as that of Gibraltar.

**Osa'ka**, in the south-west of Nippon, is next in size to Yedo. **Kioto**<sup>1</sup> was the capital of the Mikado. **Naga-sa'ki**,<sup>2</sup> on the island of Kiushiu, was long the only port at which foreign trade was permitted.

**Kobé** is the new port of Kioto; **Niigata** is the only port on the west coast; **Hakodate** is a port in Yezo.

### ASIATIC RUSSIA.

ASIATIC RUSSIA includes all the north of Asia. The principal divisions are **SIBERIA** in the north; the **CAUCASIAN PROVINCES** in the south-west; and **RUSSIAN TURKISTAN** in Central Asia. The area exceeds 6 millions of square miles, one-half larger than that of Europe; but the population is only about 18 millions.

#### SIBERIA.

**SIBERIA** stretches across the entire north of Asia.

The name is derived from *Sibir*, on the Irtish, formerly the capital of a Tartar Khan. The most northerly point is **Cape Chelyuskin**;<sup>3</sup> the most easterly, **East Cape**. The Ural Mountains form the western boundary, and the Altai Mountains, part of the southern frontier. The southern limit is uncertain, for Russia has been encroaching<sup>4</sup> on the Chinese Empire and Turkistan. The area is nearly 5 millions of square miles.

**SURFACE.**—Siberia consists chiefly of a vast plain, rising very gradually from the Arctic Ocean to the **Altai Mountains**, and traversed by the **Obi**, **Yenisei**, and **Lena**, which are amongst the largest and slowest rivers in the world. The **Amur**, flowing eastward, forms part of the boundary between Siberia and Manchuria. The **Ili**, in the west, flows into Lake Balkash. In the south-west there are sandy plains; the south-eastern districts are mountainous.

**Bielukha** (White Mountain), a peak of the Altai Range, is about 11,000 feet in height. The **Yablonoi** and **Stanovoi** Mountains

<sup>1</sup> Kioto, means *Western Capital*. <sup>2</sup> *Long Point*. <sup>3</sup> So called after its discoverer

<sup>4</sup> Taking by degrees what belongs to another.

form a continuation of the Altai Chain, extending to the eastern extremity of Asia. Lake Baikal is regarded as sacred. Balkash is a smaller lake, west of Baikal; still farther west, the Sea of Aral.

**CLIMATE.**—The north of Siberia lies within the Frigid Zone. Piercing blasts sweep over the country from the Arctic Ocean, and the ground is covered a great part of the year with snow.

**MINERALS.**—Siberia is one of the richest districts for metals in the Old World, yielding large quantities of gold, silver, and plat'ina.<sup>1</sup>

Gold is found in the Ural Mountains; both gold and silver are obtained in the Altai Mountains, and in the hills which separate the upper courses of the three great rivers.

**VEGETATION.**—The marshy plains in the north, called **Tundras**, are frozen for nine months in the year; in the centre there are vast forests; the south consists of plains, some grassy, others salt deserts. Barley and rye are raised in some of the warmer parts.

In the north, neither trees nor shrubs will grow. Many of the plains, however, are covered with moss during the short summer of two months.

**ANIMALS.**—The country abounds with wild animals, which are hunted for their soft and beautiful furs.



Sledges are drawn by dogs and reindeer. Bears and wolves are the principal beasts of prey. The rivers are well stocked with fish.

<sup>1</sup> A kind of metal very difficult to melt.

One skin of the sable, which is a small animal, is worth 100 rupees.

The mammoth, a large kind of elephant with long hair, was formerly numerous in Siberia. Its bones are found in large numbers, and are used as ivory. Many are obtained in the New Siberia Islands, off the mouth of the Lena.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 5 millions. Nearly one-half of the inhabitants are Europeans, many of them banished<sup>1</sup> convicts, sentenced to work in the mines. The native inhabitants are chiefly wandering tribes.

The **Samoiedes** (sam-o-ydz), the **Esquimaux** (es-ki-mo') of Asia, live by hunting and fishing on the shores of the Arctic Ocean. The **Kirghiz** and **Ostiaks**, in the south-west; the **Tunguses**, in the south-east; the **Buriats**, near Lake Baikal, have flocks and herds. Shamanism, or demon worship, prevails among the ruder native tribes; the others are Muhammadans. The Russians belong to the Greek Church.

COMMERCE.—Metals and furs are the principal exports. Tea, in the form of bricks, silk, &c., are imported from China.

DIVISIONS.—Siberia is divided into two great sections, **Eastern** and **Western Siberia**.

**EASTERN SIBERIA**.—Capital, **Irkutsk**, near Lake Baikal.

It is situated on the Angara, a tributary of the Yenisei. Though the largest town in Siberia, the population is only 47,000.

**Kiakhta**, south of Lake Baikal, is the place at which the trade with China is chiefly transacted.<sup>2</sup> **Yakutsk**, on the Lena, has considerable traffic in fur and fossil<sup>3</sup> ivory. It is the coldest known part of the earth. **Okhotsk**, on the shore of the sea of the same name, is the centre of the fur trade with Kamchatka and North-West America. **Vladivostok** (Ruler of the East) is a naval station in the south of the **Amur** territory. It is to be connected by rail with St. Petersburg.

**Kamchatka**, or **Kamtschatka**, is a large peninsula to the east of Siberia.

It is traversed by a range of mountains several of whose peaks are volcanic. The southern point is called **Cape Lopatka**. The inhabitants, who are short in stature, live during the cold weather in huts under ground. The chief town is **Petropaulovski**,<sup>4</sup> on the south-east coast.

The **Aleutian Islands** extend between 'Kamchatka

<sup>1</sup> Sent out of a country as a punishment. <sup>2</sup> Carried on. <sup>3</sup> Dug out of the earth; *fossum*, to dig. <sup>4</sup> St. Peter and St. Paul.

and America. The large, cold, foggy island of **Saghalien** lies southward of the Amur.

The worst criminals are now sent to Saghalien to work in the coal mines.

WESTERN SIBERIA.—Chief town, **Tobolsk'**, at the junction of the Tobol and Irtish, a place of considerable trade.

**Tobolsk** was founded in 1587 by Yermak, the Cossack who conquered Siberia. It is in the same latitude as St. Petersburg and the Shetland Islands. South-east, **Tomsk**, on the Tom, a tributary of the Obi, and **Omsk**, on the Om, a tributary of the Irtish.

**Sk**, in Russian, means town. **Tobolsk** means town on the Tobol.

#### THE TRANS-CAUCASIAN PROVINCES.

The TRANS-CAUCASIAN Provinces lie south of the Caucasus, between the Caspian and Black Seas. They are bounded on the south by Asiatic Turkey and Persia. **GEORGIA** is the principal division.

The country is mountainous, well-watered, and fertile.

The climate is hot in summer, but very cold in winter.

The Georgian women are celebrated for their beauty.

Most of the hill tribes are Muhammadans : the Georgians are Christians of the Greek Church.

TOWNS.—**Tiflis**, the capital, is situated on the river Kur.

Tiflis was the capital of Georgia. It is connected by rail with the Caspian and Black Seas.

**Erivan'**, is the chief town in Russian Armenia ; **Kars**, to the north-west, was taken from the Turks in 1872.

**Baku**, on the Caspian, is situated in a district abounding with kerosine oil, now largely exported. It was formerly visited by the fire worshippers of Persia. **Batum** is a seaport on the Black Sea, connected by rail with Baku. From Batum, tank steamers carry oil to India and other parts of the world.

#### RUSSIAN TURKISTAN OR CENTRAL ASIA.

RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA now includes a great part of the country between the Caspian and Eastern Turkistan.

The south and east are mountainous ; but in general the surface is low, with vast wastes of sand, sloping gradually towards the north. The **Syr Daria**, or Jaxartes, and the **Amu Daria**, or **Oxus**, both fall into the Sea of Aral. The Amu Daria forms part of the south-eastern boundary ; the **Attrek**, which enters the Caspian, forms

part of the south-western boundary. The Zarafshan and Murghab dry up in the sands. The whole country is said to be drying up.

The heat in summer and the cold in winter are extreme. The greater part of the country is arid and barren, being destitute even of wells; but there are some fertile tracts along the banks of rivers, yielding grain and fine fruits.

The inhabitants are rude tribes, formerly notorious for slave-dealing. They are Muhammadans, of the Sunni sect, and bitterly hate the Persians, who are Shiahs.

Turkistan has been called the "birthplace of nations." Successive hordes<sup>1</sup> have gone forth from it, subduing kingdoms, and establishing empires. The Turks went out from Turkistan, as did Baber, the founder of the Mogul empire in India.

The northern parts are peopled by wandering Tartar tribes, as the Kirghiz and Uzbeks, subsisting on their flocks and herds. The country is noted for its horses, which serve not only as beasts of burden, but are used largely as food. The national beverage of the inhabitants is mare's milk, fermented into an intoxicating<sup>2</sup> drink, called *coumisse*.

Commerce is carried on chiefly by caravans.

TOWNS.—Eastward, Khokan; north-west, Tashkend; westward, from Khokan, Samarkand, now connected by rail with the Caspian; south-west, Merv.

Khokan was the native country of Baber. The Khanate of Khokan now forms the Russian province FERGHANA. The reason assigned by the Russians for annexing large portions of Turkistan was, that some of their countrymen had been enslaved, and treated cruelly. The slave trade is now forbidden.

Samarkand, in the valley of the Zarafshan, was one of the greatest cities of Asia while the capital of the Tartar conqueror Timur, or Tamerlane (1370-1405). Tashkend is the largest city in Russian Central Asia, and the seat of government. Merv, on the Murghab, was formerly a splendid city. It was regarded as the chief centre of the independent Turkomans, but lately the inhabitants placed themselves under Russia.

The Transcaspian Railway commences at Krasnovodsk, on the Caspian, and passes through Merv, Bokhara, and Samarkand to Tashkend. It is to be continued across Siberia to Vladivostok. It is opening up the country, and doing much to civilize the people.

#### CENTRAL TURKISTAN.

CENTRAL TURKISTAN is divided from EASTERN TURKISTAN by the Pamir Plateau.

<sup>1</sup> Large bands living in tents; *urdu*, camp. <sup>2</sup> Making drunk: in; *toxicum*, poison.

The Pamir Plateau is 14,300 feet above the sea. It contains **Siri Kul Lake**, one of the sources of the Amu Daria, or Oxus.

CENTRAL TURKISTAN was formerly divided into the three Khanates<sup>1</sup> of **KHOKAN** in the east; **BOKHA'RA** in the centre; and **KHIVA** (Kee'va) in the west; with some smaller districts claiming independence. Russia has annexed the whole of Khokan, and large portions of Bokhara and Khiva. The two remaining Khanates are virtually subject to Russia.

The inhabitants are rude Muhammadans. Turkomans, Uzbeks, and Kirghiz, are the principal Tribes.

**TOWNS.**—**Bokhara**, on the Transcaspian Railway, is noted for its numerous Muhammadan schools, and has considerable trade. **Khiva**, south of the Sea of Aral, once had a large slave market.

The Muhammadan nations around look up to the Khan of Bokhara as the head of their religion.

There are some small States between the Hindu Kush and Afghanistan.

**CHITRAL**, in the north, has a capital of the same name. It is under Cashmere, and has a British agent.

**KAFIRISTAN** is between Chitral and Kabul. It is inhabited by a wild tribe, called *Kafirs*, or infidels,<sup>2</sup> because they are not Muhammadans; and *Siah Posh*, "black clad," from their dress of black goatskins.

**SWAT** lies to the east of Kafiristan.

The **Yuzufzais** occupy the hills to the north of Peshawar.

### AFGHANISTAN.

AFGHANISTAN is bounded on the north by Russian Turkistan; on the east by India; on the south by Baluchistan; and on the west by Persia.

The area is about 250,000 square miles,—about twice the size of the Bombay Presidency. The boundaries are uncertain. An English and Russian Commission lately marked out the north-west boundary.

The population is estimated at 4 millions.

**SURFACE.**—Afghanistan consists chiefly of a table-land. The **Hindu Kush**<sup>3</sup> Range traverses the north-east. The **Koh-i Baba**,<sup>4</sup> **Siah-Koh**,<sup>5</sup> and **Safed Koh**<sup>6</sup> are western continuations of the Hindu Kush. The **Sulaiman Mountains** run along the eastern frontier. **SEISTAN** is a large sandy desert in the south-west.

<sup>1</sup> Countries ruled by Khans. <sup>2</sup> Unbelievers: *in*, not; *fides*, belief. <sup>3</sup> Properly *Koh*, mountain. <sup>4</sup> Father Mountain. <sup>5</sup> Black Mountains. <sup>6</sup> White Mountains.

The principal river is the **Kabul**, a tributary of the Indus. The **Helmand** has a south-westerly course into the swampy **Lake Hamun**, in Seistan. The **Heri Rud**<sup>1</sup> flows westward, past Herat, and is lost in the sands.

**CLIMATE.**—The heat is very great in summer, and the cold is severe in winter.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Though much of the surface consists of arid deserts and rocky mountains, there are some tracts of great fertility, yielding grain, cotton, and fine fruits. Horses, cattle, and sheep are reared.

**PEOPLE.**—The country is inhabited by various rude and fierce tribes, with high and harsh features, long beards, and shaggy<sup>2</sup> mantles of skins.

The **Ghilzais** are one of the principal tribes. The **Hazaras**, in the north, are of Tartar descent.

The language is *Pushtu*, which contains many Persian words. Cultivation is carried on to some extent in the fertile districts, and goods are conveyed by camels across the country from India to Persia. Muhammadanism is the national religion. The government is conducted by Khans, nominally subject to the Amir, who resides at Kabul. Under Mahmud of Ghazni, Afghanistan was the seat of a powerful empire.

**TOWNS.**—**KABUL**, or Cabul, the capital, situated on the Kabul River, in the north-east, has considerable trade.

Kabul is 6,400 feet above the sea. It was the favourite residence of the Emperor Baber. Horses, wool, grapes, dried fruits, and asafoetida, are exported to India.

Eastward, at the entrance of the Khaiber Pass, **Jalalabad**, on the Kabul, noted for its defence by Sir Robert Sale, during the Afghan war; south-west of Kabul, **Ghazni**, the capital of Mahmud, the invader of Hindustan; south-west, **Kandahar**, on a tributary of the Helmand.

Near the north-western frontier, **Herat**<sup>3</sup>, which has been repeatedly attacked by the Persians. **Balkh**, in the north, now in ruins, was once a splendid city.

Balkh is called the “mother of cities,” and claims to be the birth-place of Zoroaster, or Zartusht, the founder of the Parsi religion. **BADAKSHAN**, north-east, has ruby mines; **KUNDUZ**, north of Kabul, gives name to a large district.

<sup>1</sup> Rud means river. <sup>2</sup> Rough. <sup>3</sup> The “City of a lakh of gardens” watered by the Heri Rud.

## BALUCHISTAN.

BALUCHISTAN is situated between Afghanistan and the Arabian Sea.

The area is about 120,000 square miles,—half the size of Afghanistan. The population is about 1 million, or 8 to the square mile.

The country consists of alternate rocks, mountains, and deserts.

The western part is composed of a desert of fine red sand, so light that it is formed by the wind into waves like those of the sea. The north-eastern districts contain some elevated table-lands, the ascent of which from India is through a long narrow rocky defile,<sup>1</sup> called the Bolan Pass.

The inhabitants are chiefly pastoral tribes, much given to plunder and bloodshed.

The two principal tribes are the **Baluchis** and **Brahuis**. The Khan of Kelat claims authority over the eastern tribes; but they are, in a great measure, independent. The western part belongs to Persia. Muhammadanism is the religion of the country.

**Kelat**, in the north-east, 8,000 feet above the sea, is the principal town.

**BRITISH BALUCHISTAN**.—A part of Baluchistan has been occupied by the English to protect India from invasion. **Quetta**, near the head of the **Bolan Pass**, is the principal station.

The **Sind-Pishin Railway**, from Ruk Junction, near Sukkur, runs north-west to **Sibi**. From Sibi one line goes up the Bolan Pass, while a second, called the **Harnai** line, goes up the **Nari** Pass. They meet at **Bostan**, and a single line goes on to **Chaman**, in the direction of Kandahar.

## PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the north by Asiatic Russia and the Caspian Sea; on the east by Afghanistan and Baluchistan; on the south by the Persian Gulf; and on the west by Asiatic Turkey.

The area is about 630,000 square miles, or more than one-third of the size of India.

**SURFACE**.—The interior consists of a high table-land, sur-

<sup>1</sup> A narrow pass.

rounded by mountains. The central and eastern parts are composed chiefly of salt and sandy deserts. Towards the north and west there are some tracts of great fertility. The rivers are few and small. Salt lakes are numerous.

The plateau of Persia is from 2,000 to 4,000 feet in height. The Elburz Range forms its northern boundary. Demavend, the highest peak, about 18,000 feet in height, lies south of the Caspian.

The Karun, which flows into the Shat-el-Arab, is the only navigable river.

In the north-west there is a large lake, called Urumiya, 4,300 feet above the sea, the water of which is very salt.



PERSIANS EATING.

**CLIMATE.**—During summer the heat is excessive, especially in the low grounds; in the table-land the winters are very cold. Persia includes part of the rainless zone, stretching across Asia.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Wheat, rice, cotton, tobacco, the poppy, and asafoetida plant are cultivated. The fruits of Persia are excellent, and the wine of Shiraz is considered the best in Asia. The mulberry<sup>1</sup> abounds in the north; roses are also plentiful.

Camels are numerous; the horses are strong and swift. The Persian sheep has a large, flat tail, sometimes weighing 12 scers. Lions, leopards, bears, and other wild animals, are found in the country.

1 The tree on which the silk-worm feeds.

PEOPLE.—The population is estimated at 9 millions. The Persians are lively and polite. The country likewise contains a large number of rude, wandering tribes.

The Persians have been called the “French of the East.” They differ in disposition from the Turks, who are generally men of few words and serious.

The native name of Persia is *Iran*, which is connected with the word *Aryan*. Persia was peopled by the Aryan race. The population is supposed to be decreasing from misgovernment. The wandering tribes are called *Ilyats*, meaning “families.”

LANGUAGE.—The Persian language is famed for its melody.<sup>1</sup>

MANUFACTURES.—The Persians excel in the manufacture of carpets, shawls, and sword-blades. Silks, opium, cotton, and dried fruits are the principal articles of export; cotton goods are the chief imports.

Merchandise is transported<sup>2</sup> by camels and asses, as there are no roads. People travel in caravans for protection against robbers.

RELIGION.—The Persians are chiefly Muhammadans of the Shiah sect. There are some Armenian Christians.

They maintain that Ali, the son-in-law of Muhammad, was his first rightful successor, and reject the traditions<sup>3</sup> observed by the Turks and others, called Sunnites.<sup>4</sup> The Ilyats are Sunnites.

The Parsis of India came originally from Persia.

GOVERNMENT.—The Shah, or king, is a despot, and without a trial can put any of his subjects to death.

The Shah styles himself *Shah-in-Shah*, King of Kings.

Property is very insecure, and the people are very much oppressed by the khans, or chiefs.

In 559 B.C. Cyrus united the Persians with the Medes, and founded the Persian empire. It soon attained great wealth and power; but was overturned by Alexander of Macedon, 331 B.C. A new one was formed, about a century afterwards, call the Parthian, which rose to some importance. In the seventh century of the Christian era the country was subdued by the caliphs.<sup>5</sup> In 1772 it was conquered by the Afghans; but soon recovered its independence under Nadir Shah. At his death (1779) one of his generals became ruler of Afghanistan, and another obtained the kingdom of Persia. The power of the Shah of Persia is now comparatively inconsiderable.

DIVISIONS.—FARSIS'TAN, east of the head of the Persian Gulf, was the original seat of the Persian monarchy; but IRAK AJ'EMI, between

1 Sweet sound. 2 Carried: *trans.* beyond; *porto*, to carry. 3 Sayings handed down: *trans*, beyond; *do*, to give. 4 *Sunna*, a collection of traditions. 5 Successors of Muhammad.

the Caspian and the Persian Gulf, is now the most important province. **KHORASAN**' is a large province in the north-east. There are several other provinces.

**CITIES.**—**TEHERAN**', the capital, rather larger than Delhi, is situated in the north.

During the hot season it is very unhealthy, and is therefore deserted by many of the inhabitants. Teheran is nearly in the same latitude as Tokio and Gibraltar. It has now a short line of railway.

**Tabriz**, in the north-west, in Persian Armenia, is the most commercial city in Persia.

The overland trade with Europe passes through Tabriz. The population is about 180,000.

**Ham'adan**, south-west of Teheran, occupies the site of **Ecbat'ana**, the ancient capital of the Medes.

**Ispahan**', south of Teheran, was the capital under the caliphs, and still has considerable trade. **Yezd**, towards the centre, and **Meshed**, in the north-east, are two chief seats of the caravan trade. **Shiraz**, east of the Persian Gulf, contains the tombs of Hafiz and Sádi, two famous Persian poets, and is noted for its wine and roses.

Yezd contains a number of Parsis. The magnificent ruins of **Persep'olis**, the capital of the ancient Persians, lie north-east of Shiraz. **Resht** and **Balfrush** are towns near the Caspian.

**Bushire**<sup>1</sup> (bu-sheer), on the Persian Gulf, is an important seaport.

**Bundar Abbas**', or **Gombroon**, is a seaport at the mouth of the Persian Gulf. **Lingah**, another seaport farther up the Gulf, has most trade. **Ormus**, a small island near the former, was once a Portuguese settlement, celebrated for its commerce. **Gwadar**, on the Mekran coast, is a telegraph station, near the boundary between Persia and Baluchistan.

#### ARABIA.

ARABIA, forming the south-western corner of Asia, is the largest peninsula in the world. It is bounded on the north by Asiatic Turkey; on the east by the Persian Gulf; on the south by the Arabian Sea; and on the west by the Red Sea.

<sup>1</sup> Properly Abu-Shehr, "father of cities."

The area is estimated at 1,200,000 square miles—one-fifth less than that of India.

**SURFACE.**—A narrow belt of sandy lowland runs round the coast. The interior consists chiefly of a vast plateau, sloping northward, with a hilly region in the centre. **Mount Sinai** is a celebrated peak between the **Gulfs of Suez** and **Ak'aba**, at the head of the Red Sea. A chain of mountains extends along the western and southern coasts. The central part of the plateau is fertile, and there are scattered *oases*; but much of the north and south consists of sandy deserts. There is no lake or navigable river in the whole country.



THE SIMOOM.

**CLIMATE.**—Arabia is one of the hottest and driest countries in the world. It is subject to a scorching wind, called the *Simoom*, or poison-blast.

The sky is generally cloudless, and the sun pours its rays on plains of burning sand. The *Simoom*, or *Samiel*, besides raising clouds of sand, is pestilential.<sup>1</sup> To avoid its deadly effects, men throw themselves flat on the ground, and beasts thrust their noses into the sand till it has passed over. At night, during the cold season, the winds are sometimes chilly and piercing. Though Arabia forms part of the rainless zone of Asia, the centre of the plateau has rains during winter.

<sup>1</sup> Causing sickness; *pestis*, the plague.

The mountain torrents are quickly swallowed up by the thirsty ground. The desert is furrowed by *wadis*, or beds of water-courses.

VEGETABLES.—Joar,<sup>1</sup> a kind of millet, and dates form the principal articles of food. Coffee is grown in the south-west.

Arabia has long been celebrated for its aloes, myrrh, and frankincense;<sup>2</sup> but they were nearly all brought from Africa, India, and the Eastern Islands. The coffee is of the finest quality.

ANIMALS.—Arabia is famous for its noble breed of horses; but the most useful animal is the camel.

The Arabs are very kind to their horses, treating them like children. The wild ass, various kinds of antelopes, the panther, and the ostrich, are likewise found in Arabia. Pearls are obtained in the Persian Gulf.

PEOPLE.—The inhabitants consist of two classes. The Arabs with fixed abodes are somewhat civilized. The wandering Arabs, called *Bedouins* (bed'-oo-eens), “dwellers in the desert,” are wild and fierce, living by their flocks and plunder. The population is estimated at 6 millions.

From early times Arabia has been very insecure. The “hand” of the Arab has been against every man, and every man’s hand against his. Merchants require to travel in caravans.

LANGUAGE.—Arabic, like Hebrew, belongs to the Semitic family. It is written from right to left.

RELIGION.—The Arabs are Muhammadans.

Arabia is chiefly remarkable as the country of Muhammad, the founder of the Muslim religion, who was born at Mecca about 570 years after Christ.

Abdul Wahab formed, during the last century, a new sect, called *Waha'bis*. They are the strictest Muhammadans in the world.

DIVISIONS.—Arabia was anciently divided into ARABIA PETRÆA, Stony Arabia, in the north-west; ARABIA DESERTA, or Desert Arabia, in the north-east; and ARABIA FELIX, or, “the Happy,” in the south-west. Arabia Petraea is supposed to have had its name from *Petra*, the capital, which was cut out of rocks. The Western Coast, called ARABISTAN, at present belongs to Turkey. It is divided into the provinces of HEDJAZ in the north, and YEMEN in the south. Turkey also claims the western shore of the Persian Gulf. OMAN, on the south-east coast, is under a sultan, who is sometimes styled the *Imam of Muscat*. HADRAMAUT lies between Aden and Oman. The centre, called NEJD, “the Highland,” was under a Wahabi Sultan. Some

1 Sometimes called *dourra*. 2 Kinds of spices.

Arab tribes are independent, and are governed by their own *sheikhs* or chiefs. The Sinai peninsula is under Egypt.

**TOWNS.**—**Mecca**, the birth-place of Muhammad, is about 40 miles inland from the Red Sea. It is much visited by pilgrims. **Jidda** is the port of Mecca.

The *Kaaba*, in the centre of the temple of Mecca, contains a black stone, which has been considered sacred by the Arabs from an early period. All Muhammadans are commanded to visit Mecca once in their lives.

**Medina**<sup>1</sup> (me-dee'-na), north of Mecca, contains the tomb of Muhammad.

In 622 A.D. Muhammad fled from Mecca to Medina to escape his enemies. Muhammadans reckon from this era, called the *Hej'ira*, or Flight. Their year contains only twelve lunar<sup>2</sup> months. Muhammed died at Medina, 635 A.D.

Mecca and Medina are in the province of **HEDJAZ**, which means the "Land of Pilgrimage." **Yembo** is the port of Medina.

**Sana**, an inland town in the south, is the capital of **YEMEN**.

**Mocha**, near the Strait of Babelmandeb, was the port from which coffee was shipped. It is now deserted.

**Hodeida** is the port of Sana.

**Riad**, in the centre, was the capital of the Wahabi Sultan.

**A'den**, near the entrance to the Red Sea, belongs to the English.

Steam-vessels, plying between India and England, often call at this place for a supply of coals. The island of **Perim**, at the mouth of the Red Sea, also belongs to the English.

**Muscat**, on the east coast, is a place of considerable trade, and the capital of the Sultan of Oman, the principal chief of Arabia.

**Bahrein**, an island in the Persian Gulf, is famous for its pearl fishery.

### ASIATIC TURKEY.

**ASIATIC TURKEY** is the most westerly country in Asia. It is bounded on the north by the Black Sea and Asiatic Russia; on the east by Persia; on the south by Arabia

<sup>1</sup> Town. <sup>2</sup> Belonging to the moon; *luna*, the moon.

and the Mediterranean ; and on the west by the Mediterranean. It is about half the size of India.

The north-west consists of table-lands, traversed by mountains ; the south-east, of sandy deserts and alluvial<sup>1</sup> plains.

The principal divisions are ASIA MI'NOR, SYRIA, part of ARMENIA, KURDISTAN, or Assyria, AL-JEZI'RAH (al-je-zee'-rah), or Mesopotamia, IRAK AR'ABI, or Chaldea ; and ARABISTAN, or Turkish Arabia.

The area is about 700,000 square miles. The population, estimated at 22 millions, includes Turks, Arabs, Greeks, Armenians, Turkomans, Kurds, Syrians, Jews, &c. About one-fourth are Christians.

The country is subject to the Sultan at Constantinople. It is divided into provinces, called *Eyalets* or *Vilayets*, each under a *Vali*, a pasha of the highest rank. There are no roads; the people are greatly oppressed by unjust exactions ;<sup>2</sup> bribery is universal ; and from the numerous robbers, property is very insecure. There is a proverb, " Grass will not grow where the Turk has set his foot."

Asiatic Turkey is, in some respects, the most interesting country in the world. Eden is supposed to have been situated within it, and after the Flood the ark rested on the mountains of Armenia. In the countries watered by the Tigris and Euphrates, were the ancient monarchies of Assyria and Babylon ; and in Palestine most of the events related in Scripture occurred. It was the earliest seat of Greek civilization. Homer and some of the greatest of the Greeks were born in Asia Minor.

#### ASIA MINOR.

ASIA MINOR (Lesser Asia) is a large peninsula, lying between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean.

The name Asia was first given to a small district in the south-west. *Acts xvi. 7.*

SURFACE.—The interior consists of an elevated table-land, bounded on the north by ranges of hills extending along the shore of the Black Sea, and on the south by the Taurus chain.

RIVERS.—The longest river is the **Kizil Irmak** (Red River), the ancient *Halys*, and next to it, the **Sakaria**, both of which flow into the Black Sea. The **Meander** (me-an'-der), **Hermus**, and **Sarabat'** fall into the Archipelago.

1 Washed down by rivers : *ad*, to ; *luo*, to wash. 2 Demands.

The English word "meander," to wind round, is derived from the very winding course of the Meander.

There are several salt lakes in the interior.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is temperate and pleasant.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Wheat, rice, maize, sugar, fruits, and cotton, are the principal vegetable productions; but, on account of oppression, agriculture is much neglected.

The central table-lands are nearly destitute of trees. They abound, however, with pasturage, affording a plentiful subsistence to the flocks and herds of the wandering Turkomans. The northern slope towards the Black Sea is so covered with forests, that it has received the name of the "Sea of Trees."

A breed of goats is found at Ango'ra, furnishing fine silky hair, used in the manufacture of shawls.

Commerce is mostly in the hands of the Europeans, who are usually called *Franks*.

**PEOPLE.**—The inhabitants are chiefly Turks; but Greeks, Armenians, and Jews, are numerous and increasing. The Turks are Muhammadans. Most of the Christians belong to the Greek Church.

The Turks are decreasing in number. They are Sunnites, and feel a bitter hatred against the Persians, who are Shiahs.

The principal divisions are ANATO'LIA,<sup>1</sup> in the west; KARAMANIA in the centre, and ROUM, or SIVAS', in the north-east.

**TOWNS.**—Smyr'na, in the west, is the largest city in the country, and a place of great trade.

Dried fruits, silk, goats' hair, and drugs, are the principal exports. The only railways in Asia Minor are from Smyrna inland.

Scu'tari, on the Bos'porus, is the eastern suburb of Constantinople.

Brusa, south of Constantinople, was the Ottoman capital from 1326 to 1366. Kutay'ah, on a branch of the Sakaria, is the principal city of Anatolia.

Ango'ra, towards the centre, is noted for its silky-haired goats. Sinope (sin-o'-pe) and Treb'izond are ports on the Black Sea. Konieh, the ancient Iconium, lies south from

<sup>1</sup> Anatolia means the same as the *Levant, rising, or the East.* It was so called by the Greeks.

**Angora.** **Sivas'**, the capital of Roum, in the north-east, is near the source of the Kizil Irmak.

**Tar'sus**, on the *Cydnus*, is situated in the south-east.

It is noted as the birth-place of the Apostle Paul. Alexander the Great nearly lost his life from bathing, when fatigued, in the cold water of the Cydnus. To the north-east of Tarsus there is a famous pass in the Taurus range, called the **Cilician Gates**.

**ISLANDS.**—**Cyprus** is a large and fertile island in the Mediterranean, now under British rule.

Cyprus gave its name to copper, for which it was anciently noted. **Nikosia** is the capital; **Larnaca** is the chief seaport.

**Rhodes**, **Sa'mos**, **Scio**, the ancient *Chios* (ki'os), and **Mytile'ne**, or *Lesbos*, are celebrated islands in the Archipelago.

#### SYRIA, INCLUDING PALESTINE.

**SYRIA** lies between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean. It is bounded on the north by the Taurus Range, and on the south by Arabia.

**SURFACE.**—The eastern parts are level. The double chain of the Mountains of Lebanon, enclosing the fertile valley of Coele-Syria, extends from north to south.

**RIVERS.**—The **Orontes** flows northward; the **Leontes** drains the southern slopes of Lebanon.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is dry and hot in summer.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—The eastern parts of Syria are sandy deserts; the coast and Coele-Syria are in general very fertile. Grains, fruits, tobacco, and cotton, are the principal vegetable productions. Lebanon was once famed for its cedars, but they are now few in number. The vine still grows luxuriantly,<sup>2</sup> and silk is produced in considerable quantities.

**PEOPLE.**—The Turks are the dominant race, but Arabs are numerous. Mount Lebanon is inhabited by two tribes, the *Mar'onites* and *Druses*, who are nearly independent.

The Maronites profess a form of Christianity, resembling that of the Greek Church. The Druses are a warlike race, who seceded<sup>3</sup> from Muhammadanism, and have a religion peculiar to themselves.<sup>4</sup>

**TOWNS.**—**Alep'po**, nearly midway between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean, is the chief city in northern Syria.

<sup>1</sup> Hollow Syria; *koilos*, hollow. <sup>2</sup> Plentifully; *luxus*, excess. <sup>3</sup> Went away from, left: *se*, away; *cedo*, to go.

It was anciently called *Helbon*; it is now called *Haleb*. Though nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1822, it still possesses extensive trade. *Scanderoon*, or *Alexandretta*, the seaport of Aleppo, was founded by Alexander the Great.

**Antioch**, now *Antakia*, on the *Orontes*, was a celebrated city in ancient times.

Here the followers of Jesus Christ were first called Christians.

*Latakia*, noted for its tobacco, and *Tripl'oli*, are seaports. *Palmy'ra*, the ancient *Tadmor*, and *Baalbec*, are two cities to the east of Lebanon, celebrated for their ruins.

**Damascus** is situated on a well-watered plain, to the north-east of Palestine.

It is one of the oldest cities in the world, and is noted for its roses, the manufacture of sword-blades, and cloth, called *damask*.

**Beyrouth**, the port of Damascus, is the largest town on the coast of Syria.

**PALESTINE**, or the **HOLY LAND**, forms the south-west portion of Syria. It is a small country, celebrated as the scene of most of the events recorded<sup>1</sup> in Scripture.

The Lord Jesus Christ, the founder of Christianity, lived and died in Palestine. Shakespeare thus refers to it :

“Over whose acres walked those blessed feet,  
Which, fourteen hundred years ago, were nailed  
For our advantage on the bitter cross.”

The boundaries varied at different periods; but Palestine may be said to be about half the size of Ceylon.

The surface is hilly. The north includes the southern portion of the Mountains of *Lib'anus*,<sup>2</sup> and *Anti<sup>3</sup>-Libanus*. *Carmel*, a promontory on the coast; *Tabor*, east of Carmel; and the *Mount of Olives*, near Jerusalem; are other well-known hills.

The *Jordan* is the only important river. It flows through the **Sea of Galilee** in the north, and falls into the **Dead Sea**. The Dead Sea is about 1,300 feet below the level of the Mediterranean, and its waters are about eight times saltier than those of the ocean. Its shores are the lowest known land.

The Jews obtained possession of Palestine about 1450 B.C., when it was portioned out among the Twelve Tribes. After the death of Solomon, about 976 B.C., the country was separated into the Kingdom of Israel in the north, and the Kingdom of Judah in the south.

Palestine has passed through many changes. In the time of Christ, it was divided into *Gal'ilee* in the north, *Sama'ria* in the middle, *Jude'a* in the south, and *Pere'a* east of the *Jordan*. The Roman Governor lived at *Cæsare'a*, on the coast.

<sup>1</sup> Mentioned, described. <sup>2</sup> Lebanon means white. <sup>3</sup> Opposite.

**TOWNS.**—**Jerusalem**, the capital, is one of the oldest and most celebrated cities in the world.

Jerusalem is a few miles west of the northern extremity of the Dead Sea. Here Jesus Christ was put to death, 33 A.D.

**Bethlehem** is a small town, about 6 miles south of Jerusalem, where Jesus Christ was born. Still farther south, **Hebron**, an ancient city. North-east of Jerusalem, near the Jordan, **Jer'icho**. North of Jerusalem, **Napious**,<sup>1</sup> the ancient *Shechem*. East of Carmel, **Nazareth**, where Jesus Christ was brought up. On the Sea of Galilee, **Tiberias**.

Northward on the coast, **Saida**, the ancient **Sidon**; south of Saida, **Tsour**, the ancient **Tyre**, now a small village inhabited by fishermen.

The strip of country along the east coast of the Mediterranean was anciently called *Phoenicia*. The Phoenician ships sailed as far as Britain on the west and India on the east. Tyre and Sidon were once splendid cities. Alphabetic writing was invented by the Phœnicians.

North of the Bay of Acre, **Acre**, noted for its sieges. **Jaffa**, the ancient *Joppa*, is the port of Jerusalem, with which it is now connected by rail; south-west, **Gaza** a trading town on the route to Egypt.

#### ARMENIA.

**ARME'NIA** is situated south-east of the Black Sea. The eastern part of this Province was annexed by Russia in the late war. The south-east belongs to Persia.

The country contains elevated table-lands and mountains, interspersed with beautiful valleys. Three empires, Turkey, Russia, and Persia, meet at Mount Ararat on the eastern frontier. Its summit, upwards of three miles in height, is covered with perpetual snow.

The **Euphrates** flows southward. The **Kur**, with its tributary the **Aras**, runs eastward into the Caspian Sea.

**Lake Van** is a large salt lake, 5,500 feet above the sea.

The *climate* is hot in summer, but snow lies long on the ground during winter.

The Armenians are the most industrious class of the population of Asiatic Turkey, and are found scattered, like the Jews, over many parts of the East. Their form of Christianity resembles that of the Greek Church.

<sup>1</sup> From *Neapolis*, the new city.

TOWNS.—**Erzeroum**, the capital, is situated near the centre; south-east, **Van**, on Lake Van.

Erzeroum is an ancient city, with considerable trade.

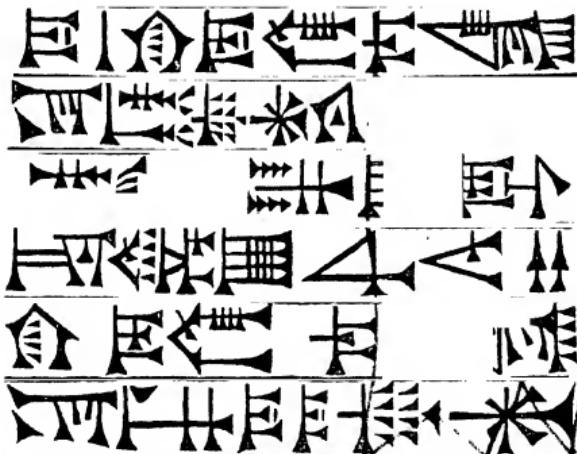
KURDISTAN, or ASSYRIA.

KURDISTAN, the ancient ASSYRIA, is situated to the south of Armenia, and north of the Tigris.

The north-eastern parts are mountainous; the south-western are level, and watered by the Tigris.

The Kurds are a fierce pastoral race, much given to robbery. Their religion is Muhammadanism, mixed with Parsiism and devil-worship.

The ruins of **Nineveh** are on the banks of the Tigris.



ARROW-HEADED CHARACTERS.

They extend for about thirty miles. Layard and Smith, English travellers, a few years ago, opened some of the mounds, and discovered the remains of palaces and temples, containing numerous inscriptions in arrow-headed<sup>1</sup> characters, which are now being deciphered.<sup>2</sup>

AL-JEZIRAH, or MESOPOTAMIA.

AL-JEZIRAH, the ancient MESOPOTAMIA, lies between the Euphrates and Tigris, to the south of Kurdistan.

1 Shaped like arrows. 2 Explained.

Al-Jezirah means The *Island*. Mesopotamia, from *me'sos*, middle, and *pot'amos*, a river, has the same meaning as *daab*.

The surface is level. In ancient times the country was noted for its fertility; but the neglect of irrigation has converted it into a desert, subject to scorching winds during the hot season.

With the exception of the people in the towns, the inhabitants are wandering Arabs.

**Towns.**—The capital, **Mosul**, on the Tigris, was once noted for its fine cloths, called muslins.

The ruins of *Nin'evah* are opposite Mosul.

**Diarbekir** is situated in the north, on the Tigris, which is navigable to this place.

**Orfa**, or **Urfa**, supposed to be the ancient *Ur* of the Chaldees, is situated in the north-west. It was afterwards called *Edessa*.

#### IRAK-ARABI, OR CHALDEA.

**IRAK-AR'ABI** (Irak of the Arabs), the ancient Babylonia, lies along the lower courses of the Tigris and Euphrates, which unite before entering the Persian Gulf. It was once very fertile, but much of it is now a desert.

**Towns.**—**Bagdad**, on the Tigris, once the splendid capital of the Caliphs, has still a large caravan trade.

**Hilleh**, on the Euphrates south of Bagdad, is situated amid the ruins of ancient Babylon.

A large mound, called *Birs Nimroud*, is supposed to be the ruins of the Tower of Babel. Babylon means "The Gate of Bel," the sun-god.

**Bas'sora**, or **Basra**, on the *Shat-el-Arab*,<sup>1</sup> the united stream of the Euphrates and Tigris, has extensive commerce.

#### CHIEF SEAPORTS OF ASIA.\*

**Black Sea** : Poti, Batum, Trebizon, Sinope ; **Mediterranean** : Smyrna, Scanderoon, Latakia, Tripoli, Beyrouth, Acre, Jaffa ; **Red Sea** : Yembo, Jidda, Hodeida, Mocha ; **Gulf of Aden** : Aden ; **Arabian Sea** : Muscat ; **Persian Gulf** : Bunder Abbas, Lingah, Bushire ; **Ceylon** : Colombo, Galle, Trincomalee ; **Strait of Malacca** : Penang, Malacca, Singapore ; **China Sea** : Bangkok, Saigon, Hu'e, Macao, Hong-Kong, Canton, Swatow, Amoy, Foochow, Ningpo, Shanghai, Nanking ; **Yellow Sea** : Chefoo, Tientsin ; **Japan** : Nagasaki, Kobé, Yokohama, Niigata, Hakodate ; **Eastern Siberia** : Vladivostok, Petropaulovski.

<sup>1</sup> River of the Arabs.

\* Exclusive of India, the seaports of which are given at p. 33.

## EUROPE.

EUROPE, the smallest but most powerful and enlightened division of the globe, is situated in the north-western part of the Eastern Hemisphere. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Ural Mountains, the Ural River, and the Caspian; on the south by the Caucasus Range, the Black Sea, and the Mediterranean; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean.

The area is nearly four millions of square miles.

The greatest length of Europe, from east to west, is about 3,400 miles. The greatest breadth, from north to south, is 2,400 miles.

Europe is nearly three times the size of India. It contains about one-fourteenth of the earth's land-surface.

**GENERAL ASPECT.**—Europe forms a vast peninsula, jutting out from Western Asia, and broken up into several smaller peninsulas. It is remarkable for the great number of its inland seas, and the consequent length of its coast line.

The length of the coast line is about 20,000 miles. Commerce and civilization have been promoted through the easy communication by sea.

## COUNTRIES.

The principal countries of Europe are the following:—

*In the North-West.*

GREAT BRITAIN and IRELAND, NORWAY and SWEDEN.

*In the North-Eastern Plain.*

RUSSIA, PRUSSIA, DENMARK, HOLLAND, BELGIUM.

*In the Central Mountain-Lands.*

FRANCE, SWITZERLAND, GERMAN STATES, AUSTRIA-HUNGARY.

*In the Southern Peninsulas.*

PORTUGAL, SPAIN, ITALY, GREECE, TURKEY, ROUMANIA and SERVIA.

## SEAS AND GULFS.

The **White Sea**, in the north of Russia, is an arm of the Arctic Ocean.

It is so called from the ice and snow with which it is covered during a great part of the year.

The **Baltic Sea**<sup>1</sup> lies between Russia, Prussia, and Sweden. Its northern arm is called the **Gulf of Bothnia**; its eastern, the **Gulf of Finland**.

The **Gulf of Ri'ga** is south of the entrance to the Gulf of Finland; the **Gulf of Dan'zig** is in the south.

The Baltic Sea is shallow, and, owing to the numerous rivers which it receives, the water is much less salt than that of the ocean. A considerable part of it is frozen over in winter. Armies have marched across its widest parts. It contains about 135,000 square miles, and is therefore about the size of the Madras Presidency.

The **North Sea**, or **German Ocean**, lies between Britain and the Continent.

The **Cat'tegat**,<sup>2</sup> or the *Sleeve*, between Denmark and Sweden, and the **Ska'ger Rack**,<sup>3</sup> between Denmark and Norway, connect the North Sea with the Baltic. The **Zuy'der Zee** (South Sea) is to the north of Holland. The North Sea is shallow in the south, but deepens towards the north. It was anciently called the German Sea. The Eider Canal joins the North Sea and the Baltic.

The **Irish Sea** is between England and Ireland.

The **Bay of Biscay**, noted for its stormy rough seas, is a broad arm of the Atlantic, to the west of France and north of Spain.

The **Mediterranean Sea** separates Europe and Africa.

The Mediterranean is so called from being, as it were, in the *middle of the earth*. It contains about one million square miles, and is the largest inland sea in the world. In many parts it is very deep. The evaporation<sup>4</sup> from its surface being greater than the quantity of fresh water that flows into it, it is saltier than the ocean. A current runs into it from the Atlantic. It is noted for its bright blue waters.

The **Gulf of Lions**, which is often stormy, is a part of the Mediterranean, south of France. Frequently it is incorrectly written *Lyons*. The **Gulf of Gen'oa** is north-west of Italy; the **Gulf of Tarant'o**, south-east of Italy.

The **Adriatic Sea** is an arm of the Mediterranean, between Italy and Turkey. The **Archipelago**, or **Æge'an Sea**, is a part of the Mediterranean, between Greece and Asiatic Turkey.

The Adriatic was dreaded by sailors in ancient times on account of

<sup>1</sup> Sea of *Baltis*, or Straits. <sup>2</sup> "Cat's Throat." <sup>3</sup> "Crooked and stormy strait." <sup>4</sup> Rack means strait. 4 Drying up, passing off in vapour: *e*, out of; *vapor*, steam.

its sudden storms. The eastern part of the Mediterranean is called the **Levant**,<sup>1</sup> *rising*, or the *East*.

The **Sea of Mar'mora** lies between European Turkey and Asia Minor.

It is so called from a famous marble (*marmor*) island which it contains.

The **Black Sea** forms the northern boundary of Asia Minor. The **Sea of Az'ov** is a shallow lake connected with the Black Sea.

The Black Sea was anciently called the **Euxine**. It is oval in shape, and larger than the Madras and Bombay Presidencies. As it receives one-third of the drainage of Europe, its water is not so salt as that of the ocean. The northern shores are often fringed with ice in winter. They are also shallow from the silt brought down by the rivers. The depth of the *Sea of Azov* does not exceed 40 feet, and its water is brackish.<sup>2</sup>

#### ISLANDS.

In the **ARCTIC OCEAN**, **Nova Zem'bla**<sup>3</sup> and **Spitz-bergen**.<sup>4</sup>

**Franz Joseph's Land**, lately discovered, lies between Nova Zembla and the North Pole. **Waigatz** (vi'-gats) and **Kolguev** lie to the south and west of Nova Zembla; the **Lofo'den Islands** are to the west of Norway.

In the **ATLANTIC OCEAN**, **Great Britain**, **Ireland**, and **Iceland**.

**Great Britain**,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  times the size of Ceylon, is the largest European island. **Ireland** and **Iceland** are each one-third larger than Ceylon. The **Fa'roe Islands**<sup>5</sup> lie between Britain and Iceland; the **Azores** are a small group, west of Portugal.

In the **BALTIC**: **Zea'land**, **Fu'en**, and **Laa'land**, near the entrance; **Bornholm** (born'hom), **O'land**, and **Goth'land**, south-east of Sweden; **Oesel** (e'-sel) and **Da'go**, near the Gulf of Riga; the **A'land Islands**, at the mouth of the Gulf of Bothnia.

In the **MEDITERRANEAN**: **Cor'sica**, **Sardin'ia**, **Sic'il'y**, **Mal'ta**, and **Can'dia**, the ancient *Crete*.

**Sig'ly** is the largest island in the Mediterranean. The **Balea'ric**<sup>7</sup> **Islands** lie east of Spain; the **I'onian Islands**, to the west of Greece; the **Cyclades**<sup>8</sup> (sike'-la-des), in the Archipelago.

<sup>1</sup> *Levo*, to raise. <sup>2</sup> Having a little salt. <sup>3</sup> New land. Also called *Novaia Zemlia*. <sup>4</sup> Peaked mountains. <sup>5</sup> Named after the emperor of Austria, by their Austrian discoverer. <sup>6</sup> Sheep Islands. <sup>7</sup> *Ballo*, to throw. In ancient times the inhabitants were skilful in throwing stones with slings. <sup>8</sup> *Kyklos*, a circle. The islands form a circular cluster.

## STRAITS.

The **Sound** is the chief entrance into the Baltic ; the **Strait of Do'ver** connects the North Sea with the English Channel ; the **Strait of Gibraltar** joins the Mediterranean to the Atlantic ; the **Dardanelles** (dar-da-nelz'), or *Helle-  
pont*,<sup>1</sup> unites the Archipelago with the Sea of Marmora ; the **Strait of Constantinople**, or *Bos'porus*,<sup>2</sup> is between the Sea of Marmora and the Black Sea.

The **Great Belt** and **Little Belt** are smaller entrances into the Baltic ; the **North Channel** leads north, and **St. George's Channel** leads south from the Irish Sea ; the **Strait of Bonifacio** (bo-ne-fah'-cho) is between Corsica and Sardinia ; the **Strait of Messina** (mes-ee'-na) is between Italy and Sicily ; the **Strait of Otranto** is at the entrance into the Adriatic ; the **Strait of Yenikale** (yen-i-kah'-le) joins the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.

## CAPES.

**North Cape** is on an island in Norway. **Nordkyn**<sup>3</sup> is the most northerly point of the mainland of Europe ; **Cape Ro'ca**, or the *Rock of Lisbon*, in Portugal, the most westerly point ; and **Tarifa** (ta-ree'-fa), in Spain, the most southerly point. **Cape Matapan**' is the southern point of Greece.

The **Naze** (Nose) is south of Norway ; the **Skaw**,<sup>4</sup> north of Denmark ; **Cape Wrath**, north of Scotland ; **Cape Clear**, south-west of Ireland ; **Land's End**, the most westerly point of England ; **Cape La Hogue** (hog), north-west of France ; **Capes Or'tegal** and **Finisterre**<sup>5</sup> (fin-is-ter'), north-west of Spain, and **Cape St. Vincent**, south-west of Portugal, project into the Atlantic. **Capes Sparti-  
ven'to** and **Leuca** form the two southern points of Italy.

## PENINSULAS AND ISTHMUSES.

The principal Peninsulas are **Scandina'via**, including Norway and Sweden ; **Jütland**, in the north of Denmark ; **Spain** and **Portugal** ; **Italy**, the **Balkan** Peninsula, and the **Crime'a** (kri-me'-a) in the south of Russia.

The country between the Adriatic and the Black Sea is called the **Balkan** Peninsula, being traversed by mountains of that name. **Greece** forms part of it, and the **More'a** is a smaller peninsula,

<sup>1</sup> Sea of Helle. <sup>2</sup> *Bous, ox ; poros, passage.* So narrow that an ox might swim across. <sup>3</sup> North Chin. <sup>4</sup> Capo. <sup>5</sup> *Land's End : finis end ; terra, land.*

joined to Greece by the **Isthmus of Cor'inth**. The Crimea is connected with the mainland by the **Isthmus of Per'ekop**.

Europe resembles Asia in having three large southern peninsulas—Spain, Italy, and the Balkan—corresponding to Arabia, India, and Indo-China.

The peninsulas occupy about one-fourth of Europe. All the above, with the exception of Jütland, stretch southwards, and are traversed by mountain ranges.

### MOUNTAINS.



*Section of Europe from West to East.*

There are two principal Mountain Regions,—the larger in the south, the smaller in the north-west.

As in Asia, the principal chains run east and west.

The **Ural Mountains**, on the north-east, are partly in Asia. The highest point is about 5,400 feet.

The **Cau'casus Range**, on the south-eastern frontier, contains **Mount Elburz**,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles in height, the loftiest peak in Europe.

The **Alps** form the centre of High Europe. **Mont Blanc**<sup>1</sup> (blawng), the highest peak, is nearly three miles in height.

The Alps sweep round the west and north of Italy, and spread out in the east in parallel chains.

A part of Central Europe forms a plateau, nearly 2,000 feet in elevation. From the latitude, the snow-line in the Alps is only about 9,000 feet above the level of the sea. The Alps are intersected by numerous valleys. As the Caucasus Mountains are on the frontiers of Asia, the Alps are sometimes considered the highest mountains in Europe. They form the great watershed of Central Europe.

The **Ap'ennines** traverse the Peninsula of Italy.

They form a continuation of the Alps. The average height is about 4,000 feet. **Monte Corno**, the loftiest peak, is 9,543 feet. The higher parts are covered with snow several months during the year.

The **Carpa'thian Mountains** are situated in the north-east of Austria.

<sup>1</sup> **Blanc** means white. It is so called from being always covered with snow. **Mont Blanc** has the same meaning as *Dwalagiri*. **Alp** means high or white.

They sweep in a semicircle round the north-east of Hungary.

The elevation of the highest peak is 9,528 feet. Other ranges extend westward.

**The Balkan' Mountains** extend from the Black Sea westward through Turkey.

They are separated from the Carpathian Mountains by the valley of the Danube. Their average elevation is about 3,000 feet, but one peak, Tchar Dagh,<sup>1</sup> rises to the height of 9,840 feet. They send off spurs towards the north and south. A chain of mountains stretches along the east coast of the Adriatic to the south of Greece.



VOLCANO.

**The Pyr'enees** separate France from Spain.

The average height is about 7,000 feet. The highest peak is about 11,168 feet. The **Cantabrian Mountains**, south of the Bay of Biscay, are a continuation of the Pyrenees.

The table-land of Spain is traversed by several chains of mountains.

<sup>1</sup> *Dagh* is Turkish for mountain.

**Mulhacen** Peak, belonging to the **Sierra Neva'da**<sup>1</sup> (Snowy Range), in the south, is 11,661 feet above the sea.

There are several mountain ranges, as the **Cevennes** (se-ven'), in the south-east of France.

**The Scandina'vian Mountains** extend along the coast of Norway.

Norway and Sweden were anciently called Scandinavia. The **Dovrefield Mountains** form the central part of the range. **Galdhoppig**, the highest peak, is 8,546 feet above the sea.

**The Grampian Mountains** traverse Scotland.

**Ben Nevis**,<sup>2</sup> the highest point, is 4,406 feet above the sea.

**VOLCANOES**.—The principal active volcanoes in Europe are **Vesu'** near Naples; **Etna** in Sicily; **Hecla** in Iceland.

**Etna**, 10,840 feet above the sea, is the largest. **Strom'boli**, in the **Lip'ari Islands**, north of Sicily, is another volcano. Except Hecla, all are in the Mediterranean.

### PLAINS AND TABLE-LANDS.

The <sup>h</sup>-east of Europe is an immense plain, occupying <sup>h</sup>irds of the Continent.

The plain extends from the Black Sea to the Arctic Ocean, and from the mountains to the North Sea. The greatest elevation does not exceed 1,200 feet. It is divided from the great Siberian Plain by the mountains. In this respect, Europe resembles Asia.

**The plain of the Danube** is next in size, though greatly inferior.

The Plain of Lombardy, in the north of Italy, is remarkable for its fertility.

**The Plateau of Spain** is the largest and highest in Europe.

It is about half a mile in height—about as high as the Deccan. Switzerland and Southern Germany form other table-lands.

### RIVERS.

The greater part of Europe slopes towards the south-east; the other slope is towards the north-west.

Hence the longest rivers flow into the southern seas.

<sup>1</sup> *Sierra* means *a saw*. The name is applied to mountain chains, from the succession of peaks resembling a saw. <sup>2</sup> "The Mountain of Death."

*On the North-West Slope.*

The **Petcho'ra** flows into the Arctic Ocean.

The **Dwi'na** (dwe'na) falls into the White Sea.

The **Düna** falls into the Gulf of Riga.

The **Vis'tula** and **Oder** flow into the Baltic.

The **Elbe**, **Weser**, **Rhine**, **Meuse**, or **Maas**, and **Thames** (temz), fall into the North Sea.

The Rhine receives on the left the **Aar** and the **Moselle** (mo-zel'); on the right, the **Neckar** and the **Main**. In the delta it divides into several branches, of which the **Waal** is the principal.

The **Seine** (sane), **Loire** (lwar), **Garon'ne**, **Douro**, **Ta'gus**, **Guadia'na**, and **Guadalquiv'er**, fall into the Atlantic Ocean.

*On the South-East Slope.*

The **Ebro** and **Rhone** flow into the Mediterranean.

The **Po** falls into the Adriatic Sea.

The **Dan'ube**, the second river of Europe, the **Dniester** (neester), and the **Dnieper** (neeper), flow into the Black Sea.

The Danube receives on the north the **Theiss** (tice) and **Pruth** (proot); on the south the **Lech**, **Isar** (ee'-zar), **Inn**, **Drave**, and **Save**. The Danube, the Rhine, and the Rhone, rise near each other in the Alps.

The **Don** enters the Sea of Azov.

The **Volga**, the largest river of Europe, and the **Ural** flow into the Caspian Sea.

The basin of the Volga contains about 550,000 square miles; that of the Danube, about 300,000 square miles. The two rivers drain about one-fifth of the continent.

The lengths of the ten largest rivers are as follows: Volga, 2,200 miles; Danube, 1,700; Dnieper, 1,100; Don, 1,000; Petchora and Ural, each, 900; Dwina, 800; Rhine, 700; Vistula, 560; Elbe, 630.

The Indus is a little longer, and the Ganges a little shorter, than the Danube.

The eastern rivers move slowly over the plains of Russia. The rivers originating in the Alpine highlands are rapid. The Rhone is the most rapid river of Europe; the Rhine, the most picturesque.<sup>1</sup> The rivers of Europe flow all the year round. They do not dry up in summer, like the smaller rivers in India.

<sup>1</sup> *Pik-tur-ek'*, beautiful like a picture.

## LAKES.

The principal lakes are **Lad'oga** and **One'ga** in Russia; **Wen'er** and **Wetter** in Sweden; **Gene'va** and **Con'stance** in Switzerland; **Garda** in Italy.

**Ladoga**, the largest lake, is about one-fourth of the size of Ceylon. It is connected with the Gulf of Finland by the River **Ne'va**. **Onega** is second in size. The Rhone flows through the lake of Geneva, and the Rhine through Lake Constance. Switzerland and Italy contain several smaller lakes, noted for the beauty of their scenery.<sup>1</sup> **Bal'aton**, or **Platten See**, is a marshy lake in Hungary. The northern lakes are in a flat country; the southern are among mountains.

## CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

Europe lies wholly within the North Temperate Zone, except a small portion within the North Frigid Zone. The climate is milder than that of any other region in the Temperate Zone. The northern parts are cold; the southern, warm. There is no special rainy season.

Europe is rendered colder by piercing winds from the Arctic Ocean and Northern Asia; but hot winds from Africa render it warmer. The sea moderates the heat in summer, and the cold in winter. The west of Europe has an insular climate. Warm winds from the Gulf Stream moderate the winter in Great Britain and Norway. The extremes of temperature become greater as we go east. The rainfall also decreases from west to east, and warm woollen clothing is generally worn.

**MINERALS.**—Iron, lead, copper, tin, mercury, coal, and salt, are the principal mineral productions.

Gold is found in the Ural Mountains and Austria. Mercury, or quicksilver, is obtained in Spain and Austria. Sweden produces large quantities of excellent iron. Britain is remarkable for its mineral wealth. It supplies more than half of the iron used in Europe, and three-fourths of the coal. Spain is rich in lead, copper, and iron.

**VEGETABLES.**—Wheat, rice, maize, the sugar-cane, tobacco, the vine, the orange, and the olive, are cultivated in the south, and there are forests of cork and chestnut trees.

The vine grows in the warmer parts of the central regions; but cornfields and green meadows form the leading feature in the vegetation. Potatoes are abundant;

<sup>1</sup> Views, appearance of places.

apples, pears, and chestnuts, are the principal fruits. Hemp and flax are largely cultivated in the centre and east. The trees are the oak, beech, fir, &c.

Barley and rye are raised in the north, and there are large forests of pine. Vegetation becomes scanty towards the polar regions, till at last lichens and mosses are the only plants which will grow.

Wheat grows to  $64^{\circ}$ ; oats, to  $65^{\circ}$ ; rye, to  $67^{\circ}$ ; barley, to  $70^{\circ}$ ; the olive, to  $44^{\circ}$ ; the vine, to  $51^{\circ}$ ; the apple, to  $55^{\circ}$ ; the pear, cherry, and plum, to  $63^{\circ}$ . Firs reach  $68^{\circ}$ ; the willow and birch,  $70^{\circ}$ . Trees diminish in size, towards the north, till they are only a few inches in height.

South of the Alps, olive oil is extensively used instead of butter. Rye bread is generally used in the northern countries; wheaten bread in the centre and south.

**ANIMALS.**—The horse, ox, sheep, goat, pig, and dog, are the principal domestic animals. The reindeer is found in the north, and the camel in the south of Russia. Wolves and bears are the chief beasts of prey.

The Spanish ass is a fine large animal. There are no lions, or tigers, or cheetahs in Europe. The monkey is found only on the rock of Gibraltar.

The birds are not remarkable for beauty, but some of them have very sweet notes.

Eagles, vultures, kites, and falcons are the principal birds of prey.

The herring is caught in great quantities in the British seas; the salmon is found in many of the northern rivers and the sturgeon in the Danube and Volga.

The silk-worm is reared in the south.

**PEOPLE.**—The population amounts to about 360 millions.

Europe is the most densely peopled of the great divisions of the earth, although the number of inhabitants to the square mile is only about 94. Belgium, the most thickly peopled country, contains 540 inhabitants to the square mile; England and Wales, 498; France, 188; Russia, 45; Norway, the most thinly peopled, 16.

The inhabitants of Europe belong almost entirely to the Caucasian race; the remainder are Mongolians.

The earliest inhabitants of Europe seem to have been rude Mongol tribes, like the Lapps. Some of their descendants, called Basques, are still found in the north of Spain. It is supposed that the drying up of the inland seas of Central Asia drove many of the tribes to seek settlements elsewhere. The Celts, or Kelts, were the first Aryans

to enter Europe. At one time they spread over a great part of the continent. They are now found in the extreme west. They include the Irish, Welsh, and some others. They number probably about five millions. The Celts were followed by the **Romanic** peoples, who drove the Celts before them as the Celts had driven the Iberians or Basques. Among them were the ancestors of the Greeks and Romans, who became the most civilized nations in Europe. The French, though a mixed race, and the Spaniards, belong to them. They now number about 105 millions. The next Aryan immigrants were the **Teutons**, a taller and fairer race. They took a more northerly course, driving the Celts still further westward. The Teutonic family now includes Germans, English, Swedes, &c., and numbers about 120 millions. The last Aryans who entered Europe were the **Slavs**, who took a still more northerly course, and spread over the plains and forests of Russia. Their descendants, the Russians, Poles, &c., now number about 110 millions. The Hungarians, Finns, and Turks are Mongolians who entered Europe after the Aryans. There are Kalmucks and Tartars in the south-east of Russia. Including Jews, they number about 19 millions.

**LANGUAGES.**—The languages spoken by Caucasians in Europe, belong, like the vernaculars of North India, to the Aryan family. They are divided into four classes, like the nations themselves—**Teutonic**, **Slavonic**, **Romanic**, and **Celtic**. Russian, German, French, English, and Italian, are spoken by the greatest numbers. The Mongolians speak languages belonging, like the vernaculars of South India, to the **Turanian** family.

**INDUSTRIES.**—The people of Europe greatly surpass those of most other parts of the earth in agriculture, manufactures, and commerce.

The Teutonic nations are, in general, farthest advanced in these respects. Cotton, silk, and other articles are imported from various countries to be manufactured. The trade of Europe extends to all parts of the world. One-third of the ships belong to Britain.

**RAILWAYS.**—Europe contains about 125,000 miles of railway: of which Great Britain has about 20,000 miles; the German Empire, 24,000; France, 30,000; Russia, 18,000; Austria-Hungary, 14,000; Italy, 6,400; Spain, 5,500, and Belgium, 2,800.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The prevailing governments are absolute or limited monarchies.

Property is generally secure, and there is a considerable degree of liberty. France and Switzerland are republics. Russia and Turkey are absolute monarchies; the other countries are monarchies, more or less limited. The five great powers of Europe are Britain, the German Empire, Russia, France, and Austria-Hungary. Italy and Spain rank next.

LEARNING.—Education is more general than in most other parts of the globe. The greatest discoveries in science have been made in Europe, and its authors have produced the finest works of literature.

In ancient times the Greeks and Romans were distinguished for their literature; but at present they are surpassed by the Teutonic nations. Great numbers among the Slavonic nations can neither read nor write; and much ignorance prevails among the Greco-Latin nations.

RELIGION.—Nearly all the inhabitants of Europe are professing Christians. The three great divisions are: followers of the Greek Church in the east; Roman Catholics in the south; and Protestants<sup>1</sup> in the north. There are some Muhammadans in Turkey and Russia.

Christianity has contributed greatly to elevate the people of Europe among the nations of the earth. The Slavonic race belong chiefly to the Greek Church, the head of which is the Emperor of Russia; the Teutonic, to the Protestant; the Romanic, or Greco-Latin, to the Roman Catholic, the head of which is the Pope. The number of Protestants is about 90 millions; of followers of the Greek Church, 90 millions; of Roman Catholics, 160 millions. There are about 7 millions of Muhammadans, and about 5 millions of Jews.

### THE BRITISH ISLANDS.

The BRITISH ISLANDS, situated in the west of Europe between the North Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, form the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. Formerly they were divided into several independent states, the principal of which were England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland.

Ireland was annexed to England by Henry II. in 1172; Wales was conquered by Edward I. in 1282; James VI. of Scotland succeeded to the English crown in 1603.

The total area is about 121,000 square miles, or rather less than that of the Bombay Presidency. The population in 1891 amounted to about 38 millions. The British Islands contain about one-thirtieth of the area, and one-tenth of the population of Europe.

<sup>1</sup> The Protestants are so called from their *protesting*, or making a declaration against certain doctrines of the Church of Rome.

Great Britain is the largest island in Europe. It is divided into England and Wales in the south, and Scotland in the north.

Great Britain is 600 miles long, and contains about 90,000 square miles. It is the eighth largest island in the world.

### ENGLAND AND WALES.

ENGLAND AND WALES are bounded on the north by Scotland; on the east by the North Sea; on the south by the English Channel; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, St. George's Channel, and the Irish Sea.

The general shape is triangular. The greatest length is about 420 miles; the greatest breadth, 320 miles. England contains 50,900 square miles, and Wales, 7,400. They are nearly equal in size to Scotland and Ireland.

England means the *Land of the Angles*, a tribe by whom it was conquered. Wales means the *foreign country*. England was once united with the Continent, but the sea has made a passage through the Strait of Dover.

**COAST.**—The coast is indented, especially on the west.

The principal openings in the land are:—

On the EAST COAST: **Mouth of the Humber**, the **Wash**, and **Mouth of the Thames**.

The **Downs**, between Kent and the **Goodwin Sands**, a dangerous shoal, afford shelter to shipping. On the South Coast: **Spithead Bay** and **Southampton Water**, between the Isle of Wight and Hampshire; **Plymouth Sound** and **Mount's Bay**, in the west.

Spithead is so called from a sand-bank called the *spit*. The bay is much frequented by shipping as a place of anchorage.

On the WEST COAST: **Bristol Channel**, **Car'digan Bay**, **Mouth of the Mersey**, **More'cambe Bay** and **Sol'way Firth**.

**Mil'ford Ha'ven**, the finest harbour in Britain, lies to the north-west of the Bristol Channel.

**CAPES.**—On the EAST COAST: **Flam'borough<sup>1</sup> Head** and **Spurn Head**, in Yorkshire; the **North Fore'land**, in Kent.

<sup>1</sup> So called from the flame, or lighthouse upon it.

On the **SOUTH COAST**: the **South Foreland**, in Kent; **Beachy Head**, in Sussex; the **Needles**, off the Isle of Wight; **Lizard Point** and **Land's End**, in Cornwall.

The **Needles** are a cluster of pointed rocks. **Land's End** is the most westerly point in England; **Lizard Point**, the most southerly.

On the **WEST COAST**: **St. David's Head**, in South Wales, and **Great Orme's Head**, the most northerly point of Wales.

**ISLANDS**.—The **Isle of Wight**, off Hampshire; the **Channel Islands**, near the coast of France; **Scilly (silly) Islands**, off Cornwall; **An'glesea**, the largest island, off the north of Wales; the **Isle of Man**, in the Irish Sea.

The **Isle of Wight** is a beautiful island, called the “Garden of England.” It contains *Osborne House*, a favourite residence of the Queen.

The principal **Channel Islands** are **Jersey** and **Guernsey** (gern'-zay). They formed part of the possessions of William the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy.

The **Menai Strait** separates Anglesea from the mainland. It is so narrow that it is crossed by the **Menai Suspension<sup>1</sup> Bridge**, and the **Britannia Tubular<sup>2</sup> Bridge**. **Holyhead**, west of Anglesea, is an island only at high water. Packets sail from *Holyhead* to Ireland, 63 miles distant.

The **Isle of Man** is about equally distant from England and Ireland. It has a separate government. **Douglas** is the capital.

**SURFACE**.—England is for the most part a level or gently undulating country, but there are a few mountain ranges of moderate elevation in the west.

The land generally slopes from the west to the east. The districts between the **Humber** and the **Thames** are low; and in a few parts marshy. Wales, which is situated to the west of the centre of England, is a hilly country.

There are three principal mountainous districts.

The **Pen'nine Chain<sup>3</sup>** extends from the *Cheviot Hills*, on the Scottish border, to the **Peak** in Derbyshire.

It forms the most continuous extent of elevated land in England. **Crossfell**,<sup>4</sup> the highest summit, is 2,892 feet in height. The Peak in Derbyshire is a region of rounded hills and high moorlands, intersected by deep valleys.

<sup>1</sup> Hanging: *sub*, under; *pensum*, to hang. <sup>2</sup> Having the shape of a pipe. <sup>3</sup> So called from the old British word *pen*, a hill. <sup>4</sup> *Fell* is the Danish word for hill.

East of the Pennine Chain is the large **Plain of York**; south is the **Central Plain**, stretching across the middle of England.

The **Cumbrian Group**, circular in shape, lies to the west of the Pennine Chain, and contains **Scawfell**, the highest mountain in England.

The Group derives its name from Cumbria, another name for Cumberland, the county in which it is situated. It is separated from the Pennine Chain by the valleys of the **Eden** and the **Lune**. Scawfell is 3,161 feet; **Helvel'lyn**, 3,118 feet; and **Skiddaw**, 3,054 feet.

The **Cambrian Mountains**<sup>1</sup> traverse the greater part of Wales. **Snowdon**, about three-quarters of a mile in height, is the highest mountain in England or Wales.

Snowdon is 3,570 feet above the sea. **Cad'er Id'ris** (Arthur's Seat), **Plynlim'mon**, and **Brecknock Beacon**,<sup>2</sup> are other peaks. The **Mal'vern Hills** are a low range between the **Severn** and the **Wye**.

The **Devonian Range** extends eastward from Cornwall. The elevation is only about one-half that of the other ranges.

**Dart'moor**, a wild table-land in Devonshire, is the principal English plateau. **Yes Tor**,<sup>3</sup> the highest point, is 2,040 feet.

The **Cots'wold**<sup>4</sup> **Hills** are a low range to the east of the **Severn**; the **Men'dip Hills** run east from the **Bristol Channel**. The **Chiltern Hills** run north-east of the **Thames**; the **North Downs**<sup>5</sup> and **South Downs** are a double range, south of the **Thames**.

**PLAINS.**—The **Vale of York**, in the north, and the **Central Plain**, watered by the **Trent**, are the principal plains. The basin of the **Wash** is the lowest tract of land. Part of it was reclaimed from the sea, and is known as the **Fens**.

### RIVERS.

The principal drainage of England is towards the east; the west slope is next in importance. The south coast drains into the English Channel.

#### *On the East Slope.*

The **Tyne**, the **Wear**, and the **Tees**, in the north, flow into the **North Sea**. They are great coal-shipping rivers.

<sup>1</sup> So called from **Cambria**, the ancient name of Wales. **Snowdon** means *snowhill*, from snow, and the Anglo-Saxon word *dun*, a hill. <sup>2</sup> A signal, a fire on a hill as a sign of danger. <sup>3</sup> *Tor* means rock, hill. <sup>4</sup> *Wold* means wood, forest. <sup>5</sup> *Down*, old English, a grassy hill.

The **Ouse** (ooz) and the **Trent**, by their junction, form the **Humber**.

The **Dove** and **Derwent** flow southward into the **Trent**.

The **Great Ouse** falls into the **Wash**.

The **Thames**, in the south, the largest river in England, rises in the **Cotswold Hills** and flows into the **North Sea**.

The **Med'way** has a north-easterly course, and falls into the mouth of the **Thames**.

*On the South Slope.*

The **A'von** flows into the **English Channel**.

The **Ta'mar** enters **Plymouth Sound**.

*On the West Slope.*

The **Severn**, the second largest river, flows southward into the **Bristol Channel**.

The **Wye** flows southward into the mouth of the **Severn**.

The **Dee** rises in **Bala Lake**, in North Wales, and falls into the **Irish Sea**.

The **Mer'sey** flows westward into the **Irish Sea**.

The **Irwell** flows southward into the **Mersey**.

The **Eden** flows northward into the **Solway Firth**.

The **Thames** is about 215 miles in length; the **Severn**, 180 miles; the **Trent**, 167 miles; the **Great Ouse**, 156 miles; the **Ouse**, 150 miles; the **Wye**, 140 miles.

Many of the river names, as *Avon*, *Derwent*, *Ouse*, *Wye*, come from Celtic words meaning *river* or *water*.

LAKES.

The narrow valleys among the **Cumbrian Hills** contain several small, but beautiful, lakes. **Windermere**,<sup>1</sup> the largest, and **Derwentwater**, or **Keswick** (Kez'-ik), are two of the principal. They are found in what is called the **Lake District**.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTION.

CLIMATE.—The climate of England is moist, but temperate and healthy. The western and southern coasts are

<sup>1</sup> *Mere*, lake.

warmer than the eastern, and receive a larger supply of rain.

The sea renders the extremes of heat and cold not so great as in continental countries. The prevailing winds are westerly, which are warm and moist; the easterly winds are cold and dry. England, like India, has most rain on the west coast. The annual rainfall on the east coast is about 27 inches; the west coast has about 45 inches; Keswick has 71 inches; Seathwaite, in Cumberland, 140 inches. The climate is very variable. There is no settled rainy season.

**MINERALS.**—Iron, coal, and salt, are found in large quantities, chiefly in the northern and western districts.

Britain was visited by Phoenician traders from the east coast of the Mediterranean, long before the Christian era, for its tin. The tin and copper mines in Cornwall are now exhausted. Slate is quarried in Wales. Lead is found in different parts.

Wales is noted for its iron; coal is most plentiful in the north and in Wales; salt is found in Cheshire; blacklead, in Cumberland.

England is indebted for much of its wealth to its abundant supply of iron and coal. Coal is used in smelting metals, in working steam-engines, and is the common fuel, both for cooking and for warming houses in winter.

**VEGETABLES.**—The soil is generally fertile, and the fields are covered with rich verdure the whole year. The trees, however, for the most part, lose their leaves in winter. Wheat, barley, and oats, are the grains chiefly cultivated; rice will not ripen. Potatoes and turnips are grown extensively. Apples, pears, plums, cherries, gooseberries, and strawberries, are some of the principal fruits. The teak does not grow, but the oak, beech, fir, &c., are valuable trees.

In the east the land is generally under tillage;<sup>1</sup> in the west, in pasture.<sup>2</sup> Wheat is the principal crop, and constitutes nearly half the total value of the agricultural produce. There are no mangoes or plantains in England: the climate is too cold for them.

**ANIMALS.**—Horses, oxen, and sheep, are numerous and excellent. There are some foxes, but no dangerous beasts of prey are now found in the country. The fisheries are productive.

Bullocks are not used in England like India. Horses draw carts and ploughs. Wolves and bears were found in England some centuries

1 Cultivation. 2 Grass to feed cattle and sheep; *pastum*, to feed.

ago, but they were gradually exterminated.<sup>1</sup> There is only one poisonous kind of snake, called the viper, and its bite is not fatal to man.

### PEOPLE, MANUFACTURES, ETC.

The population of England and Wales is about 29 millions. The inhabitants of England belong to the Teutonic race; those of Wales are chiefly Celtic.

The original inhabitants were of Celtic origin. The country then consisted mainly of forest and marsh-land. About the beginning of the Christian era, the Romans conquered Britain, and held it for more than three centuries. In 451 A.D., the Saxons arrived from the north of Germany, and gradually acquired possession of the country, driving the Britons to the mountainous districts in the west. In 1066, England was conquered by the Normans, from the north of France. Old-English forms the ground-work of the language; but many words have been derived from French, Latin, Greek, and other languages. Next to Belgium, England is the most thickly peopled country of Europe.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Britain is the greatest manufacturing country in the world. The chief manufactures are those of cotton, iron and other metals, wool, silk, linen, leather, soap, earthenware, and glass.

Many of the inventions by which manufactures are carried on, as the steam engine, had their origin in Britain. This, with the abundance of iron and coal, the energy of the people, and the facilities for commerce, have led to the manufacturing greatness of Britain.

**COMMERCE.**—The commerce of the United Kingdom is more extensive than that of any other nation in ancient or modern times.

Commerce is greatly facilitated by the long coast line; 150,000 miles of road; 6,000 miles of inland navigation by canals and rivers; 20,000 miles of railway, and 132,000 miles of telegraphic lines. There are about 24,000 merchant ships, and 250,000 seamen belonging to Britain.

The principal **Imports** are grain, cotton, wool, sugar, gold and silver, timber, silks, tea, butter, coffee, flax and hemp, wine, and tobacco.

The annual value of the Imports is about £420,000,000. The principal **Imports** are *Grain*, £60,000,000; *Cotton*, £42,000,000; *Wool*, £28,000,000; *Sugar*, £20,000,000; *Timber*, £15,000,000; *Silk and Silk Manufactures*, £12,000,000; *Butter*, £14,000,000; *Tea*, £10,000,000; *Coffee*, £4,000,000.

<sup>1</sup> Destroyed: *ex, out; terminus, a boundary.*

The principal **Exports** are cotton and woollen goods, metals, machinery and cutlery,<sup>1</sup> coal, linen manufactures, haberdashery,<sup>2</sup> leather manufactures and earthenware.

The annual value of the **Exports** is about £320,000,000. The value of the *Cotton Goods* is about £75,000,000; *Metals and Cutlery*, £46,000,000; *Woollen Goods*, £24,000,000; *Coals*, £19,000,000; *Linen Manufactures*, £7,000,000; *Leather Manufactures*, £4,000,000; *Haberdashery*, £3,000,000.

The foreign trade is chiefly with the United States, India, France, Germany, Holland, and Australia. The trade with the United States is in the proportion of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  annas to a rupee; India has  $1\frac{1}{2}$  anna in the rupee.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Government of Britain is a limited monarchy, consisting of King or Queen, Lords and Commons.

The *House of Lords* is composed chiefly of peers<sup>3</sup> possessing hereditary<sup>4</sup> rank.

Dukes, Marquises, Earls, Viscounts, and Barons of the United Kingdom, are members, together with 44 representative peers from Scotland and Ireland, and 24 Bishops. The House of Lords contains about 540 members. Baronets possess hereditary rank, but are not peers.

The *House of Commons*, consisting of members elected<sup>5</sup> by the people, has the control<sup>6</sup> of taxation and expenditure.

There are 670 members in all; 495 for England and Wales, 72 for Scotland, and 103 for Ireland.

The Houses of Lords and Commons compose the *British Parliament*.

All laws require the united consent of the Houses of Parliament and the Sovereign.

The Sovereign has the appointment of the principal officers of Government, and the power of making peace or war; but no tax can be imposed or money spent, without the consent of the House of Commons. The Executive Government is carried on by the Cabinet, composed of 16 or 18 ministers. The Privy Councillors, styled Right Honourable, give advice.

**ARMY AND NAVY.**—The standing army of Britain contains about 210,000 men, of whom about 70,000 are stationed in India. The navy is the most powerful in

<sup>1</sup> Articles used for cutting, as knives, scissors, &c. <sup>2</sup> Articles like ribbons, thread, pins, &c. <sup>3</sup> Noblemen. <sup>4</sup> Descending from father to son; *hereditis*, of an heir. <sup>5</sup> Chosen. <sup>6</sup> Power over.

the world. In time of war, the army and navy can be doubled.

REVENUE.—The annual revenue of the United Kingdom is about £88,000,000.

The taxation per head is about 24 rupees a year; in India it is about 2½ rupees.

LITERATURE.—Education is widely diffused, and England has produced some of the greatest poets and philosophers<sup>1</sup> that have ever lived.

The principal universities are those of Oxford, Cambridge, and London. Shakespeare and Milton are the greatest English poets; Newton and Bacon, the greatest philosophers.

NATIONAL CHARACTER.—The English are noted for their sincerity, honesty, industry, and love of liberty; but they are often blunt<sup>2</sup> in their manners, and proud.

There is no caste in England, and every person can pursue the occupation for which he is best fitted. There is no blind attachment to ancient usages. The inquiry is not whether the custom is *old*, but whether it is *good*. Women are educated, and thus children are better trained, and more intelligent.

RELIGION.—Protestant Christianity is the national religion.

The Episcopal<sup>3</sup> Church, which is governed by bishops, is established by law.

Although nearly all the inhabitants of England call themselves Christians, many are so merely in name, and act quite contrary to the precepts<sup>4</sup> of the religion they profess. Only those who love and obey Christ, will be acknowledged by Him as His true followers.

Britain was at one time a heathen country, but Missionaries came and instructed the people, who by degrees abandoned the worship of idols. English Christians are now making considerable efforts, by means of Missionary Societies, to send the Gospel to various parts of the earth. India will undergo a similar change.

DIVISIONS.—England is divided into 40 *counties*, or *shires*, and Wales into 12.

The name *County* is given to these divisions, because they were originally governed by *Counts*, that is Earls. They were also called *shires*, or divisions, from an Anglo-Saxon word *sciran*, to cut or divide. The counties are generally subdivided into hundreds, but always into parishes. The number of parishes in England and Wales is about 15,000.

<sup>1</sup> Men learned in science. <sup>2</sup> Rough, not polite. <sup>3</sup> *Episkopos*; a bishop, one who oversees. <sup>4</sup> Commands.

## ENGLAND.

## SIX NORTHERN COUNTIES.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.<sup>1</sup></i>
Northumberland <sup>2</sup> -	<i>Newcastle-upon-Tyne</i> , North Shields, and Tyne-mouth, the Port of Newcastle, Berwick-on-Tweed (ber'-rik), <i>Alnwick</i> <sup>3</sup> (an'-ik), Mor'peth.
Durham - - - -	Sunderland, Gateshead, South Shields, Stockton, <sup>4</sup> Darlington, <i>Dur'ham</i> . <sup>5</sup>
Cumberland - -	<i>Carlisle</i> (kar'-lyle'), Whiteha'ven, Keswick.
Westmoreland <sup>6</sup> -	Kendal, <i>App'ley</i> .
Yorkshire - - -	Leeds, Shef'ield, Bradford, Hull, Huddersfield, Halifax, <i>York</i> , Middlesborough, Wakefield, Scarborough, Don'caster, <sup>7</sup> Whit'by, Har'rogate.
Lancashire - -	<i>Liv'erpool</i> , Man'chester, Pres'ton, Bol'ton, Old'ham, Black'burn, Roch'dale, Wig'an, Barrow-in-Furness, Southport, <i>Lan'caster</i> .

## FOURTEEN MIDLAND COUNTIES.

Staffordshire - -	Wolverham'ton, Stoke-upon-Trent, Bilston, Wed'nesbury, Burton-on-Trent, Newcastle-under-Lyne, <i>Stafford</i> , Lich'field.
Derbyshire - -	<i>Der'by</i> , Mat'lock, Bux'ton.
Nottinghamshire -	<i>Not'tingham</i> , Newark.
Leicestershire - -	<i>Leicester</i> (les-ter), Loughborough (luff'-bur-o).
Warwickshire - -	Bir'mingham, Cov'entry, Leamington (lem-ing-tun), <i>Warwick</i> (wor-rik), Rug'by, Stratford-on-Avon.
Worcestershire -	Dud'ley, <i>Worcester</i> (woos-ter), Kiddermin'ster.
Oxfordshire - -	<i>Ox'ford</i> , Woodstock, Ban'bury.
Buckinghamshire	Ayles'bury, Great Mar'low, <i>Buck'ingham</i> , E'ton.
Middlesex <sup>8</sup> - - -	<i>London</i> , <i>Brent'ford</i> , Har'row, Ux'bridge.
Hertfordshire - -	St. Alban's, <i>Hertford</i> (har'-furd), Ware.
Bedfordshire - -	<i>Bed'ford</i> , Lu'ton, Dun'stable.
Huntingdonshire -	<i>Hunt'ingdon</i> , St. Ives.
Northamptonshire	<i>Northamp'ton</i> , Pe'terborough.
Rutland <sup>9</sup> - - - -	<i>Oak'ham</i> .

1 The county towns, where the county business is transacted, are in italics. The largest towns are placed first. 2 Land north of the Humber. 3 *Wick*, village. 4 *By*, *bury*, *ton*, town. 5 *Ham*, home, village. 6 West moorland. 7 Caster, from *castrum*, a camp; all towns<sup>8</sup> whose names end in *chester* were Roman stations. 8 Middle Saxons. 9 Red land.

## SIX WESTERN COUNTIES.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
<b>Chesh'ire</b> - - -	Birk'enhead, Stock'port, Mac'clesfield, <i>Ches'-ter</i> , Crewe.
<b>Shropshire</b> - - -	<i>Shrews'bury</i> , Bridge'north, Wellington.
<b>Herefordshire</b> - - -	<i>Hereford</i> (her'-e-ford), Leominster (lemster).
<b>Monmouthshire</b> - - -	New'port, <i>Monmouth</i> (mon'-muth).
<b>Gloucestershire</b> - - -	Bris'tol, Cheltenham, Stroud, <i>Gloucester</i> (gloster), Cirencester (sis'-e-ter).
<b>Somersetshire</b> - - -	Bath, <i>Taunton</i> , Frome, Bridgewater, Wells.

## FIVE EASTERN COUNTIES.

<b>Lincolnshire</b> - - -	<i>Lincoln</i> (link'un), Grimsby, Bos'ton, Stam'ford.
<b>Cambridgeshire</b> - - -	<i>Cambridge</i> , Wis'beach, E'ly, Newmark'et.
<b>Norfolk</b> <sup>1</sup> - - -	<i>Norwich</i> (nor'-itch), Yar'mouth, King's Lynn.
<b>Suffolk</b> <sup>2</sup> - - -	<i>Ipswich</i> (ips'-itch), Bury St. Ed'mund's.
<b>Essex</b> <sup>3</sup> - - -	Col'chester, <i>Chelmsford</i> (chemz'-furd), Har'wich (har'-itch).

## NINE SOUTHERN COUNTIES.

<b>Kent</b> <sup>4</sup> - - -	Greenwich (gren'-ij), Chatham (chat'am), Woolwich (wool'-itch), Dept'ford, Do'ver, <i>Maid'stone</i> , Can'terbury, Gravesend, Rochester, Tunbridge-Wells, Folkestone, Sheerness, Deal.
<b>Sussex</b> <sup>5</sup> - - -	Bright'on, Hastings, <i>Lewes</i> , Chich'ester.
<b>Surrey</b> <sup>6</sup> - - -	Croy'don, Rich'mond, King'ston, <i>Guildford</i> (gil'ford).
<b>Berkshire</b> - - -	<i>Reading</i> (red'ing), Win'dsor, Abingdon.
<b>Wiltshire</b> - - -	<i>Salisbury</i> (salz-ber-e), Trowbridge, Devizes.
<b>Hampshire</b> <sup>7</sup> - - -	Ports'mouth, Southamp'ton, <i>Winchester</i> , Ryde.
<b>Dorsetshire</b> - - -	Wey'mouth, Poole, Brid'port, <i>Dor'chester</i> .
<b>Dev'onshire</b> - - -	Plym'outh, <i>Ex'eter</i> , Torquay (tor-keē), Tiv'erton.
<b>Cornwall</b> - - -	Tru'ro, Penzance', Fal'mouth, <i>Bod'min</i> .

## WALES.

The physical features of Wales have already been described. The original inhabitants were a race of Celts, called **Cymry** or **Kymri**. Under the name of the **Ancient Britons**, they once peopled the whole country. They are now called **Welsh**.

## SIX NORTHERN COUNTIES.

<b>Flintshire</b> - - -	Hol'ywell, <i>Mold</i> , Flint, St. As'aph.
<b>Denbighshire</b> - - -	Wrex'ham, <i>Denbigh</i> (den'-b <sup>h</sup> ), Llangollen (lan-goθ-len).

<sup>1</sup> North folk or people. <sup>2</sup> South folk. <sup>3</sup> East Saxons. <sup>4</sup> Head. <sup>5</sup> South Saxons. <sup>6</sup> South realm or kingdom. <sup>7</sup> Shortened from Southamptonshire; also called *Hants*.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Caernarvonshire -	<i>Caernar'von</i> , Ban'gor, Con'way.
Anglesea - - -	Hol'yhead, <i>Beaumaris</i> (bo-ma'-ris).
Merioneth - - -	<i>Dolgelly</i> (dol-geth'-le), Bala.
Montgomeryshire -	Welsh'pool, <i>Montgom'ery</i> .

## SIX SOUTHERN COUNTIES.

Car'diganshire -	Aberyst'with (Ab-er-ist'-with), <i>Car'digan</i> .
Radnor - - -	<i>Presteign</i> .
Pembrokeshire -	<i>Pem'broke</i> , Haverfordwest (har'-furd-west), St. Da'vid's.
Caermarthenshire	<i>Caermar'then</i> , Llanelli (lan-eth'-le).
Brecknockshire -	<i>Breck'nock</i> .
Glamorganshire -	<i>Cardiff</i> , Mer'thryr Tyd'vil, Swan'sea.

The English counties are, in general, much smaller than Indian collectorates or zillahs. Some of them would form only small taluks. York, the largest county in England, is divided into three Ridings, viz., the North, East and West. Riding is supposed to be a corruption of *trithing*, a *third* part. Lincolnshire and Devonshire are next in size to York. Rutland is the smallest county; Middlesex is next to Rutland in size; but it ranks second in population. Lancashire has the largest number of inhabitants; York stands third. Cumberland is the most mountainous county; Lincolnshire the flattest; Warwick is the central county. Kent is called the Garden of England.

## Commercial Towns.

LONDON, the capital of England, and the largest, richest, and greatest commercial city in the world, is situated on the Thames. The principal buildings are the Tower, containing a large collection of arms; Westminster Abbey, where some of the greatest men in England are interred;<sup>1</sup> St. Paul's Cathedral,<sup>2</sup> the finest church in Britain; the Houses of Parliament; and Buckingham Palace, the residence of the Queen. There are underground railways in different directions. The river is crossed by several bridges, and a tunnel<sup>3</sup> under water. The masts of the shipping resemble a forest. The population is about 4½ millions.

London is ten miles in length, and about seven in breadth. The ancient city had narrow, crooked streets, but the modern streets are spacious and elegant. Houses in London, and in other cities of Britain, are generally several stories in height, and have no verandahs. There are raised pathways on each side of the streets, for passengers

<sup>1</sup> Buried: *in*, in; *terra*, the earth. <sup>2</sup> A church with a bishop's seat; *cath'-edra*, seat. <sup>3</sup> A passage cut through a hill or under a river.

to walk upon, while horses and carriages go in the centre. The streets are lighted up at night with gas. The western part of London is called *Westminster*; *Southwark* (south-ark) lies on the south side of the river. About one-third of the shipping of the kingdom belongs to London. Railways radiate<sup>1</sup> from London to all parts of England. Berlin, Warsaw, and Irkutsk have nearly the same latitude.

**Liv'erp'ool**, near the mouth of the *Merscy*, in the north-west of England, is the second city in Britain for commerce. It is the great cotton port.

The docks, for the reception of ships, extend about six miles. One of the first railways in the world, for carriages to be propelled<sup>2</sup> by steam, was formed in 1830, between Liverpool and Manchester. Liverpool is the great port of the manufacturing districts, and has the largest American trade. *Birkenhead*, on the opposite side of the *Merscy*, is a thriving port. They are now united by a tunnel under the river.

**Bris'tol**, near the mouth of the *Lower Avon*, has considerable coasting and Irish trade.

Bristol was once the second sea-port in the kingdom. It has large glass-works, brass-foundries, and soap-works.

**Hull**, on the *Humber*, has a large Baltic trade.

Numerous ships engaged in the whale fishery belong to this port. *Yar'mouth*, noted for its herring fisheries, and *Harwich* (har'-itch) are sea-ports on the east coast.

**Newcastle-upon-Tyne** is noted for its trade in coals.

**Sun'derland**, at the mouth of the *Wear*, is another port for coals.

**Do'ver** is the sea-port nearest France.

Julius Caesar is supposed to have landed at *Deal*, north of Dover, 55 B.C. *Folkestone* (foke'-stun) and *Newhaven*, west of Dover, also have steam communication with France.

**Southamp'ton**, northward from the Isle of Wight, is an important mail steam-packet station.

**Penzance**, a small port in Cornwall, is the most westerly town in England.

**Car'diff** and **Swan'sea** are sea-ports in South Wales.

Large quantities of copper are sent to be smelted at *Swansea*, on account of its coal-fields. *Cardiff* is next to Liverpool as a shipping port, and is the largest town in Wales. Its export of coal is the largest in the world.

<sup>1</sup> Branch out; *radius*, a ray. <sup>2</sup> Driven forward: *pro*, before; *pello*, to drive.

### Naval Stations.

**Portsmouth**, north-west from the Isle of Wight, is the principal station of the British navy,<sup>1</sup> and very strongly fortified.

**Plymouth** (plim -uth), in the south-west, is the second naval station.

It is noted for its stone breakwater, to prevent the waves rolling into the harbour. *Eddystone Lighthouse* is on a rock to the south.

**Woolwich** (wool-itch), on the Thames, and **Chatham** (chat'-am), on the Medway, are other naval stations.

Woolwich contains the dépôt of Artillery;<sup>2</sup> the naval store-houses are at Chatham.

### Manufacturing Towns.

The Manufacturing Towns are chiefly in the northern half of England, where coal and iron are found; the southern half of England is mainly agricultural.

**Manchester**, on the Irwell, is the greatest manufacturing town in the world. Four-fifths of the cottons made in England are produced in this city and the neighbourhood.

It stands on a plain, and is always enveloped<sup>3</sup> in smoke, rising from the innumerable high chimneys. A ship canal, to connect it with the Mersey, is in progress.

**Preston**, **Oldham**, **Bolton**, and **Blackburn**, are towns in the neighbourhood of Manchester, in which the cotton manufacture is carried on extensively.

**Birmingham**, near the centre of England, is the second manufacturing town, and the principal seat for every kind of work in metals.

**Sheffield**, east of Manchester, is the fourth manufacturing town, and is famed for its cutlery.

1 The whole of the ships of war belonging to a nation; *navis*, a ship. 2 Cannon.

3 Rolled in, surrounded by; *in, in, volvo*, to roll.

**Barrow-in-Furness**, on the north-west coast, has the largest steel manufactures in the kingdom, and a large shipbuilding yard.

**Middlesborough** is a great iron manufacturing town and shipping port in Yorkshire, near the mouth of the Tees.

The south of Staffordshire, from its numerous coal and iron mines, is called the *Black Country*. **Wolverhampton**, **Wed'nesbury** and **Dud'ley** are noted for their iron manufactures.

**Merthyr Tydvil**, in Wales, has extensive coal and iron works.

**Leeds**, in Yorkshire, is the third manufacturing town, and the centre of the woollen manufacture.

**Brad'ford**, **Hud'dersfield**, **Wake'field**, **Hal'ifax**, are neighbouring towns, with **Rochdale**, in Lancashire, noted for similar fabrics.

**Spitalfields**, a part of London, **Mac'clesfield**, in Cheshire, and **Derby**, are the principal seats of the silk manufacture. **Not'tingham** and **Leices'ter** (les'ter), towards the centre, are noted for their stockings. **Norwich** (nor'itch), in the east, is famous for its shawls and crapes.<sup>1</sup> **Kidderminster**, in Worcestershire (woos'ter), is noted for its carpets; **Coventry**, in Warwickshire (wor'rik), for its ribbons; **Northampton**, for its boots and shoes; **Dunstable** and **Luton**, in Bedfordshire, for straw-plait manufacture; **Reading**, on the Thames, for its biscuits.

The north of Staffordshire is called the **POTTERIES**,<sup>2</sup> a district noted for its earthenware. **Stoke-upon-Trent**, **Han'ley**, and **Burslem**, are the chief towns in the Potteries.

**London**, **Liverpool**, **Birkenhead**, **Barrow-in-Furness**, **Sunderland**, **Portsmouth**, and **Plymouth**, are the principal places for ship-building.

### Seats of Learning, etc.

**Oxford** is famous for its university, the richest in the world.

<sup>1</sup> A kind of thin cloth, usually black. <sup>2</sup> Places where earthenware is made by potters.

Oxford is on the *Cherwell*, where it joins the *Isis*, called lower down the *Thames*. It is distinguished for its classical learning.<sup>1</sup>

**Cambridge**, on the *Cam*, has a university famous for the study of mathematics.

The *Cam* is a tributary of the Great *Ouse*. *Bacon*, *Newton*, and *Milton*, were educated at Cambridge.

**Dur'ham**, on the *Wear*, in the north-east, has a small university.

**Eton**, near *Windsor*, **Harrow**, near *London*, **Winchester**, south of *London*, and **Rug'by**, towards the centre of England, are noted for their public schools.

**Canterbury**, in *Kent*, has a fine cathedral, and the *Archbishop*<sup>2</sup> is "Primate<sup>3</sup> of all England."

Here Christianity was first preached to the *Angles*, by *St. Augustine*, at the close of the sixth century.

**York**, in the north, on the *Ouse*, is a very ancient city, and the seat of an *Archbishop*.

The Roman Emperors *Seve'rus* and *Constantine* resided at *York* for some time.

**Winchester**, on the *Itchen*, in the south, was considered the capital of England under the *Saxon* kings.

*Canute* and *Alfred* are buried in its cathedral. **Salisbury**, on the *Lower Avon*, has the loftiest spire in Britain. Near it, on *Salisbury Plain*, is *Stonehenge*, with remarkable stone pillars.

### Watering Places.

**Brighton**, on the south coast, **Scar'borough**, on the north-east coast, and **Southport** in *Lancashire*, are frequented for sea-bathing. **Tor'quay** (*tor'kee*), on the south-west coast, is frequented for its mild climate. **Bath**, and **Cheltenham** (*chelt'-nam*), east of the *Severn*, are noted for their mineral waters.

The waters are drunk by people for the benefit of their health.

There are hot springs at *Bath*. **Buxton**, in *Derbyshire*, **Leamington**, in *Warwickshire*, and **Tunbridge**, in *Kent*, are likewise much visited for their mineral wells.

<sup>1</sup> Knowledge of Greek and Latin. <sup>2</sup> Chief *bishop*; *archos* (*arkos*), chief. <sup>3</sup> First in a church; *primus*, first.

### Remarkable Places.

**Windsor**, on the Thames, contains a palace which has been the principal residence of the English sovereigns from the time of William the Conqueror.



WINDSOR CASTLE.

**Greenwich** (gren'-ij), on the Thames, six miles from London, is noted for its Observatory,<sup>1</sup> from which longitude is reckoned by English geographers.

**Hastings**, where William the Conqueror defeated Harold, 1066 A.D., is on the coast of the English Channel, south-east from London. **Stratford-on-Avon**, near the centre of England, is noted as the birthplace of Shakespeare. At **Worcester**, Cromwell defeated Charles II. in 1651. **Berwick-on-Tweed** (ber'r'ik) is a border town between England and Scotland.

#### TOWNS ACCORDING TO POPULATION. (CENSUS OF 1891.)

**ENGLAND**.—London, 4½ millions; Liverpool, 518,000; Manchester, 505,000; Birmingham, 429,000; Leeds, 367,000; Sheffield, 324,000; Bristol, 222,000; Bradford, 216,000; Nottingham, 212,000; West Ham, 205,000; Hull, 200,000; Salford, 198,000; Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 186,000; Portsmouth, 159,000.

**WALES**.—Cardiff, 129,000; Swansea, 90,000.

<sup>1</sup> A building for looking at the stars.

## ROUTES FROM ENGLAND TO INDIA.

The quickest route is from London to Brindisi in Italy, by rail with the exception of the passage across the Strait of Dover. From Brindisi, passengers were formerly conveyed by steamer to Alexandria; thence by rail to Suez, and thence by steamer to Bombay, touching at Aden. The same steamer now goes from Brindisi to Bombay. The journey occupies about 16 days. Steamers also sail direct from London calling at Gibraltar and Malta. Passing through the Suez Canal, they reach Bombay in about 25 days. Sailing ships going round the Cape of Good Hope take about 3 months to reach India.

## SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is bounded on the north and west by the Atlantic Ocean; on the east by the North Sea; on the south by England and the Irish Sea.

The area is about 30,000 square miles,—about one-fourth larger than that of Ceylon, or half the size of England and Wales.

**COAST.**—The coast line is extremely irregular, being indented by numerous arms of the sea, called *Firths* and *Lochs*.

A *firth*, or *frith*, is a narrow arm of the sea. A *loch*, called *lough* (*lok*) in Ireland, means not only a *lake*, but also an arm of the sea. The principal inlets, or arms of the sea, are—on the east side, **Firth of Forth**, **Firth of Tay**, and **Moray Firth**; on the north, **Pentland Firth**, a strait between the Orkney Islands and the mainland; on the west side, **Loch Linnhe**, **Firth of Clyde**, and **Sol'way Firth**. The Pentland Firth is remarkable for its current. The Solway Firth is very shallow, and the tide flows with great rapidity.

Scotland is divided into three peninsulas by the firths. A deep narrow valley, called *Glenmore* (Great Glen), runs from *Loch Linnhe* to the *Moray Firth*. By connecting some lochs in it the Caledonian Canal has been formed, enabling steamers to pass from sea to sea. The *Forth and Clyde Canal* joins the Firths of Forth and Clyde.

**CAPES.**—The principal capes are **St. Abb's Head**, in Berwick; **Dunnet Head**, the most northerly point in the mainland of Scotland; **Cape Wrath**, the north-western extremity; and the **Mull**<sup>1</sup> of **Galloway**, the most southerly point.

**ISLANDS.**—In the north, the **Shet'land** and **Ork'ney Islands**; in the west, the **Hebrides** (heb'-rid-ez) or **Western Islands**; in the south-west, **Bute** and **Arran**.

The Hebrides are divided into the **Outer Hebrides**, one of which, called **Lewis**, is the largest Scottish island, and the **Inner Hebrides**, of which **Skye**, noted for its scenery, is the largest. The

<sup>1</sup> *Mull*, means a bare headland.

**Minch** is a strait between Lewis and the mainland; the **Little Minch** is between the Outer Hebrides and Skye. **Iona**, a small island in the west, was one of the principal seats of learning during the middle ages, and contains the tombs of many of the Scottish kings. **Staffa**, a small island north of Iona, is remarkable for its caverns and basaltic<sup>1</sup> columns. The East Coast has no islands.

**SURFACE.**—Scotland may be divided into the **Highlands** in the north; a rich central plain, and an upland region in the south. Three ranges of mountains extend across the country from south-west to north-east. There is a **Northern Range**; the **Gramp'ians** are towards the centre; the **Low'thers** and **Che'viot Hills** in the south.

**Ben Ne'vis**, in the Grampians, is 4,406 feet above the sea, and is the highest mountain in the British Islands. **Ben Macdhui**<sup>2</sup> is nearly equal in height.

**RIVERS.**—The **Tweed**, in the south-east, forms part of the boundary between England and Scotland; the **Forth** and the **Tay** fall into firths of the same name; the **Spey** enters the ocean near the Moray Firth; the **Clyde** flows north-west into the Firth of Clyde.

The Tay, 105 miles in length, is the longest river in Scotland; the Spey is the most rapid river; the Clyde is the most frequented by shipping, and the greatest ship-building river in the world. The **Dee** and the **Don** enter the sea at Aberdeen.

The Firths of Forth and Tay are crossed by very long bridges.

**LAKES.**—Scotland contains several lakes, celebrated for their scenery. The principal are **Loch Lo'mond**, the largest lake in Britain, and **Loch Kat'rine**.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is cold and wet compared with that of England.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Coal and iron are found in great abundance near the rivers Forth and Clyde. Lead is obtained in the **Lead Hills**, a range of the Lowthers.

There are some fertile districts, but much of the country is sterile, or affords only a meagre pasturage for sheep. The Scottish farmers are noted for their skill.

Sheep and oxen are reared in great numbers for the Eng'ish market. The herring and salmon fisheries are important. The principal manufactures are iron, cotton, linen, and woollen goods.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 4 millions. The Lowlanders are of the same origin as the English; but the

<sup>1</sup> Basalt, a kind of hard rock. <sup>2</sup> Black Boar Mountain.

Highlanders, or Gaels, are Celtic, and speak the Gaelic language. The Scotch are noted for their caution and perseverance. Though much attached to their native country, many of them leave it for a time to push their fortunes in various parts of the world. Schools are numerous, and the country has produced some distinguished writers.

Scotland was anciently called Caledonia, and its people were called Picts by the Romans. About 300 A.D., the Scots, a Celtic tribe of Ireland, crossed over to the south-west of Scotland, and conquered the Picts. The whole country then took the new name of Scotland. At a later period, the Angles and Northmen made settlements in the centre and east of Scotland. Many of the inhabitants of the northern islands are of Scandinavian origin. In 1603 A.D., James VI. of Scotland succeeded to the throne of England, and the Parliaments of the two countries were united in 1707. The population is 135 to the square mile.

Protestant Christianity is the national religion. The Presbyterian form of Church Government prevails, in which all ministers are of equal rank. There are no Bishops, as in England, in the Church established by law.

**DIVISIONS.**—The three principal divisions are the **HIGHLANDS** in the north, the **LOWLANDS** in the south, and the **ISLANDS** in the west. The country is likewise divided into 33 Shires or Counties.

#### TEN NORTHERN COUNTIES.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Orkney and Shet'- land	<i>Kirk'wall, Ler'wick.</i>
Caith'ness	<i>Wick, Thur'so.</i>
Suth'erland	<i>Dor'noch.</i>
Ross	<i>Tain, Ding'wall, Stornoway.</i>
Crom'arty	<i>Crom'arty.</i>
Inverness'	<i>Inverness', Fort Wil'liam.</i>
Nairn	<i>Nairn.</i>
Mor'ay, or El'gin	<i>El'gin, For'res.</i>
Banff	<i>Banff.</i>
Aberdeen'	<i>Aberdeen', Peterhead'.</i>

#### TEN MIDDLE COUNTIES.

Kincar'dine	<i>Stoneha'ven.</i>
For'far	<i>Dundee', Arbroath', Montroso', For'far, Bre'chin.</i>
Perth	<i>Perth, Crieff.</i>

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Fife - - - - -	Dunfermline, Kirkcaldy, St. Andrews, <i>Cu'par.</i>
<b>Kinross'</b> - - - - -	<b><i>Kinross'.</i></b>
Clackman'nan - - -	Al'loa, <i>Clackman'nan</i> , Dol'lar.
Stirl'ing - - - - -	<i>Stirl'ing</i> , Fal'kirk.
Dumbar'ton - - -	<i>Dumbar'ton</i> , Hel'ensburgh, Kirkintil'loch.
Argyll' - - - - -	Cam'pelton, Dunoon', Oban, <i>Inverary</i> .
Bute - - - - -	<i>Rothesay.</i>

## THIRTEEN SOUTHERN COUNTIES.

<b>Ayr</b> - - - - -	Kilmar'nock, <i>Ayr</i> , Ir'vine.
Renfrew - - - - -	Green'ock, Pais'ley, Port Glas'gow, <i>Ren'frew</i> .
<b>Lanark</b> - - - - -	Glas'gow, Air'drie, <i>Lan'ark</i> .
<b>Linlithgow</b> , or <b>West Lothian</b>	Bath'gate, <i>Linlith'gow</i> .
<b>Edinburgh</b> , or <b>Mid Lothian</b> -	<b>EDINBURGH</b> (ed'-in-bur-o), Leith.
<b>Haddington</b> , or <b>East Lothian</b>	<i>Had'dington</i> , Dunbar', Prestonpans'.
Berwick (ber'-rik)	Dunsc, <i>Green'law</i> .
Rox'burgh - - -	Haw'ick, Kel'so, <i>Jed'burgh</i> , Mel'rose.
Sel'kirk - - -	Galashiels', <i>Sel'kirk</i> .
Pee'bles - - -	<i>Pee'bles</i> .
Dumfries - - -	<i>Dumfries'</i> , An'nan, Moffat.
Kirkcu'dbright	<i>Kirkcudbright</i> (kir-ku'-bre).
Wig'town - - -	Stran'raer, <i>Wig'town</i> , Port Pat'rick.

Inverness is the largest county ; Clackmannan, the smallest ; Lanark has the largest population ; Kinross, the least ; Sutherland is the most thinly peopled.

**TOWNS.**—EDINBURGH,<sup>1</sup> the capital, near the Firth of Forth, is one of the most beautiful and picturesque cities in Europe.

Edinburgh Castle stands on a precipitous<sup>2</sup> rock in the centre. The city took its name from Edwin, a Northumbrian prince who held it in the seventh century. It became the capital of Scotland in 1437. It contains *Holyrood*, the palace of the ancient kings, and is the seat of a celebrated university. Edinburgh is nearly in the same latitude as Copenhagen, Moscow, and Omsk.

**Leith**, on the Firth of Forth, is the port of Edinburgh, with which it is now connected.

<sup>1</sup> Edwin's town. <sup>2</sup> Steep.

**Glas'gow**, on the Clyde, is the largest city in Scotland, and famous for its manufactures and commerce.

The town has a gloomy appearance from the coal-smoke, which hangs over it in dingy<sup>1</sup> clouds. Glasgow is celebrated for the construction of steam-vessels and engines. It is the centre of a great iron and coal district, and is next to London in population.

**Pais'ley**, seven miles west from Glasgow, is noted for its thread, as it was formerly for its shawls.

Dumbar'ton,<sup>2</sup> near the Firth of Clyde, has a fort on a rock.

**Greenock** is a large sea-port at the mouth of the Clyde.

**Stir'ling**, on the Forth, has a celebrated castle, and was the favourite residence of the Scottish kings. **Perth**, on the Tay, was at one time the capital of Scotland.

The kings were crowned at **Scone**, in the neighbourhood of Perth. The stone on which they sat during the ceremony is now in Westminster Abbey. **St. Andrews**, east of Perth, has the oldest university in Scotland.

**Dundee'**, on the Firth of Tay, is the third city in Scotland, and the chief seat of the linen and jute manufactures.

**Aberdee'n**,<sup>3</sup> on the eastern coast, contains many houses built of granite, and has considerable trade.

**Aberdeen** is the fourth city in Scotland, and has a university.

**Peterhead**, the most easterly town of Scotland, is noted for its whale fishery.

**Balmo'ral**, the summer residence of the Queen, is west of Aberdeen.

**Inverness'**<sup>3</sup> is the chief city in the Northern Highlands.

**Wick**, in the north-east, is the chief seat of the herring fishery.

**LARGEST TOWNS**.—Glasgow, population, with suburbs, 793,000; Edinburgh, 265,000; Dundee, 156,000; Aberdeen, 123,000; Leith, 70,000; Paisley, 66,000; Greenock, 63,000.

#### IRELAND.

IRELAND is bounded on the east by the North Channel, the Irish Sea, and St. George's Channel; and on the south, west, and north, by the Atlantic Ocean.

The area is 32,500 square miles,—a little larger than that of Scotland. Ireland is the third largest island of Europe, and about one-third of the size of Great Britain. The native name is *Erin*.

<sup>1</sup> Dark. <sup>2</sup> The hill fort of the Britons. <sup>3</sup> *Aber* and *inver* both mean *mouth*.

The western coast is much broken by inlets. **Howth Head**, near Dublin, and **Cape Clear**, on Cape Clear Island in the south, are the principal headlands. **Rathlin**, in the north, and **Achil**, in the west, are the largest islands.

Exposure to the waves of the Atlantic, driven on shore by the prevalence of westerly winds, accounts for the very indented character of the coast on the west and south-west. **Lough Foyle** and **Lough Swilly** in the north; **Gal'way Bay** in the west; **Ban'try Bay** in the south-west; and **Belfast' Lough** in the north-east, are some of the principal inlets. There are about 5,000 islands and rocks, but only about 250 are inhabited. The **Giant's Causeway**, a curious collection of natural stone pillars, is near Rathlin.

**SURFACE.**—The centre consists of a large plain, but there are some scattered mountains in the south and west.

The highest summit is **Carn-tu'al**, in **Maggillicuddy Reeks**, 3,414 feet above the sea, near the south-west coast.

**RIVERS.**—The **Shan'non**, the largest river, has a south-westerly course into the Atlantic. The **Boyne** and **Liffey** flow north-east into the Irish Sea.

The **Shannon**, 224 miles in length, and navigable for 213 miles, is the longest river in the British Islands. In its course it passes through Loughs **Allen**, **Ree**, and **Derg**. The **Barrow**, with its tributary the **Suir** (shure), in the south-east, is next in size.

**LAKES.**—Ireland has several lakes. **Lough Neagh** (lock-nay), in the north-east, is the largest in Britain or Ireland. The **Lakes of Killarney**, in the south-west, are noted for their beautiful scenery.

**CLIMATE, &c.**—The climate is mild and moist. It produces such beautiful verdure that Ireland has been called “the **Emerald<sup>1</sup> Isle**.” The middle of the country was once covered with forests, which are now replaced by immense bogs, yielding an abundant supply of turf, used as fuel, from the want of coal.

Ireland is chiefly a grazing country. Oats, potatoes, and barley, are the principal vegetable productions. Agriculture is backward but improving.

The west wind from the ocean, laden with moisture, first breaks upon Ireland. About one-seventh of the island consists of bogs. Flax

<sup>1</sup> A precious stone of a green colour.

is grown extensively in the north-east. The salmon fisheries in the rivers are valuable. There are no venomous<sup>1</sup> reptiles in Ireland.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 5 millions. The Irish belong to the Celtic family, but there are many settlers from Britain in the north and east.

The native language, which is allied to the Gaelic of Scotland, is now little used except in the west. In the north-east most of the inhabitants are the descendants of Scotch settlers, introduced by James I. In 1841 the population exceeded 8 millions. The decline is owing to the famine in 1846, and emigration<sup>2</sup> to America.

The only important manufacture is that of linen in the north-east. The principal exports are cattle, butter, and linen. The trade is chiefly confined to Britain.

The want of coal has hindered the growth of manufactures. The manufactures are chiefly confined to the descendants of the Scotch settlers in Ulster, who form the most industrious and prosperous part of the population.

Ireland is well supplied with water communication by means of rivers and canals, and there are several lines of railway.

NATIONAL CHARACTER.—The Irish are generous, quick-witted, hospitable,<sup>3</sup> and cheerful; but in general they are not so industrious as the inhabitants of Britain.

RELIGION.—The great majority of the people are Roman Catholics; the remainder are Protestants.

The descendants of the English settlers belong to the Protestant Episcopal Church; those of the Scotch settlers are Presbyterians.

DIVISIONS.—Ireland is divided into four provinces:—in the north, ULSTER; in the centre, LEINSTER and CON'NAUGHT; in the south-west, MUNSTER. It is also sub-divided into 32 Counties.

Ireland, before its conquest by the English, was divided into four native kingdoms, often at war with each other. It had a separate Parliament till its union with Great Britain in 1801.

#### IN THE PROVINCE OF ULSTER.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
An'trim - - - -	<i>Belfast</i> , Lis'burn, Carrickfer'gus.
Down - - - -	<i>New'ry</i> , <i>Downpat'rick</i> , Don'aghadee.
<b>Armagh'</b> - - - -	<i>Armagh</i> '.

<sup>1</sup> Poisonous; *vine'num*, poison. <sup>2</sup> Going from one's own country to another to settle in it; *e*, from; *migro*, to remove. <sup>3</sup> Kind to strangers; *hospes*, a guest.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Mon'aghan - - -	<i>Mon'aghan</i> , Clones.
Cav'an - - -	<i>Cav'an</i> .
Ferman'agh - - -	<i>Enniskil'len</i> .
Tyrone - - -	Strabane', <i>Omagh</i> '.
Londonder'ry - - -	<i>Londonder'ry</i> , Coleraine'.
Donegal' - - -	<i>Lifford</i> .

## IN THE PROVINCE OF CON'NAUGHT.

Leitrim - - - -	<i>Carrick-on-Shannon</i> .
Roscom'mon - - - -	<i>Roscom'mon</i> , Boyle.
Sli'go - - - -	<i>Sli'go</i> .
Ma'yo - - - -	Ballina', <i>Castlebar</i> ', West'port.
Gal'way - - - -	<i>Gal'way</i> , Tu'am.

## IN THE PROVINCE OF MUNSTER.

Clare - - - -	<i>En'nis</i> , Kilrush.
Lim'eric - - - -	<i>Limerick</i> .
Tippera'ry - - - -	<i>Clonmel</i> ', Tippera'ry, Thurles.
Wa'terford - - - -	<i>Wa'terford</i> , Dungar'van.
Cork - - - -	<i>Cork</i> , Queenstown, You'ghal, Ban'don, Kin'sale'.
Ker'ry - - - -	<i>Tralee</i> ', Killar'ney.

## IN THE PROVINCE OF LEINSTER.

Dub'lin - - - -	<i>DUB'LIN</i> , King'stown.
Louth - - - -	Drogheda (draw'-e-da), <i>Dundalk</i> '.
East-Meath - - -	Na'ven, <i>Trim</i> .
West-Meath - - -	Athlone', <i>Mullingar</i> '.
Long'ford - - -	<i>Long'ford</i> .
King's County - - -	<i>Tullamore</i> ', Par'sonstown.
Queen's County - - -	<i>Ma'ryborough</i> .
Kilken'ny - - -	<i>Kilken'ny</i> .
Carlow - - -	<i>Car'low</i> .
Kildare' - - -	Athy', <i>Naas</i> (nais), <i>Maynooth</i> '.
Wicklow - - -	<i>Ark'low</i> , <i>Wick'low</i> .
Wex'ford - - -	<i>Wex'ford</i> , New Ross.

Cork is the largest county; Louth is the smallest; Antrim has the largest population; Carlow has the smallest.

**TOWNS.**—In the east, **DUB'LIN**, the capital, situated on the Liffey, a large and beautiful city, with a celebrated university, called Trinity College. It is the residence of the Lord-Lieutenant, or Viceroy.

Dublin is nearly in the same latitude as Liverpool, Hamburg, and Irkutsk. King'stown is the port of Dublin. Maynooth', a few miles west from Dublin, has a Roman Catholic College.

**Belfast**', in the north-east, at the head of Belfast Lough, is the second city in the island, and the first in trade, manufactures, and ship-building. **Cork** (*Marsh*), in the south, the third city, has a noble harbour, and a large export trade in provisions. **Lim'erick**, on the Shannon, is the principal sea-port in the west, and has manufactures of lace.

**Queenstown**, on an island of Cork harbour, is a port of call for American mail steamers. **Gal'way** and **Sli'go** are sea-ports in the west. There are "Queen's Colleges" at Belfast, Cork, and Galway.

**Londonder'ry**, on the Foyle, in the north, has a large export trade in provisions.

It is memorable for the siege it sustained in 1689 against the forces of James II. **Coleraine** (*kol-rain'*), north-east of Londonderry, has salmon fisheries.

**Armagh** (*ar-ma'*), an inland town, towards the north-east, is the seat of an Archbishop.

**Drogheda** (*draw'-e-da*), is north of Dublin, on the Boyne. Near it the battle of the Boyne was fought in 1690.

**Wa'terford**, on the Suir (*shure*), in the south-east, is a sea-port with considerable trade.

**Kilken'ny**, towards the south-east, is an inland town, with some woollen manufactures.

**Youghal** (*yaw-hal*), in the south, was formerly the residence of Sir Walter Raleigh, who first introduced the cultivation of the potato on his estate in the neighbourhood.

LARGEST TOWNS.—Dublin, 362,000 ; Belfast, 256,000 ; Cork, 75,000 ; Limerick, 37,000 ; Londonderry, 33,000.

#### PRINCIPAL COAST TOWNS OF THE UNITED KINGDOM.

##### *East Coast.*

**Scotland**: Wick, Inverness, Peterhead, Aberdeen, Montrose, Dundee, Leith; **England**: Berwick, North and South Shields, Sunderland, Middlesborough, Scarborough, Hull, Yarmouth, Harwich, Gravesend.

##### *South Coast.*

" Dover, Folkestone, Hastings, Newhaven, Brighton, Portsmouth, Southampton, Exeter, Torquay, Plymouth, Falmouth, Penzance.

*West Coast.*

Bristol (Avon); **Wales**: Cardiff, Swansea, Holyhead; **England**: Birkenhead, Liverpool, Barrow-in-Furness; **Scotland**: Ayr, Greenock, Dumbarton.

*Ireland.*

**East Coast**: Belfast, Newry, Dublin; **South Coast**: Waterford, Cork; **West Coast**: Limerick, Galway, Sligo; **North Coast**: Londonderry.

## PRINCIPAL IMPORTS.

(*Ranked according to value.*)

**Grain**.—From the United States, India, Russia, Germany, Canada, Egypt.

**Cotton**.—United States, India, Egypt, Brazil.

**Gold and Silver**.—United States, Australia, Mexico.

**Sugar**.—Germany, West Indies, France, Brazil, Mauritius.

**Wool**.—Australia, South Africa, India, Germany.

**Silks**.—France, China, Belgium.

**Timber**.—Canada, Russia, Sweden, United States.

**Tea**.—China, India, Ceylon.

**Hides and Skins**.—India, United States, South America.

**Butter**.—France, Holland, Denmark.

**Cattle and Sheep**.—Germany, Holland, United States, Denmark, Portugal, Spain.

**Oil Seeds**.—India, Russia.

**Coffee**.—Ceylon, Brazil, India, West Indies.

**Wine**.—France, Spain, Portugal.

**Bacon and Hams**.—United States, Germany.

**Fruit**.—Greece, Spain, Turkey, France.

**Flax**.—Russia, Belgium, Holland.

**Tobacco**.—United States, Spanish West India Islands.

**Jute**.—India.

**Kerosine Oil**.—United States and Russia.

## BRITISH COLONIES AND FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.

*In Europe.*

**Gibraltar**, in the south of Spain; **Malta**, in the Mediterranean.

Total area, 121 square miles. Population, 190,000.

Heligoland was ceded to Germany in 1890.

*In Asia.*

**British India**, **Burma**, **Ceylon**, **Aden**, **Cyprus**, **Straits Settlements**, **Labuan**, and **Hong-Kong**. There are several States in India under British protection. "

Total area, including Protected States, 1,827,000 square miles. Population, 291,000,000.

*In Africa.*

**Sierra-Leone** (le-o'-ne) and **Guinea Settlements**, on the West Coast; the islands of **St. Hele'na** and **Ascension**, in the Atlantic Ocean; **Cape Colony**, **Natal'**, &c., in the south; **Mauritius** and **Socotra**, in the east. There are also large tracts under British Companies.

Total area, 360,000 square miles. Population, 5,000,000.

*In America.*

**Dominion of Can'ada**, in the north; **Honduras**, in Central America; **British West India Islands**, between North and South America; **British Guia'na**, in the north of South America; **Falkland Islands**, off the south-eastern extremity of South America.

Total area, 3,614,000 square miles. Population, 6,700,000.

*In Oceania.*

**Australia**, **Tasma'nia**, **New Zea'land**, **Fiji** (fee-gee) **Islands**, **North Borneo**, and part of **New Guinea**.

Total area, 3,260,000 square miles. Population, 4,500,000.

The entire dominions of the Queen of England contain about 9 millions of square miles, and about 345 millions of inhabitants. They include one-sixth of the surface, and nearly one-fourth of the population of the globe.

With African Protectorates, they contain 11,400,000 square miles and a population of 381 millions.

## DENMARK.

The kingdom of DENMARK includes part of the peninsula of **Jütland**, to the north of Central Europe; **Zealand**, **Fu'nen**, **La'aland**, **Bornholm** (born'-hom), and other islands in the Baltic; **Iceland** and the **Faroe Islands** in the Atlantic; and a few possessions in other quarters of the globe.

The Duckies of **Schleswig** (shles'-vig)-Holstein and **Lauenburg**, formerly connected with Denmark, were annexed by Prussia in 1864.

Denmark means the *country of the Danes*; Jütland, *the land of the Jutes* or Goths; Zealand, *sea-land*; Funen, *beautiful*; Laaland, *low land*.

Denmark Proper contains about 14,500 square miles.

**SURFACE.**—Denmark is a portion of the great European plain. The western coast is sandy; the peninsula is very much indented by shallow, winding inlets, called *fjords*.<sup>1</sup>

The northern extremity of Jütland is called the *Skaw* (cape). The *Liim Fiord* (leem-fyord') extends right across the northern part of the peninsula. Marshes and lakes are numerous. In some parts the sea is kept out by dikes, as in Holland.

**CLIMATE, &c.**—The climate is damp and cloudy, but mild. Barley, rye, and oats, are the principal grains. Cattle are reared extensively; butter and cheese are made in large quantities. The fisheries are valuable.

**COMMERCE.**—The chief *imports* are coal, iron, cotton goods and sugar; the chief *exports* are butter, cattle, corn, eggs, and hides.

**PEOPLE.**—The inhabitants of Jütland and the Islands resemble the Norwegians and Swedes. They are quiet, industrious, and well-educated.

The population is about 2 millions. The Danes are in general tall and robust, with light-coloured hair. The established religion is Protestant Christianity of the Lutheran form.

The Anglo-Saxons, who conquered England, came from the Baltic coast of Schleswig. About the eighth century, the Danes and Norwegians, under the name of Northmen, became notorious throughout Europe for their piracies.<sup>2</sup> Canute, king of Denmark, subdued England. Towards the close of the fourteenth century, Queen Margaret acquired Norway by inheritance, and Sweden by conquest. In 1523 Sweden regained its independence; and in 1814 Norway was ceded to Sweden.

**TOWNS.**—COPENHAGEN, the capital, is a fine city in the east of Zealand, with a celebrated university.

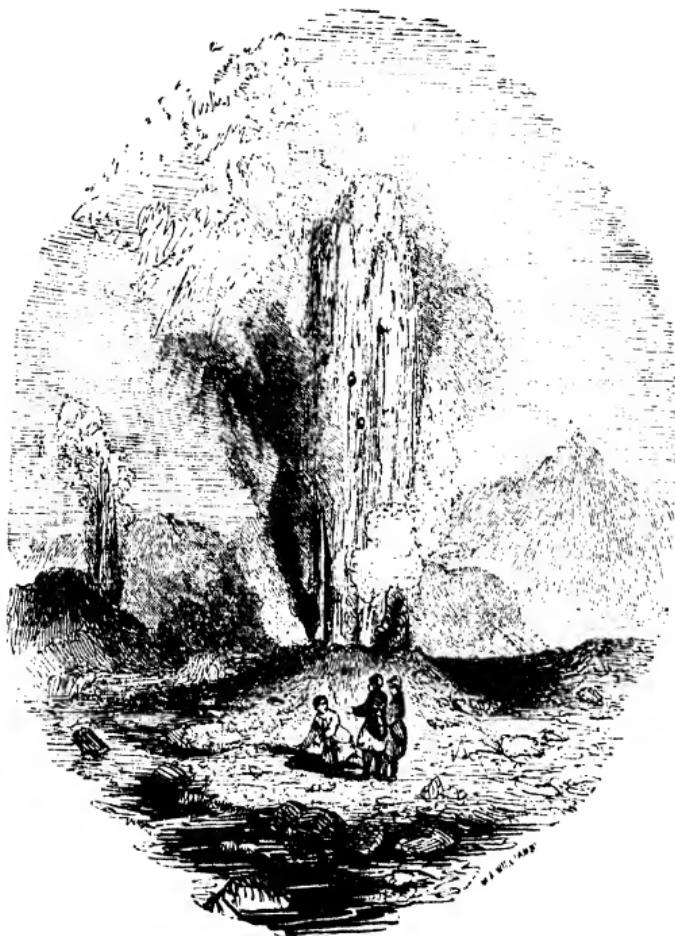
The name denotes *merchant's harbour*. Many of the streets are intersected by canals. The city was bombarded<sup>3</sup> in 1807, and the Danish fleet was taken to England. The population is 375,000.

**Elsinore**, in Zealand, at the narrowest part of the Sound, was the place where ships on passing through paid toll.

The islands, Zealand and Funen, block up the entrance to the Baltic, except three narrow channels. The Great Belt is the largest channel, but the Sound is the most frequented by shipping.

<sup>1</sup> The same as *frith*, a narrow inlet of the sea. <sup>2</sup> Robberies by sea. <sup>3</sup> Bum-bard'-ed, attacked with bombs, or hollow shot from cannon.

ICELAND is a rocky, barren island, larger than Ireland, in the North Atlantic, on the borders of the Arctic Circle. It is celebrated for the boiling springs of the *Geysers*<sup>1</sup> (gi'sers) and a volcano, named **Hec'la**.



THE GEYSERS, OR BOILING SPRINGS OF ICELAND.

The name in Danish simply means *island*, not ice land.

The island is traversed by mountains covered with perpetual snow. There are great subterranean<sup>2</sup> fires which occasionally discharge

1 The name means *boilers*. 2 Under the earth: *sub*, under; *terra*, the earth.

themselves from several volcanic peaks. During the eruption <sup>1</sup> of Hecla in 1846, the ashes reached the Orkney Islands, a distance of 600 miles. The Geysers throw up columns of boiling water to the height of 200 feet.

The climate is so cold that no grain can be raised; but potatoes and cabbages are cultivated in some parts. Only a few stunted trees are found in the island. A valuable lichen is abundant.

Iceland was discovered by a Norwegian pirate in 861. A colony of Norwegians settled in the island in 874. The Icelanders are intelligent and moral. All can read and write.

The Faroe Islands (sheep islands) are situated between Iceland and the Shetlands. The soft down of the *eider duck* is exported.

Some settlements in Greenland, and three small islands in the West Indies, also belong to Denmark.

#### SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

SWEDEN AND NORWAY, now united under one king, together occupy the Scandinavian Peninsula, the largest in Europe. They are bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by Russia, the Gulf of Bothnia, and the Baltic; on the south by the Baltic, the Kattegat, and the Skager Rack; and on the west by the North Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

The area is nearly 300,000 square miles. In size, Sweden and Norway rank next to Russia among European States.

#### Norway.

NORWAY<sup>2</sup> is a long, narrow country, nearly as large as the Bombay Presidency, forming the western part of the Scandinavian Peninsula.

The area is about 124,000 square miles.

SURFACE.—Norway is one of the most mountainous countries in Europe. The coast is indented by narrow, deep winding *fjords*, and skirted by innumerable rocks and islets.

A chain of mountains extends from the **Naze** (Nose), the most southerly point of Norway, to the extreme north. The southern part of the range is called the **Hardanger Field**; <sup>3</sup> the central, the **Do'vere Field**; in the north the **Kiölen** (Keel) Mountains form the

<sup>1</sup> Breaking forth: *e*, out; *ruptum*, to break. <sup>2</sup> Northern kingdom. <sup>3</sup> *Field* (*fjel*) means a *range of hills*, generally with flat summits.

boundary between Norway and Sweden. **Galdhoppig**, the highest peak, is 8,546 feet above the sea. The summits of the range are covered with perpetual snow. **North Cape**, on the island of **Magero'e**, is about 1,290 feet high.

The **Lofoden** Islands are a numerous group off the north-west coast. Between two of them is the *Maelstrom* (*mill-stream*), a remarkable whirlpool, formed by the meeting of opposite currents.

The Norwegian rivers are mostly wild torrents,<sup>1</sup> whose courses are broken by rocks and cataracts.<sup>2</sup> The **Glom'men**, the longest river, flows southward into the Skager Rack.

**CLIMATE.**—The summer is short and warm; the winter is long and severe.

A great part of the north of the country lies within the Arctic Circle. In the extreme north there is constant daylight for about two and a half months during summer; while the sun is not visible for nearly two months during winter.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Norway produces iron and copper. There are fertile tracts in the south, but the soil is generally poor. Barley, oats, and rye, are cultivated in the warmer districts; but cattle are of more importance than agriculture. About one-fifth is covered with forests, chiefly of pine. Moss, the food of the reindeer, is plentiful in the north. The fisheries are very valuable. In the early part of the year, about 20,000 fishermen assemble at the Lofoden Islands.

**COMMERCE.**—Timber, fish, iron, and ice, are the chief exports; clothing, food, and coals, are the chief imports.

Norway ranks third in the number of its ships.

**PEOPLE.**—Norway is the most thinly peopled country in Europe. The Norwegians are frank and hospitable. Some of them live to a great age. In religion they are Protestants.

The population is nearly 2 millions, being only 16 to the square mile.

**TOWNS.**—**CHRISTIA'NIA**, at the end of a fiord in the south-east, is the capital, and the seat of a university.

**Ber'gen** and **Trondhjem** (*tron'yem*) are sea-ports in the west.

Christiania was so called after Christian IV. who commenced building it.

Bergen has a large export trade of dried fish. Trondhjem (throne's home) was the ancient capital, and is the extreme northern limit at which wheat will grow.

1 Rushing streams; *torreo*, to boil. 2 Waterfalls.

**Frederickshald** is situated to the south of Christiania. Charles XII. of Sweden was slain at its siege in 1718.

**Hammerfest**, on an island, is the most northerly town in Europe. Barley is sown here, and reaped within six weeks.

### Sweden.

**SWEDEN**, nearly one-half larger than Norway, occupies the eastern part of the Scandinavian Peninsula.

The area is about 170,000 square miles.

**SURFACE**.—The sea-coasts and the south are flat; the interior rises by terraces towards Norway.

**Gothland** and **Œland** (e'land) are islands in the Baltic, belonging to Sweden.

**RIVERS**.—The numerous rivers are broken by cataracts. The **Gotha**, the largest river, enters the Kattegat. The **Tor'nea** flows into the Gulf of Bothnia, and divides the north of Sweden from Russia.

**LAKES**.—**Wener**, the third lake for size in Europe, and **Wetter** are in the south. There are numerous small lakes. The Gotha canal joins the Baltic and the Kattegat by means of lakes Wener and Wetter.

**CLIMATE**.—The climate resembles that of Norway, but the fall of rain is less.

**PRODUCTIONS**.—The iron-mines of Sweden are the most famous in the world, and there are large pine-forests.

Cultivation is carried on to some extent in the middle and south.

Wheat is grown only in the south. Barley and oats are the chief grains.

**PEOPLE**.—The Swedes are industrious and well-educated. They are Protestants in religion.

The Swedes are nearly 5 millions in number, or 27 to the square mile. Next to Norway, Sweden is the most thinly peopled country in Europe.

The Swedes, Norwegians, and Danes, belong to the same Scandinavian race. They are, in general, tall and fair-haired, with blue eyes. There are some Finns and Lapps in the north.

**COMMERCE**.—Timber, cattle, and iron, are the chief exports; clothing, food, and coals, are the chief imports.

**TOWNS**.—**STOCK' HOLM**,<sup>1</sup> the capital, is situated at the junction of Lake Maelar with an inlet of the Baltic.

<sup>1</sup> The island of piles. *Holm*, means island.

It stands partly upon small rocky islands. The population is about 247,000. Stockholm is nearly in the same latitude as St. Petersburg and Tobolsk.

**Gothenburg**,<sup>1</sup> in the south-west, on the Gotha, is the second commercial city. **Upsa'la**, north-west from Stockholm, was the ancient capital, and has a famous university.

Linnae'sus, the great botanist, was a professor at Upsala. North of it is **Dannemo'ra**, containing the richest iron-mines in Sweden.

**Carlscro'na**, in the south-east, is the principal station of the Swedish navy.

**GOVERNMENT.**—Though Sweden and Norway are under one king, each has its own laws.

The Swedish legislative assembly, called the *Diet*,<sup>2</sup> is composed of two Chambers, one elected from proprietors, the other from a lower class. In Norway, laws are enacted by the *Storthing* (*great court*), consisting of one hundred members elected by the people.

Sweden and Norway were long subject to Denmark; but in 1523 Sweden recovered her independence under Gustavus Vasa, and in 1814 Norway was transferred to the Swedish crown.

**LAPLAND** is situated to the north of the Gulf of Bothnia. Part of it belongs to Norway and Sweden, part to Russia. It is a cold, desolate region, covered with snow the most part of the year. The inhabitants, Mongolians, are a small, yellow, beardless people. They lead a wandering life with their herds of reindeer, which afford them both food and clothing. All of them now profess Christianity.

#### RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

**RUSSIA** occupies the eastern half of Europe. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Ural Mountains, the Ural River, and the Caspian; on the south by the Caucasus Mountains, the Black Sea, Roumania, and Austria; and on the west by Austria, Prussia, the Baltic Sea and Sweden.

The area is nearly 2,100,000 square miles, or about one-third larger than that of India.

**SEAS AND GULFS.**—In the north, the **White Sea**; in the west, the **Baltic**, with its arms the Gulfs of

<sup>1</sup> The town of the Goths. Swedish name, Goteborg. <sup>2</sup> *Dies*, a day.

**Bothnia, Finland, and Riga**; in the south the **Black Sea, the Sea of Azov, and the Caspian**.

**ISLANDS**.—In the Baltic, **O'esel** (e'-sel), **Da'go**, and **A'land**; in the Arctic Ocean, **Nova Zembla**, **Waigatz**, and **Spitzbergen**.

The Spitzbergen group is composed of four large islands, excessively cold and dreary. Hunters and fishermen occasionally visit them, but otherwise they are not inhabited by human beings.

**SURFACE**.—Russia is, in general, a vast plain. The **Valdai Hills**, a low range between St. Petersburg and Moscow, form the chief watershed. The principal mountains are the **Ural** and **Caucasus Ranges**, forming parts of the Asiatic frontier.

Finland (*Fen-land*), to the north of the gulf of the same name, contains low rocky hills, with numerous marshes and lakes.

**RIVERS**.—The **Petcho'ra** falls into the Arctic Ocean; the **Dwi'na** flows into the White Sea; the **Ne'va** connects Lake **Lado'ga** with the Gulf of Finland; the **Düna**, **Niemen** (nee'-men), and **Vis'tula** flow into the Baltic. The **Dniester** and **Dnieper** fall into the Black Sea; the **Don** enters the Sea of Azov. The **Volga**, the largest river in Europe, and the **Ural** flow into the Caspian Sea. The **Pruth**, a tributary of the Danube in the south, forms part of the boundary between Russia and Roumania.

The sources of the Russian rivers being at slight elevations, their currents are very slow, and thus well adapted for commerce; but most of them are frozen several months in the year.

**LAKES**.—In the north-west, **Lado'ga**, the largest in Europe, and **One'ga**, with numerous lakes of smaller size.

Lake **Peipus** (pay'-e-pus) lies between the Gulfs of Finland and Riga. There are salt lakes in the south-east.

**CLIMATE**.—The southern parts are, in general, warm; the northern, cold; but the country is subject to great extremes of temperature.

In the Arctic region, the ground is permanently frozen a few feet below the surface, and the seasons consist of one long cloudy summer-day, and one long winter-night, relieved by clear moonlight and the

auro'ra borealis.<sup>1</sup> In the centre and north, the winters are long and severe, while the summers are short, and the heat is oppressive. In the south, on the contrary, the hot season is long and the cold season short.

**MINERALS.**—Iron, copper, gold, platinum, coal, and salt, are the principal minerals.

The metals are found chiefly in the east and south. The Ural Mountains are richer in valuable minerals than any other chain in Europe.

**SOIL AND VEGETATION.**—The country may be divided into four principal zones. The north is marshy, like the *tundras* of Siberia. South of it there is a vast forest region, the largest in Europe. Next is the zone producing rye, the principal grain, oats, flax, and hemp. Stretching across the centre of the country, from east to west, is the *Black Earth Region*, resembling the black cotton soil of India, where large quantities of wheat are grown. Maize and the vine flourish in some parts of the south, but much of it consists of treeless *steppes*, over which Tartars, dwelling in tents, wander with their horses, herds, and flocks.

Black bread, made from rye, is the common food of the peasantry. Trees are so numerous in some parts, that it is said a squirrel might travel from St. Petersburg to Moscow without touching the ground. Many of the houses are made of wood.

**ANIMALS.**—The sable and ermine, valuable for their fur, are found in the north; sheep, oxen, and horses, are reared in great numbers in the south. Wolves and bears are the principal beasts of prey. The sturgeon fisheries in the large rivers are important.

The reindeer is found in the north; camels are common in the south-east. Seals are taken in the Baltic and Caspian Seas. The roe of the sturgeon, when pickled, is called *caviare*;<sup>2</sup> the sound,<sup>3</sup> when dried, forms *isinglass*.<sup>4</sup>

**PEOPLE.**—The population of European Russia is about 106 millions. The Russians belong to the Slavonic race.

Finns, Germans, Poles and Jews, are numerous in the west; the south-eastern districts contain wandering tribes of Turkish and

<sup>1</sup> Northern light. It is like bright clouds flashing through the sky. <sup>2</sup> Pronounced kaveer' or kav-yer. <sup>3</sup> Air-bladder. <sup>4</sup> Ice-glass, a substance somewhat like gum.

Mongolian descent. Lately the Jews have been cruelly treated, and many of them expelled from the country.

Russia contains the largest population of any European state, the number being greater than that of the Lower Provinces of Bengal. There are only 45 inhabitants to the square mile. Next to Sweden, Russia is the most thinly peopled country in Europe.

The original inhabitants were wandering tribes, known under the general names of Sarmatians and Scythians. Rurik, a Scandinavian pirate, conquered many of them in 882 A.D. and is regarded as the first monarch of Russia. One of his successors, Vladimir (981) married the daughter of the Greek emperor of Constantinople, and introduced Christianity. For two centuries Russia was under the Mongols, but they were driven out by Ivan the Great. The present dynasty was raised to supreme power in 1613. Peter the Great, who became emperor in 1682, did much to civilize the people, then almost savages.

The *Lithuanians*, south of the Gulf of Finland, speak a language more like Sanskrit than any other European tongue.

The *Don Cossacks* inhabit the southern districts watered by the Don. They are a wandering race, small but hardy, supplying the Russian armies with light cavalry in time of war.

The *Circassians* are warlike Muhammadan tribes on the Caucasus, that long resisted the Russians. The women, who are celebrated for their beauty, were often sold to the Turks.

The Russians are behind the rest of Europe in civilization. Many of the lower orders, until 1861, were serfs, or slaves, bought and sold with the estates on which they lived. The late emperor put an end to this system.

The poorer classes wear long coats, made of sheep-skins, with the wool turned towards their bodies. They are very superstitious, and in general fond of spirituous liquors. Their condition, however, is gradually improving.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Cloth, leather, and cordage. Russian leather is reckoned the best in the world.

**COMMERCE.**—Grain, flax, timber, oil-seeds, hemp, kerosine oil, and wool, are the chief exports; metals, cotton, tea, clothing, wines, and colours, are the chief imports.

All the principal rivers are united by canals. Goods may be conveyed by water from Astrakhan to Archangel or the Baltic. Railways traverse the important parts of the country.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Government is an absolute monarchy.

The Emperor is called the *Czar*, another form of Cæsar. He also styles himself *au'tocrat*,<sup>1</sup> as governing solely by his own right. Liberty of speech is not allowed, and every person is watched by the police.

1 *Autos*, one's self; *kratos*, power.

**RELIGION.**—The Russians belong to the Greek Church.

There are Protestants, Roman Catholics, and Jews in the west; in the south-east there are some Muhammadans.

The Greek Church differs from the Roman Catholic Church in denying the supremacy<sup>1</sup> of the Pope, in requiring priests to marry, in allowing the Scriptures to be read, and in using pictures of the saints instead of images. The church is governed by a patriarch<sup>2</sup> and a number of bishops; but the Czar is the head of both church and state. Religious liberty is denied. Some have been cruelly persecuted.

**DIVISIONS.**—Russia in Europe is divided into 68 Governments. The principal divisions are **GREAT RUSSIA**, or **Muscovy**, in the north and centre; **FINLAND**, north of the Gulf of Finland; the **BALTIC PROVINCES**; **POLAND**, in the west; **WEST RUSSIA**; **LITTLE RUSSIA**, or the **UKRAINE**, towards the south-west; **SOUTH RUSSIA**; **EAST RUSSIA**; and **Cis-Caucasia**, north of the Caucasus.

**TOWNS.**—**ST. PETERSBURG**, the capital, founded by Peter the Great, stands on the Neva, and is a splendid city, much larger than Calcutta.

It was founded in 1703. The situation is marshy, and subject to inundations. Most of the houses are built of wood. The commerce is extensive. There is a deep ship canal to the Gulf of Finland. St. Petersburg is in about the same latitude as Bergen, Tobolsk, and Okhotsk.

**Kronstadt** (crown city), on a small island at the mouth of the Neva, is strongly fortified, and is the principal station of the Russian Baltic fleet.

**Sveaborg**, another strong fortress, built on seven islands, defends **Helsingfors**, the capital of Finland. **Revel** is a sea-port on the opposite side of the Gulf of Bothnia. **Dorpat**, south-east of Revel, has a noted university.

**Archangel**, on the White Sea, at the mouth of the Northern Dwina, was formerly the only port of Russia.

The harbour is frozen about eight months in the year.

**Ri'ga**, on the Gulf of Riga, near the mouth of the Dūna, has a large export trade, and is the third sea-port in the Empire.

**Warsaw**, on the Vistula, in the west, was the capital of Poland, once a powerful kingdom, which was divided,

<sup>1</sup> Headship; *supremus*, highest. <sup>2</sup> Chief priest: *pater*, father; *archos*, a chief.

about the end of last century, between Prussia, Austria, and Russia, the last obtaining the largest share.

Poland is a very level country, and derives its name from the word *polaska*, signifying *plain*. In 1814 Poland was formed into a separate kingdom under the Emperor of Russia; but in consequence of insurrections,<sup>1</sup> in 1831 it was made a province of the empire. The Poles are brave and patriotic, but were turbulent.<sup>2</sup> About half the Jews in Europe are found in Poland.

**Wil'na**, or *Vil'na*, in West Russia, containing many Jews, is a place of great trade, and the old capital of Lithuania.

**Moscow**, near the centre, the former capital, was set on fire at the French Invasion in 1812, but it has been rebuilt.

It is situated on the little river *Moskva*, and is connected with St. Petersburg by a railway. In the centre is the *Kremlin*, an assemblage of forts, palaces, and churches with gilded spires. The great bell of Moscow weighs 200 tons, and is the largest in the world.

**Smolensk'**, on the Dnieper, between Moscow and Wilna, is noted for the defeat of the Russians by the French; at *Polta'va*, or *Pulto'wa*, in the south, Peter the Great defeated Charles XII. of Sweden.

**Nijni-Novgorod** (lower new town), east of Moscow, situated on the Volga, has a very large fair.

**Kazan'** and **Saratov'** are trading cities lower down the Volga. **Perm**, west of the Ural Mountains, and **Ekaterinburg**, on the east side, are mining cities. **Tula**, south of Moscow, is called the Birmingham of Russia on account of its iron manufactures. **Kharkov** is noted for its fair.

**Kiev**, on the Dnieper, was the ancient capital of Russia.

It is regarded as a holy city, as here Christianity was first preached in Russia.

**Kishineff**, or *Kishenau*, is a large trading city near the southwest frontier.

**Odes'sa**, on the Black Sea, is the greatest commercial city in the south.

It is situated between the mouths of the Dniester and Dnieper. Wheat is the principal export. **Kherson** is a trading city to the eastward, near the mouth of the Dnieper. **Taganrog** is a grain port, near the mouth of the Don.

<sup>1</sup> Rising against Government: *in*, in; *surrectum*, to rise. <sup>2</sup> Unquiet; *tur'ba*, a crowd.

**Sebas'topol**, in the Crimea, taken by the French and English in 1855, was an immense fortress, and the principal station of the Russian Black Sea fleet. **Nikolaiev**, north-east of Odessa, on the Bug (boog), is now the Russian naval station in the Black Sea. **Astrakhan**, near the mouth of the Volga, is noted for its sturgeon fisheries.

**Vladikavkas** is a strong fortress north of the Caucasus, connected by rail with the Sea of Azov.

**LARGEST Towns**.—St. Petersburg, population, 1 million; Moscow, 800,000; Warsaw, 490,000; Odessa, 314,000; Riga, 196,000; Kharkov, 188,000; Kazan, 133,000; Saratov, 123,000; Kishenau, 120,000.

**THE RUSSIAN EMPIRE**.—The Russian Empire includes about one-third of Asia, as well as more than the half of Europe. The entire area is about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  millions of square miles, with a population of about 120 millions. It is the second empire in the world in extent, and the third in population.

### THE GERMAN EMPIRE.

The **GERMAN EMPIRE** is composed of 26 States in the centre of Europe. It is bounded on the north by the North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic; on the east by Russia; on the south by Austria and Switzerland; and on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland.

The principal States are **PRUSSIA** in the north; **BAVARIA**, **WÜRTEMBERG**, **SAXONY**, and **BADEN** in the south. Some of the small States are not larger than Indian taluks. The total area is about 208,000 square miles—rather larger than that of the Lower Provinces of Bengal.

The German Empire is a little larger than France in size, and much larger in population.

**SURFACE**.—The north and east belong to the great plain; the centre and south consist of a table-land, interspersed with ranges of mountains.

The **Harz Mountains** are south of Hanover; the **Riesen Gebirge**<sup>1</sup> (ree-zen ga-beer-gay), **Erz Gebirge** (erts ga-beer-gay), and branches of the **Alps** form the southern frontier. The **Black Forest Mountains**, on the east, and the **Vosges** (vözh), on the west, lie between the upper valley of the Rhine.

<sup>1</sup> Giant Mountains. *Gebirge* means mountains.

**RIVERS.**—The **Rhine**, the **Weser**, and the **Elbe**, flow northward into the German Ocean; the **O'der** enters the Baltic. The **Dan'ube** drains the south, and flows eastwards.

The general slope is towards the north. The middle of the Rhine district is famed for its romantic scenery, consisting of fertile plains, vineyards, and forests, mingled with ruined castles on picturesque rocks. The Rhine is considered the national river of the Germans.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is cold in winter, and warm in summer, especially in the southern valleys; but healthy.

**MINERALS.**—Germany produces iron, zinc, lead, silver, copper, coal, and salt.

The **Erz Gebirge** (Ore Mountains) furnish more silver than any other part of Europe. The **Harz Mountains** rank next in mineral wealth.

The mineral springs are the most noted in Europe, and frequented by many visitors.

**SOIL AND PRODUCTION.**—Sandy plains and marshes are found in the north, but the country is in general fertile. Rye is the grain chiefly cultivated; oats, wheat, and barley, are likewise raised. Sugar is made from beetroot. The vine is grown extensively in the southern districts and along the Rhine. There are large forests on many of the mountain ranges.

56

**PEOPLE.**—The total population is about ~~44~~ millions. The great bulk of the people are Teutonic. Slavonians are numerous in the eastern provinces.

There is a considerable number of Jews in different parts.

**COMMERCE.**—The chief imports are grain, wool, cotton, live stock, silk, coffee, and hides; the chief exports are woollen, silk, and cotton goods, sugar, iron, live stock, and grain.

**NATIONAL CHARACTER.**—The Germans are honest, industrious, persevering, and celebrated for learning and skill in music. During recent wars, they distinguished themselves as soldiers. Printing and watch-making were invented in Germany.

All children are required to be educated. There are 21 universities in the German States.

**RELIGION.**—Nearly two-thirds are Protestants; the remainder are chiefly Roman Catholics.

GOVERNMENT.—A great part of Germany was conquered by the Romans. For many centuries, Germany has been divided into a number of independent States. In A.D. 800 an Emperor was elected by the princes, and successors were appointed till 1806, when the old Germanic Empire was overthrown by Napoleon. From 1815 till 1866 the States were united under the title of the *Germanic Confederation*.<sup>1</sup> In 1866 Prussia excluded Austria from the Confederation, and in 1871 the King of Prussia was elected hereditary Emperor of the German States. Laws are enacted by a general parliament, called the *Reichstag*,<sup>2</sup> but each State manages its own affairs.

All males are bound to serve three years in the army. To facilitate trade, there is a general Customs' League, *Zollverein*,<sup>3</sup> so that goods do not pay duties when passing through each State.

### PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA, about the size of the Madras Presidency, is larger than all the other German States taken together. It is bounded on the north by the North Sea, Denmark, and the Baltic; on the east by Russia; on the south by Austria and the German States; on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland.

The area is 134,000 square miles.

SURFACE.—The Rhenish Provinces are hilly, and a part of the south-western frontier is mountainous; but in general the surface is low and flat. In the north-eastern districts there are many sandy heaths, marshes, and shallow lakes.

The island of Rügen, in the Baltic, belongs to Prussia.

RIVERS.—The *Niemen*, *Vistula*, and *Oder*, flow into the Baltic; the *Elbe*, *Weser*, and *Rhine*, enter the North Sea.

The eastern rivers form large lakes at their mouths, called *haffs* or bays.

CLIMATE.—The winters in the north-east are severe; but the climate, on the whole, is temperate and pleasant.

PRODUCTIONS.—The most noted mineral production is amber, a kind of fossil resin, obtained on the shores of the Baltic. Iron, copper, and coal, are found in considerable quantities.

The chief crops are rye, oats, wheat, potatoes, beetroot, and tobacco; flax is grown in the north-east, and the vine in the Rhenish Provinces. About one-fifth of the country is covered with wood.

<sup>1</sup> A number of States joined together: *con*, together; *fædus*, a league or union.

<sup>2</sup> Imperial Diet. <sup>3</sup> Zoll, duty or tax; *verein*, union.

PEOPLE.—The population, chiefly German, amounts to about 30 millions. Most of the people are engaged in agriculture. The chief manufactures are linen and iron.

Poles are numerous in the east.

GOVERNMENT.—The Government is, to some extent, a constitutional<sup>1</sup> monarchy.

A representative government<sup>2</sup> was granted during the revolution<sup>3</sup> in 1848, but there has been a partial return to absolutism.

Prussia is celebrated for its education. All parents are obliged to send their children to school, unless it be shown that they are properly instructed otherwise.

There are ten universities, of which Berlin, Breslau, Göttingen, Halle, and Bonn are the chief.

RELIGION.—The majority of the people are Protestants; Roman Catholics are numerous in the east and west. There are some Jews.

PROVINCES.—In the centre: BRANDENBURG, SAXONY, and POMERANIA; in the east: PRUSSIA, POSEN, and SILESIA; in the west: SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN, LAUENBURG, HANOVER, WESTPHALIA, HESSE-NASSAU, HOHENZOLLERN, and RHENISH PRUSSIA.

Prussia is said to have derived its name from a barbarous heathen tribe, who occupied the country between the Vistula and the Niemen. They were conquered by the Teutonic knights, and Prussia was afterwards made a duchy. In 1618, the Elector of Brandenburg became heir to the Duchy, and in 1701, the reigning Duke, placing the crown upon his own head, proclaimed himself King of Prussia. Frederick the Great conquered Silesia and part of Poland. In 1866 Hanover, Hesse-Cassel, &c., were annexed, and in 1871 Alsace and part of Lorraine were taken from France.

The King of Prussia belongs to the Hohenzollern family, and traces his origin to one of the generals of Charlemagne.

#### *Towns in the Centre.*

BERLIN', the capital, situated on the Spree, a tributary of the Elbe, is the first city in Germany, and has a celebrated university. It is much larger than Calcutta.

Berlin is nearly in the same latitude as Amsterdam, Warsaw, and Irkutsk. The population is about 16 lakhs.

Potsdam, west of Berlin, has several palaces, and is the summer residence of the Emperor.

<sup>1</sup> According to a system of rules. <sup>2</sup> One conducted by persons chosen by the people. <sup>3</sup> A great change in a government.

**Frankfurt-on-Oder**, south-east of Berlin, is noted for its fairs.

**Mag'deburg**, on the Elbe, with a strong fortress, is a well-built manufacturing town. **Wittenberg**, on the Elbe, is remarkable as the place where the Reformation under Luther began in 1571. **Halle**<sup>1</sup> (hal'-lay), in the south of Saxony, has a celebrated university.

**Jena** (ya'-na), south-west of Halle, has a university. Here Napoleon defeated the Prussians in 1806.

### *Towns in the East.*

**Bres'lau**, in Silesia, on the Oder, is the second city in the kingdom, and the chief seat of the linen manufactures.

It has the largest woollen fair in Europe.

**Po'sen**, on a tributary of the Oder, is a place of great trade.

**Stettin'**, near the mouth of the Oder, is the second sea-port.

**Dan'zig** (*Danes' Town*), at the mouth of the Vistula, is the largest sea-port. **Kön'igsberg** (*King's Town*), north-east of Danzig, was the former capital. **Mem'el**, a sea-port near the north-eastern frontier, has large exports of grain and timber.

**Tilsit**, on the Niemen, is famous for the treaty between Napoleon and Alexander I. of Russia in 1807.

### *Towns in the West.*

**Kiel** (keel), on the Baltic, and **Wilhelmshaven**, on the North Sea, are naval stations. The small island of **Heligoland**, in the North Sea, is strongly fortified.

**Al'tona**, on the Elbe, near Hamburg, and **Em'den**, in Hanover, at the mouth of the Ems, are sea-ports.

**Han'over**, formerly the capital of Hanover, has considerable trade. **Göt'tingen**, south of Hanover, is famous for its university.

Hanover was an electorate<sup>2</sup> till 1814, when it was made a kingdom. The present royal family of Britain came from Hanover in 1714, and the two countries were under the same government till the accession of Queen Victoria in 1837. The crowns were then separated, as the Hanoverian laws exclude females from the throne. It was annexed by Prussia in 1866.

1 Salt; so-called from the salt springs in the neighbourhood. 2 A state under a prince called an elector. Electors were so called because they chose the Emperor of Germany.

Mün'ster is the chief town in Westphalia. Cas'sel, formerly the capital of Hesse-Cassel, is a manufacturing city.

Düs'seldorf, on the Rhine, Bar'men, and Elberfeld, eastward, are manufacturing cities in Rhenish Prussia. Essen, in the same Province, is noted for the vast iron and steel works of Krupp.

Colo'gne (ko-lōn') is the greatest commercial city on the Rhine.

The name is derived from the Latin *colonia*, a *colony*. It is a very ancient city, and has a famous cathedral, commenced in 1284, and only lately completed. It is noted for its *eau-de-Cologne* (o-de-ko-lon') or Cologne water.

Bonn, on the Rhine, near Cologne, has a celebrated university.

Aix-la-Chapelle (aiks-la-sha-pel'), or Aachen (ah'-ken), near the western frontier, was the favourite residence of Charlemagne (shar-le-mañ'), and is noted for its hot springs.

Coblenz,<sup>1</sup> at the junction of the Rhine and Moselle, is a fine city, with considerable trade.

The celebrated fortress<sup>2</sup> of Ehrenbreitstein<sup>3</sup> is opposite Coblenz.

Treves (trevz), on the Moselle, is the most ancient city in Germany. Frank'furt-on-Main, formerly a free city, was annexed to Prussia in 1866. It is famous for its banking.

Wiesbaden, noted for its baths, is west of Frankfurt.

COLONIES.—Germany lately annexed part of the West Coast of Africa, north of the Cape Colony, part of the East Coast of Africa, the north-east coast of New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, and some other islands in the Pacific.

#### KINGDOM OF BAVARIA.

BAVARIA, next to Prussia, is the most important state in Germany. It consists of two territories, the larger situated to the west of Austria, the smaller, called RHENISH BAVARIA, or the PALATINATE,<sup>4</sup> west of the Rhine.

The area is about 30,000 square miles, or rather larger than that of Mysore. The population is about 5½ millions, about two-thirds of whom are Roman Catholics.

The surface consists chiefly of an elevated plateau, traversed by several ranges of hills.

1 *Confluentes*, flowing together. 2 Fort. 3 The name means the Broadstone of Honour. 4 A province under a palatine, a count with royal authority.

**TOWNS.**—**Munich** (mu'-nik), the capital, on the Isar (ee'-zar), is a well-built city, with fine collections of paintings and sculpture. **Augsburg**, on the Lech, founded by the Romans, is a commercial city. **Ratisbon**, on the Danube, is strongly fortified. **Nürnberg**, towards the centre, is the place where watches were invented, and is noted for its toys. **Spire**s is situated on the Rhine.

At Ratisbon steam navigation on the Danube commences. At Augsburg the Protestants presented their Confession of Faith<sup>1</sup> to the Emperor Charles V., in 1530; at Spire the name Protestants was acquired by the Reformers in 1529.

#### KINGDOM OF WÜRTTEMBERG.

WÜRTTEMBERG lies to the west of Bavaria, and to the east of Baden.

The area is 7,500 square miles, or about the size of Indore. The population is about 2 millions.

This state was made a kingdom by Napoleon in 1805. It is fertile and flourishing. The inhabitants are Protestants. **Stuttgart** (stoot'-gart), the capital, situated near the Neckar, has a large book trade. **Ulm** (oolm) is a fortified city on the Danube.

The navigation of the Danube commences at Ulm. **Tubingen**, south of Stuttgart, has a celebrated university.

#### KINGDOM OF SAXONY.

SAXONY, the smallest kingdom in Europe, lies between Austria, Prussia, and Bavaria.

The area is nearly 6,000 square miles, or about one-fourth of the size of Ceylon. It was raised into a kingdom in 1806; but, for siding with Napoleon, its limits were much reduced in 1815. The population amounts to about 3½ millions. Saxony is the most densely peopled country in Europe, containing 605 inhabitants to the square mile.

The country is fertile and well cultivated. The sheep are noted for their fine wool. The manufactures are considerable.

The people are Protestants, and highly educated.

**TOWNS.**—**Dres'den**, the capital, on the Elbe, has a celebrated collection of paintings.

The famous Dresden china is made at **Meissen**, 15 miles distant.

<sup>1</sup> A statement of what is believed.

**Leipzig** (lipy'-sik), in the north-west, is famous for its fairs and book trade, and its university is the second in Germany. **Freiburg** (fri'-burg), in the south-west, is the centre of the Saxon mines.

Bonaparte was defeated at Leipzig in 1813.

#### GRAND DUCHY OF BADEN.

This state lies between Würtemberg and the Rhine.

It is fertile and well cultivated. Wine is the chief product.

**Carlsruhe**<sup>1</sup> (karls'-roo), the capital, is a fine city near the Rhine. **Mannheim**, at the junction of the Neckar and Rhine, is the chief commercial city. **Heidelberg**, on the Neckar, is famous for its ancient university. **Baden**,<sup>2</sup> near the Rhine, is much visited for its baths. **Con'stance** is situated on the Lake of Constance.

A celebrated Roman Catholic Council was held at Constance 1414-1418.

#### MINOR STATES.

The most important of the minor states are, the Grand Duchy of **MECKLENBURG-SCHWERIN** (shver-een'), on the Baltic, to the west of Prussia; the Grand Duchy of **HESSE** (hess)-DARMSTADT, north of Baden; the Grand Duchy of **OLDENBURG**, to the west of the Weser; the Duchy of **BRUNSWICK**, to the south of Hanover; and the Grand Duchy of **SAXE-WEIMAR**.

The Royal family of Britain is descended from a younger branch of the House of Brunswick. The ancient House of Oldenburg has given sovereigns to Denmark, Scandinavia, and Russia.

**Mayence** (may-ans'), in Hesse, on the Rhine, at its junction with the Main, has a very strong fortress.

**Weimar** is a handsome city, noted for its literary institutions. The late Prince Consort of England belonged to the family of **Saxe-Coburg-Gotha** (go'-ta).

The FREE CITIES of Germany are **Ham'burg**, on the Elbe; **Bre'men**, on the Weser; and **Lu'beck**; near the Baltic.

In the thirteenth century certain Free Cities formed the **Hanseatic League** for protection and other purposes. At one time there were fifty towns in the League.

<sup>1</sup> Charles's Rest. <sup>2</sup> Baths.

Hamburg is the greatest commercial city on the continent.

ALSACE-LORRAINE (al-sass'-lor-rane') lies west of the Rhine.

It was taken from France in 1870, and is now under the German Emperor. *Elsass-Lothringen* is the German name.

Metz, on the Moselle, has a strong fortress. Strasburg, on the Rhine, has extensive trade and a famous cathedral.

LARGEST CITIES.—Berlin, population, 1,579,000; Hamburg, 410,000; Munich, 349,000; Breslau, 335,000; Dresden, 276,000; Leipzig, 295,000; Frankfurt-on-Main, 180,000; Cologne, 282,000; Königsberg, 162,000; Hanover, 164,000; Stuttgart, 140,000.

#### AUSTRIA-HUNGARY.

AUSTRIA, or the AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN MONARCHY, is bounded on the north by German States and Russia; on the east by Russia; on the south by Turkey, the Adriatic Sea, and Italy; and on the west by Italy, Switzerland, and Bavaria. It is larger than the Lower Provinces of Bengal.

Austria means *eastern kingdom*. It was so called as being the eastern part of the empire of Charlemagne. The area is about 240,000 square miles. Austria ranks third in size and population among the great States of Europe. It is nearly all inland, having only a small strip of sea coast along the Adriatic, with deep fiords and numerous islands.

SURFACE.—The eastern parts consist of an extensive plain, bounded or traversed by the Carpathian Mountains. The south-western provinces are very mountainous, containing several ranges of the Alps. The Plateau of Bohemia, in the north-west, is enclosed by mountains.

The Carpathian Mountains form nearly a semi-circle. They compose part of the south-eastern frontier, and separate Austrian Poland from Hungary. With the Sudet'ic Range, they form the northern boundary of the basin of the Danube. The Rhætian and Noric Alps are the highest of the western mountains. Ortler Spitz, on the western frontier, the highest point, is 12,789 feet above the sea.

RIVERS.—The Danube flows through the centre, and, with its tributaries, drains the greater part of the country.

The northern provinces contain the upper courses of the **Dniester, Vistula, and Elbe.**

The Danube leaves Hungary by a narrow gorge, called the *Iron Gate*. Carniola, in the west, is noted for its deep caverns, with subterranean lakes and rivers.

**LAKE.**—**Ba'laton, or Plat'ten-See** (Lake), is towards the centre.

**CLIMATE.**—The summer is warmer, and the winter is colder than in France.

**MINERALS.**—Austria produces more gold and silver than any other European country except Russia. Quicksilver is obtained in considerable quantities. Copper, iron, lead, and coal are found in several districts. The salt mines, near Cracow, are the largest in the world.

The opal, a kind of precious stone, is found in Hungary.

**VEGETABLES.**—The soil is generally fertile. The ordinary grains are raised in all parts. Hemp is grown in the north; the vine and maize are cultivated in the centre; the olive and rice in the south.

Austria ranks next to France as a wine-growing country. Rye bread and potatoes are the chief food of the poor. About one-fourth of the country is forest land.

**ANIMALS.**—The usual domestic animals are found in Austria. The bear and wolf are the principal beasts of prey. Large numbers of cattle are reared.

**PEOPLE.**—The population, amounting to 41 millions, consists of several distinct nations, including Slavonians, Germans, Hungarians, Roumanians, and others.

The Slavonians, in the north and south, constitute about half the population. About one-fourth are Germans, found chiefly in the west. They are the best educated and the most influential of the population. The Magyars (mod-jors) of Hungary are of Asiatic extraction, and about 6 millions in number. Jews and a wandering race, called gipsies, supposed to have come originally from India, are numerous. At least seventeen different languages are spoken in the country.

Agriculture is the chief industry. Linen, cotton, and woollen goods, hardware, and glass, are the principal manufactures. The commerce is not very important.

About two-thirds of the people are Roman Catholics; the remainder mostly belong to the Greek Church or are Protestants.

GOVERNMENT.—The empire is a kind of double state. The German and the Hungarian Provinces have separate governments, but acknowledge the same sovereign.

In the ninth century Austria was a small territory under a Margrave; in 1156, it was enlarged, and called a duchy. In 1276 Rudolph, Count of Hapsburg, in Switzerland, was elected Emperor of Germany, and his son was appointed to the dukedom of Austria. In 1806 the ancient dignity of Emperor of Germany, which had been attached to the house of Austria for several centuries, was abolished, and Francis, the reigning monarch, was obliged to assume the title of Emperor of Austria. In 1859 and 1866 Austria was compelled to cede her Italian Provinces to Italy.

In 1867 the empire was divided into the GERMAN or Cis-LEITHAN MONARCHY, and the HUNGARIAN or TRANS-LEITHAN KINGDOM.

The Leitha is a small river south of the Danube, forming part of the boundary between Austria and Hungary. The sovereign is styled Emperor of Austria and King of Hungary.

The principal GERMAN PROVINCES are Bohe'mia, Mora'via, and Sile'sia, in the north; the Archduchy of Austria, in the middle; Tyr'ol, Styria, the Coast Land, and Dalma'tia, in the south. The POLISH PROVINCES, Gali'cia and Bukovi'na, in the north-east, also belong to the German Monarchy.

Bohemia is the most northern province of the Empire. It was once a separate kingdom. It is chiefly peopled by a Slavonic race, called the *Czechs*. It is noted for its glass manufactures. The Polish Provinces formed part of the Kingdom of Poland, which Russia, Prussia, and Austria divided among themselves.

VIENNA,<sup>1</sup> on the Danube, is the capital of Austria, and the centre of its trade. The population is about 1½ million.

It originated in a Roman camp, established to command the river. It was besieged by the Turks in 1529 and 1683. The second siege was raised by John Sobieski, King of Poland. The French took it in 1805 and 1809. It was the seat of a famous Congress in 1815, which determined the boundaries of several of the European states. Vienna is nearly in the same latitude with Munich and Urga.

Prague (raig), the capital of Bohemia, is a fine city, with a university.

It is celebrated as the birthplace of the early reformers, John Huss and Jerome. Koniggratz or Sadowa, where the Prussians defeated the Austrians, is east of Prague.

A'sterlitz, where Napoleon defeated the Austrians, is near Brunn, the capital of Moravia, noted for its woollens.

<sup>1</sup> It is so called from the *Wien*, a small river on which it partly stands.

**Gratz**, noted for its steel, on a tributary of the Drave, is the capital of Styria. **Salzburg**, near the frontier, has salt mines. **Idria**, celebrated for its mines of quicksilver, is in Carniola. **Trieste** (tre-est'), on the Adriatic, is the chief sea-port of Austria. **Po'la**, south of Trieste, is the naval station. **Inns'bruck**,<sup>1</sup> on the Inn, is the capital of Tyrol. **Trent**, on the Adige, is a city in Tyrol, celebrated for a Roman Catholic Council held there from 1543 to 1563. **Ragu'sa**, in Dalmatia, was formerly the capital of a republic. **Lem'berg**, the capital of Galicia, is a place of considerable trade. **Cra'cow**, on the Vistula, was the former capital of Poland, and the burial-place of its kings.

Galicia was taken from Poland in 1772. Cracow, constituted a republic in 1815, was seized by Austria in 1846.

THE HUNGARIAN PROVINCES include Hungary Proper; Transylvania,<sup>2</sup> south-east of Hungary; Slavonia and Croatia, in the south; with the Military Frontier along the borders of Turkey.

The Magyars, belonging to the same race as the Finns, subdued Hungary in the ninth century, and established in it a kingdom on the feudal system.<sup>3</sup> The conquerors devoted themselves to war; agricultural labour was performed by Wallachian and Slavonic serfs,<sup>4</sup> attached to the lands. In 1526 their king was killed in battle, and the crown was offered to the House of Austria. An attempt was made in 1848 to throw off the Austrian yoke, but it was crushed by the assistance of Russia. The Hungarians are hospitable, proud and fond of fine dresses. The inhabitants along the southern border held lands on condition of protecting the frontier against the Turks. This arrangement was made when the Turks were a formidable power. The Emperor of Austria was crowned King of Hungary in 1867.

Hungary is noted for its fine wheat.

**Press'burg**, the old capital, is situated on the Danube. **Bu'da**, or **Ofen**, and **Pesth** (pest), on opposite banks of the Danube, form one city, the capital of Hungary. **Szegedin**, on the Theiss (ice), is next in size to Buda-Pesth. **Tokay**, north-east on the Theiss, is celebrated for its wines.

<sup>1</sup> Bridge of the Inn. <sup>2</sup> "Country beyond the Forests." <sup>3</sup> Land granted on condition of serving as soldiers. <sup>4</sup> Slaves sold with the land on which they live.

**Schemnitz** and **Kretnitz**, in the north, are mining towns. **Orso'va** is on the Danube, near the Iron Gate. **Fiume**, on the Adriatic, is the port of Hungary. **Agram** is the capital of Croatia.

The TURKISH PROVINCES of **BOSNIA** and **HERZEGOVINA** (hertsch-go-vee-na) were occupied by Austria in 1878.

LARGEST CITIES.—Vienna, population, 1,364,000; Buda - Pesth, 506,000; Prague, 184,000; Trieste, 158,000; Lemberg, 128,000; Gratz, 113,000; Brunn, 95,000.

### HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

**HOLLAND** is bounded on the north and west by the North Sea; on the east by Prussia; and on the south by Belgium.

*Holland* means hollow land. It receives its name from its principal province. Since 1815 it has been called the **NETHERLANDS**, or **LOW COUNTRIES**.

The area is 12,700 square miles—about half the size of Oudh.

SURFACE.—Holland is the flattest country in Europe. Large tracts are below the level of the sea, which is protected from overflowing by artificial *dykes*, or embankments. The country is traversed by the lower courses of the **Rhine**, the **Maas**, and the **Scheldt**, and is covered with a network of canals. The **Zuyder Zee**<sup>1</sup> runs inland from the north.

Holland includes the delta of the Rhine, the largest in Europe. The **Waal** is the principal mouth of the Rhine. The inland bays have been formed by the bursting in of the sea. The *Zuyder Zee* (the *South Sea*, in contradistinction to the *North Sea*, with which it is connected) was formed by successive inundations in the thirteenth century. It is proposed to drain it. In 1568 a large lake was formed, by which 72 villages were submerged and 100,000 inhabitants drowned. There are numerous windmills to drain the country by pumping up water.

ISLANDS.—There are many islands, the principal of which are **Walcheren** (val'-cher-en) and **Bev'elander**, in the south; and **Texel** towards the north.

CLIMATE, &c.—The climate is damp and cold. The rivers and canals are frozen in winter. Travelling is then often performed on the ice by means of sledges and skates. By draining the bogs and marshes, rich meadows have been formed, called *polders*, on which great numbers of excellent cattle are reared. Storks are favourite birds, devouring the numerous frogs which breed in the marshes. The fisheries are valuable.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced zoï-der-zay.

**COMMERCE.**—The commerce of Holland was at one time the most extensive in Europe, and its foreign trade is still very important. The principal *exports* are butter, drugs, iron, sugar and cattle. The chief *imports* are cotton and woollen goods from England, with drugs, coffee, and spices from the East.

The country is well supplied with railways and water communication.

**PEOPLE.**—The population amounts to  $4\frac{1}{2}$  millions. The Dutch are born traders and sailors, remarkable for their cleanliness, frugality,<sup>1</sup> and industry. They are likewise grave, honest in their dealings, and distinguished for the courage with which they have maintained their freedom. About two-thirds are Protestants; the remainder are Roman Catholics.

Holland formed, with Belgium, part of the empire of Philip II. of Spain. When he fiercely persecuted the Protestants, those in Holland revolted, and after 40 years' war their independence was admitted in A.D. 1609.

Holland is divided into eleven Dutch provinces:—On the west coast, ZE'LAND, SOUTH HOLLAND, and NORTH HOLLAND; in the north, FRIES'LAND and GRÖNINGEN; in the east, DREN'THE, OVERY'SSEL, GELDERLAND, NORTH BRABANT', and LIMBURG; and, in the middle, U'TRECHT. The GRAND DUCHY OF LUX'EMBURG, on the south-east, has a separate government, but is under the King of Holland.

**TOWNS.**—AMSTERDAM,<sup>2</sup> the capital, about the size of Hyderabad, was once the most commercial city in Europe, and still possesses extensive trade. It is noted for diamond-cutting.

It stands at the mouth of the river Amstel, which flows into the Zuyder Zee. It is built on piles driven into the ground, and many of the streets contain canals in the centre. The Great Canal connects it with the North Sea.

Haar'lem, in the west, is noted for its flower gardens.

LEYDEN (ly'-den), on the Rhine, is celebrated for its defence against the Spaniards.

A famous university was founded in memory of it in 1575.

U'trecht, farther up the Rhine, is noted for the treaty concluded at it in 1713.

Utrecht has a university, as also has Gröningen, in the north. At Zutphen, Sir Philip Sydney received his death wound.

<sup>1</sup> A sparing use of anything. <sup>2</sup> *Dam*, means embankment or *bund*.

The Hague (haig), near the coast, is a handsome town, the residence of the court. Rotterdam, on the Maas, is the second commercial city in the kingdom.

Delft, near the Hague, was long famous for its earthenware; Schiedam (skee-dam), near Rotterdam, is noted for its gin, or hollands, a kind of spirit.

LARGEST TOWNS.—Amsterdam, population, 427,000; Rotterdam, 217,000; the Hague, 165,000; Utrecht, 86,000.

The principal Dutch COLONIES are, the Island of Java, the Moluc'cas, parts of Suma'tra, Bor'neo, Cel'ebes, and New Guinea; Dutch Guiana, or Surinam, in South America, &c.

Their area is about 766,000 square miles, with 30 millions of inhabitants.

#### BELGIUM.

BELGIUM is bounded on the north by Holland; on the east by Rhenish Prussia; on the south by France; and on the west by the North Sea.

The form is triangular; the area is about 11,400 square miles.

NATURAL FEATURES.—The surface is flat, except in the south, where there are some hills of moderate height. The encroachments of the sea on the coast are prevented by *dunes* or sand-hills. The principal rivers are the Maas in the east, and the Scheldt (skelt) in the west. Canals are numerous.

CLIMATE.—The climate resembles that of England, but the summer is hotter and the winter colder.

PRODUCTIONS.—Belgium is richer in coal than any other country in Europe except Britain. Iron is abundant. The south and east contain tracts of marshy land and extensive forests; but a great part of the country is highly cultivated. Grain, tobacco, and flax, are raised in large quantities.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 6 millions. The *Walloons* (foreigners), in the south-east, are of Celtic origin; the rest of the population, called *Flemings*, are of German descent.

Next to Saxony, Belgium is the most densely-peopled country in Europe. There are 540 inhabitants to the square mile. French and Flemish are spoken.

The country took its name from a tribe called the *Belgæ*. It was conquered by the Romans at an early period, and has since passed through many changes. It was joined to Holland in 1814, but was formed into a separate kingdom in 1830.

The Flemings resemble the Dutch in disposition and manners; the Walloons are like the French.

The linen, cotton, and woollen and iron manufactures are very valuable. Belgium is noted for its lace. Trade is greatly facilitated by good roads and numerous railways.



ANTWERP CATHEDRAL.

**COMMERCE.**—The chief imports are grain, flax, wool, and hides; the chief exports are yarns, coal, and machinery. The people are Roman Catholics.

Belgium is divided into nine Provinces:—

On the basin of the Scheldt: WEST FLANDERS, EAST FLANDERS, SOUTH BRABANT, ANTWERP. On the basin of the Maas: part of LUXEMBURG, LIEGE, NAMUR. On both basins: HAINAUT (hay-no') and part of LIMBURG.

**TOWNS.**—**Brussels**, the capital, on the Senne, a tributary of the Scheldt, is a well-built city, larger than Madras, noted for its lace and carpets.

The famous battle-field of *Waterloo* is nine miles from Brussels. *Fontenoy* and *Ramillies* were also the scenes of great battles.

**Louvain**, east of Brussels, has a Roman Catholic university.

**Antwerp**, on the Scheldt, with a strong fortress, is the chief commercial city in Belgium.

In the sixteenth century, Antwerp was the richest city in Europe. The cathedral has a very lofty spire, and contains some exquisite paintings.

**Mechlin** (mek'-lin), or **Malines** (ma-leen'), between Antwerp and Brussels, is noted for its lace.

**Ghent**, on the Scheldt, is the chief seat of the cotton manufactures, and has the principal university in the kingdom.

**Bru'ges**,<sup>1</sup> in the west, was a great commercial city in the thirteenth century, and is still of some importance. **Liege** (le-aizh'), on the Maas, or Meuse, is noted for its iron manufactures.

**Spa**, once the most celebrated mineral water of Europe, is in the neighbourhood of Liege.

**Ostend**, on the coast of the North Sea, is the second sea-port.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Brussels, population, 477,000; Antwerp, 233,000; Liege, 153,000; Ghent, 150,000.

## FRANCE.

FRANCE is bounded on the north by the English Channel and Belgium; on the east by Germany, Switzerland, and Italy; on the south by the Mediterranean and Spain; and on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. It is about the same size as the Lower Provinces of Bengal.

The area is about 204,000 square miles.

**CAPES.**—**Finisterre** (Land's End) is the most westerly point of France. **La Hogue** (la hog) is in the north-west.

↓ Bridges. So called from its many bridges.

**SURFACE.**—The length and breadth are nearly equal. The surface in the north and east consists of a vast plain, with a few undulations. A central table-land is traversed by the **Cevennes** (ce-ven') and **Mountains of Auvergne** (o-ver'n'). The **Ju'ra Mountains** and the **Alps**, including *Mont Blanc*, form part of the south-eastern frontier. The **Pyrenees** separate France from Spain.

France has six sides, three of which are bounded by sea and three by land. The **Landes** (langd) is a sandy waste on the south-western coast. The name means level plain. The plateau of Auvergne is about 3,000 feet above the sea. The mountains of Auvergne are of volcanic origin, and about 6,000 feet in height.

**ISLANDS.**—**Corsica**, in the Mediterranean, belongs to France, but it rather forms part of Italy. **Ushant** (oosh-ang) is a small island off the north-western extremity.

**RIVERS.**—There are four principal river basins. The **Seine** flows into the English Channel; the **Loire** (lwar), the largest river in France, and the **Garonne** (ga-ron') flow into the Bay of Biscay; the **Rhone** enters the Mediterranean.

The **Charente** (sha-rant) joins the Bay of Biscay north of the Garonne. France contains the upper courses of the **Scheldt**, **Meuse**, and **Moselle**. The Rhone is a rapid river, subject to destructive inundations.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is temperate and healthy. The southern districts are warmer than the northern.

**MINERALS.**—Building-stone, salt, iron, and coal, are the chief mineral productions.

The supply of coal is not great. Wood is the principal fuel.

**VEGETATION.**—The soil is generally fertile. Wheat and beet-root, from which sugar is made, are largely grown in the north; the centre is noted for its vines; the olive is cultivated in the south for oil.

Rye, maize, beans and tobacco, are likewise raised in considerable quantities. The orange and mulberry are numerous in the south. Forests cover about one-eighth of the country.

**ANIMALS.**—The usual domestic animals are found in France. Oxen are used for farm work, instead of horses as in England. Wolves and wild boars are met with in forests; bears, in the Pyrenees. Fowls and the silk-worm are reared largely.

PEOPLE.—The population amounts to 38 millions. The French belong chiefly to the Celtic family. Some near the Rhine are of German descent; others, in the south-west, are of Spanish origin.

The country was early peopled by the Celts, or Gauls. It was conquered by the Romans about 50 B.C., and afterwards, about 450 A.D., by the Franks, a German nation. Clovis is considered the founder of the French monarchy, 481 A.D. There have been several lines of kings.

The French language is derived from the Latin, mixed with German. It is well known in Europe.

Agriculture is the chief occupation of the people.

As the property of a father is equally shared by his children at his death, land is divided into a large number of small farms.

France ranks next to England as a manufacturing country. It is the greatest wine-producing country in the world. Silks and woollens are next in importance. The French excel in works of ornament.

Champagne ('sham-pain'), Burgundy, and Bordeaux ('bor-do'), are noted for their wines. The wine called claret comes chiefly from Bordeaux.

Brandy is obtained from wine by distillation. Cognac ('kon-yak'), on the Charente, is noted for its brandy.

COMMERCE.—The chief exports are silks, woollens, wine, leather, linen, and brandy; the chief imports are grain, wool, wine, raw silk, cotton, timber, hides, oil-seeds, and coal.

The principal rivers are connected by canals, so that there is water communication between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean. Railways branch out from Paris in all directions. The French and Italian railways are united by a long tunnel through the Alps at Mont Cenis (se-nē).

The Government, which has passed through many changes, is at present Republican.

The chief ruler is called the *President of the Republic*. Laws are enacted by the *National Assembly*, composed of the Chamber of Deputies and the Senate.

All able-bodied men are obliged to serve in the army. The navy ranks next to that of England. Education was formerly very defective, but is gradually improving. The country has produced many eminent men.

The French are polite, lively, and intelligent, but changeable, and fond of military glory.

The small farmers are very thrifty. The women take an active part in all the concerns of life.

The great majority of the people are Roman Catholics.

France was formerly divided into 32 Provinces. It is now divided into 87 Departments.

*Northern Provinces*: Flan'ders, Artois (ar-twa'), Pi'cardy, Nor'mandy, and Bretagne (bre-tañ'). *Western Provinces*: Maine, Anjou', Tourain'e, Poitou', Sainton'ge, Guienne (ge-en'), Gas'cony. *Southern Provinces*: Béarn, Foix (fwa), Rousillon', Languedoc (lang-ge-dok'), Provence (prov-añce'), Dauphiné (do-fee-nay'), Sav'oy. *Eastern Provinces*: Lyonnais (le-on-ay'), Burgundy, Franche Comté (fransh kon-tay'), Lorraine, Champagne. *Central Provinces*: Isle of France, Orléanais (or-le-a-nay'), Nivernais (ne-ver-nay'), Berri, Bourbonnais (boor-bon-nay'), La Marche (marsh), Limousin', and Auvergne.

Each department is under an officer called a *Préfet*, with powers somewhat like those of an Indian collector.

**Towns.**—**Par'is**, the capital, situated on the Seine, is the largest city in the world except London, and is strongly fortified. It is celebrated for its splendid public buildings and elegant manufactures.

It is the seat of a famous university and of numerous other scientific institutions. The population is about 2½ millions. **Versailles**, near Paris, has a splendid palace.

**Manufacturing Towns.**—**Ly'ons**, on the Rhone at its junction with the Soane, is the second city in France, and the chief seat of the silk manufacture. **St. Etienne** (sang-tet-e-en'), south-west of Lyons, is noted for its iron manufactures and ribbons. **Rouen**, on the Seine, is the centre of the French cotton trade. **Lille** (leel), in the north, has manufactures of linen and cotton.

**Cambrai**, in the north, gave name to *Cambric*, a thin white kind of cloth.

**Sea-ports.**—**Marseilles** (mar-sails'), on the Mediterranean, is a very ancient city, and the greatest sea-port in France.

Marseilles, anciently called Massilia, was founded by the Greeks from Asia Minor about 600 B.C.

**Bordeaux** (bor-do'), on the Garonne, is the second port in the empire. Wine, brandy, oil, and fruits, are the

principal exports. **Nantes** (nants), on the Loire, has considerable commerce; **Havre**<sup>1</sup> (hav'-er), at the mouth of the Seine, is the third sea-port in France; **Calais**, on the Strait of Dover, was long held by the English.

**Dunkirk**', **Boulogne** (boo-lone'), and **Dieppe** (de-ep') are sea-ports on the English Channel. **La Rochelle** (ro-shell'), on the Bay of Biscay, is famous for its siege in 1627.

**Naval Stations.**—**Toulon**', on the Mediterranean; **Brest**, on the Atlantic; and **Cherbourg** (sher'-burg), on the Channel; are the principal naval stations.

**Remarkable Places.**—**Rheims** (remz), in the north-east, has a cathedral in which the kings of France were formerly crowned; **Sedan**', on the Meuse, is noted as the place where Napoleon III. surrendered with his army to the Prussians; **Amiens**, on the Somme, has a splendid cathedral; **Orleans**, on the Loire, is noted for its siege by the English, which was raised by Joan of Arc in 1428; at **Tours** (toor), on the Loire, Charles Martel (the Hammer) defeated the Saracens in 732; at **Toulouse** (too-looz), on the Garonne, Wellington defeated the French in 1814; from **Bayon'ne**, in the south-west, the bayonet got its name; **Avignon** (a-veen-yong'), on the Rhone, was for some time the residence of the popes; **Pau** (po), **Montpel'ier**, **Cannes** (kann), **Nice** (neese), and **Mento'ne**, in the south, are noted for their mild climate.

**Mon'aco**, near Nice, is a very small independent principality, infamous for its gambling establishment, called **Monte Carlo**.

**CORSICA** is an island belonging to France, in the Mediterranean, between the coast of Italy and the island of Sardinia.

The soil is stony and little cultivated. The timber trees and fruits are valuable, but cattle constitute the chief wealth of the people.

The language spoken is a dialect of the Italian.

**Ajaccio** (a-yat'-cho), the capital, on the western coast, is the birthplace of Napoleon Bonaparte.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Paris, population, 2,448,000; Lyons, 416,000; Marseilles, 404,000; Bordeaux, 252,000; Lille, 201,000; Toulouse, 150,000; St. Etienne, 133,000; Nantes, 123,000; Havre, 116,000.

**FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.**—The principal colonies of France are **ALGERIA**, in Northern Africa; **SENEGAL**', and **CONGO TERRITORY**, in Western Africa; **CAYENNE** (ki-en'), in South America; the **ISLE OF BOURBON**, in the Indian Ocean;

<sup>1</sup> Le Havre, the Port.

PONDICHERRY, &c., in India; TONG-KING and French COCHIN-CHINA; NEW CALEDONIA, &c., in the Pacific Ocean; and some small islands in the West Indies.

TUNIS and ANNAM are protectorates, and a like claim is made over Madagascar. The area is estimated at 3,000,000 square miles, with a population of about 30 millions.

#### SWITZERLAND.

SWITZERLAND is an inland country, oval in shape, bounded on the north by Germany; on the east by Austria; on the south by Italy; and on the west by France.

The area is 16,000 square miles—more than half the size of Mysore



ASCENDING THE ALPS.

**SURFACE.**—Switzerland, the highest and most mountainous country in Europe, is celebrated for its scenery. It is traversed by ranges of mountains, rising from a table-land. The Jura Mountains divide Switzerland from France; the Alps separate it from Italy. Monte Rosa,<sup>1</sup> on the southern frontier, is the highest mountain in Europe, next to Mont Blanc.

<sup>1</sup> So called from its red appearance, like a rose, at sunrise and sunset.

The Jura Mountains are only about 5,000 feet in height, and are covered with fine forests. The **Bernese Alps** or Oberland (Upper-land) is a lofty range, parallel to the southern Alps, from which it is separated by the upper course of the Rhone. The **Finsteraarhorn** (the peak where the Dark Aar has its source) is the highest point.

Switzerland exhibits lofty peaks, covered with perpetual snow, with immense fields of ice, called *glaciers*, stretching down their sides, in contrast with wooded and undulating slopes, deep blue lakes, vine-clad fields, and bright patches of vegetation. Sometimes huge masses of snow, called *avalanches*, descend from the mountains, sweeping trees and rocks before them, and occasionally burying whole villages.

The Alps are crossed by several passes. The **Great St. Bernard Pass** is 8,110 feet above the sea; the **Cervin Pass**, the highest, which can only be crossed by mules and travelled on foot, is nearly 11,000 feet. The **Simplon** and **St. Gothard** (got'-hard) are other well-known passes. A tunnel beneath the St. Gothard Pass now joins the Swiss and Italian Railways. It is about ten miles in length, and is the longest tunnel in the world.

**RIVERS AND LAKES.**—The **Rhine** flows northwards through the **Lake of Constance**; the **Rhone** flows westward through the **Lake of Gene'vea, or Leman**. The **Aar** is a tributary of the Rhine; the **Inn** flows eastward into the **Danube**.

Switzerland slopes in all directions from Mount St. Gothard, containing the sources of the Rhine and the Rhone. The waters of the Lake of Geneva are very deep, and beautifully transparent. **Neuchatel**, **Lucerne**, and **Zurich** (zu'-rik), are other lakes, famed, like Geneva and Constance, for their romantic scenery.

**CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.**—The valleys are warm like France, but the temperature decreases with the elevation. Above 9,000 feet the snow never melts. The vine is cultivated in the lowest districts, and some grain is raised; but Switzerland is largely a pastoral country. The chamois (sham'-wa), a kind of deer, is often hunted.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 3 millions. The Swiss are noted for bravery, attachment to their native country, and love of freedom.

About two-thirds are of Teutonic origin, and speak the German language. About one-fourth in the west, speak French; in the south-east, some speak Italian.

Switzerland, anciently called **Helvetia**, was conquered by Cæsar. It fell under the power of Austria, but was delivered by William Tell and other patriots, 1815 A.D.

Many of the Swiss leave their country to serve as soldiers and servants, but most of them return with their savings.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Watches and jewellery are made in the west; cotton, woollen, and silk manufactures are carried on in the north.

**COMMERCE.**—The exports are silk and cotton manufactures, watches, cheese, and preserved milk; the imports are grain, raw cotton and silk, coal, tobacco, sugar, and coffee.

Nearly three-fourths of the people are Protestants; the rest are Roman Catholics. Calvin and Zwingli were two eminent Swiss reformers.

### The Government is a federal Republic.

There are two Councils. The members of the State Council are chosen by the Cantons; those of the National Council, by the people.

**DIVISIONS.**—Switzerland is divided into 22 Cantons.

**TOWNS.**—**Gene'va**, at the outlet of the lake, is the largest city and noted for its watches.

It was the residence of Calvin. It is visited by many travellers on account of the beauty of the scenery. **Lausanne** (lo-zan') is finely situated on the north of the lake.

**Basle** (bahl), or **Basel**, on the Rhine in the north, has considerable trade. **Bern**, on the Aar, is the seat of Government. **Zurich** (zu'-rik), on a lake of the same name, has cotton and silk manufactures, and a noted Technical School.<sup>1</sup> **Neuchatel**<sup>2</sup> (nush-a-tel'), in the west, is on a lake of the same name.

Bern is nearly in the same latitude as Nantes and Astrakhan. Its name means *bears*.

The largest towns are, Geneva, population, 72,000; Basle, 70,000; Bern, 46,000; Lausanne, 33,000; Zurich, 27,000.

## THE SPANISH PENINSULA.

This peninsula includes the states of Spain and Portugal. Spain is about four times larger than Portugal.

The **Ibe'rian Peninsula** was the ancient name. It is now sometimes called *The Peninsula*, as the largest in Southern Europe. It resembles Arabia in position and character. Both are elevated table lands, both are rectangular in shape, and with a coast line but little broken.

### SPAIN.

**SPAIN** is bounded on the north by the Bay of Biscay and France; on the east and south by the Mediterranean; on the west by Portugal and the Atlantic.

<sup>1</sup> A school for teaching the useful arts. <sup>2</sup> Newcastle.

The area is 198,000 square miles—about one-third larger than that of the Madras Presidency.

**SURFACE.**—The interior consists of an elevated table-land, traversed by mountain ranges, called **Sierras** (sc-er'-ras). The **Pyr'enees** divide the country from France, and under the name of the **Canta'brian Mountains**, extend westward to **Cape Finister're**. In the south and south-east, there are fertile plains.

The three most westerly points of England, France, and Spain are called **Finisterre** or **Land's End**.

The elevation of the plateau is about 2,000 feet. The **Castilian Mountains**, the **Sierra Tole'do**, **Sierra More'na** (Black Mountains), and **Sierra Neva'da**, are nearly parallel, and extend through the centre and south. The **Sierra Neva'da**, next to the Alps, contains the highest peak in Europe.

**Trafalgar** is a cape in the south-west, off which Nelson defeated the French and Spanish fleets in his last battle in 1805.

**RIVERS.**—Five mountain ranges form four river basins, sloping westward, containing the **Douro**, **Tagus**, **Guad'iana**, and **Guadalquivir**, which enter the Atlantic. The **Ebro** has a southerly course into the Mediterranean.

**Wadi** is the Arabic for a valley with a river in it, or a river.

The rivers have mostly shallow and rocky beds, and dry up in summer to such a degree as to be nearly useless for navigation.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is in general dry; the central table-land is subject to great extremes of heat and cold.

The northern coast has a large supply of rain. The climate of the provinces along the Mediterranean is delightful; but a hot wind from the south, called the *Sola'no*,<sup>1</sup> sometimes blows.

**MINERALS.**—Spain was famed in ancient times for its silver mines, but little is now obtained. Lead, copper, iron, and quicksilver are produced in considerable quantities.

The quicksilver mines of **Almaden'** (The Mine), in the **Sierra Morena**, are the richest in Europe. Spain supplies about half the lead now used in Europe. The **Rio Tinto** mines, near **Huelva**, in the south-west, yield large quantities of copper; iron ore is most abundant in the north.

**VEGETATION.**—The soil is fertile along the coast; the central plateau contains some desert tracts. Agriculture

<sup>1</sup> *Sol*, the sun.

is in a backward state; a great part of the country is under pasture. Wheat, maize, and rice, are the principal grains. The vine, olive, orange, and mulberry abound in the south and east.

The best wine comes from **Xeres** (sha'-res), near Cadiz, and is hence called sherry. Cork and chestnut trees are common. Chestnuts form



SPANIARDS DANCING.

an important article of food. Cotton and sugar-cane are grown in the south, where irrigation is carried on.

**ANIMALS.**—The Spanish horses, mules, and asses, are noted for their excellence. Merino (me-ree-'no) sheep are numerous, and yield large quantities of fine wool.

The sheep feed during summer on the table-land, and are driven in winter to the plains. The silk-worm is reared.

PEOPLE.—The population is about  $17\frac{1}{2}$  millions. The Spaniards differ much; but in general they are proud and indolent. Education is in a backward state. Bull-fights are the favourite amusement of both sexes.

The bull is first attacked by horsemen with spears, and then by footmen with arrows. The Spaniards are also fond of dancing.

Like the other inhabitants of Southern Europe, the Spaniards are rather darker in complexion than the English, and have generally black hair.

The Iberians, an Asiatic non-Aryan race, were probably the earliest inhabitants. The Basques, found along the northern coast, speaking a language peculiar to themselves, are their descendants. Celts from Gaul were the next settlers. The country was successively conquered by the Romans, Visigoths, and Moors, and at times was divided into several kingdoms. The Moors held the greater part of the Peninsula for seven centuries. Ar'-agon and Castile (Cas-teel') were united by the marriage of their sovereigns, Ferdinand and Isabella; under whom the Moors were expelled in 1491, and America was discovered in 1492.

Spain was long under the Romans, and the language, which is very sonorous, belongs to the Latin family.

Gipsies, or Gitanos, a wandering race supposed to have come from India, are numerous.

For more than a century after the discovery of America in 1492, Spain was the first state in Europe. It is now of secondary importance.

The Spaniards were spoilt by their prosperity after the discovery of America, and became lazy.

INDUSTRIES.—Manufactures and commerce are both in a depressed state, but improving. The roads are bad. Some lines of railway have been constructed.

COMMERCE.—The chief exports are wine, lead, iron and copper ores, fruit, cork, and olive oil. The chief imports are cotton, coal, sugar, timber, and machinery. The foreign trade is chiefly with England and France.

RELIGION.—The Roman Catholic religion was, until lately, the only one tolerated.

GOVERNMENT.—The Government is at present a monarchy. The national assembly is called the *Cortes* (Court).

**DIVISIONS.**—The principal former Divisions of Spain were Gali'cia, Astu'rias and Biscay, in the north; Leon' and Old Castile on the Douro; New Castile and Estremadu'ra, on the Tagus and Guadiana; Andalusia on the Guadalquivir; Grana'da, Mur'cia and Valen'cia, in the south-east; Catalo'nia, Ar'agon, and Navarre (na-var'), on the Ebro. The country is now divided into 49 Provinces.

**TOWNS.**—**MADRID**, the capital, situated in the central table-land, is a large and handsome city.

Madrid is on the **Manzana'res**, a tributary of the Tagus. It is nearly in the same latitude as Naples, Constantinople, and Bokhara. It is somewhat smaller than Madras. The *Escurial* is an immense palace, built by Philip II., about 20 miles north-west.

**Barcelo'na**, on the north-eastern coast, is the chief manufacturing and commercial city. **Valencia**, with silk manufactures, **Alicant**, and **Mal'aga**, are other sea-ports on the Mediterranean, with some trade. **Cadiz**, in the south-west on the Atlantic, is an ancient commercial city, very strongly fortified. **Seville**, on the Guadalquivir, has a fine cathedral, a large tobacco manufactory, and is noted for its oranges.

**Cor'dova**, on the Guadalquivir, the early capital of the Moors, is famous for its leather.

In the tenth century it was one of the largest, wealthiest, and most learned cities in Europe. Its magnificent cathedral was once a mosque.

**Grana'da**, in the south, the later capital of the Moors, is considered the most beautiful city in Spain.

The *Alhambra*, the once splendid palace of the Moorish kings, is in the neighbourhood. **Malaga** is considered the port of Granada.

**Tole'do**, on the Tagus, an ancient capital, was formerly celebrated for its sword manufactures. **Salaman'ca**, north-west of Madrid, has a university, once among the first in Europe. **Valladolid'**, north-east of Salamanca, also has a university. **Saragos'sa**,<sup>1</sup> on the Ebro, is famous for its defence against the French. **Corun'na**, **Santan'der**, and **Bilba'o**, are sea-ports on the Atlantic.

**Ferrol** is a large naval station near Corunna.

**Badajos** (ba-de-hos'), on the Guadiana, was taken by Wellington.

**Talave'ra**, **Albue'ra**, **Salamanca**, and **Vittoria**, are noted for victories gained by the English during the Peninsular War. Sir John Moore was buried at Corunna. **Murcia** is a manufacturing town,

<sup>1</sup> The name is corrupted from *Cesarea Augusta*.

in the south-east. **Cartage'na**, in the south-east, is the chief naval arsenal. It was founded by the Carthaginians from Africa, and is the oldest city in Spain.

Copper ore is shipped from **Huelva**, a port in the south-west.

**Gibral'tar**, in the south, is a celebrated fortress on a rock, belonging to the English.

It is so called from *jibel*, mountain, and *Tarik*, a Moorish conqueror, who built a fortress on the rock. The rock of Gibraltar and the opposite rock on the African coast, were called by the ancients the Pillars of Hercules.<sup>1</sup> Gibraltar was taken by the English in 1704.

**Major'ca**, **Minor'ca**, and **Iviza** (e-vee'-sa), are islands in the Mediterranean belonging to Spain.

Majorca means *greater*; Minorca, *less*. They were called in ancient times the *Balearic* Islands, from *ballein*, to throw, as the people were skilful slingers. They produce wine and fruits. *Palma* is the chief town.

**LARGEST TOWNS**.—Madrid, population, 472,000 ; Barcelona, 272,000 ; Valencia, 171,000 ; Seville, 143,000 ; Malaga, 134,000 ; Murcia, 98,000 ; Granada, 73,000.

**COLONIES**.—**Cu'ba** and **Porto Rico** (ree'-ko) in the West Indies; the **Cana'ry Islands** in the Atlantic; the **Phil'ip-pine** and **Ladrome Islands** in the Pacific.

The area is estimated at 405,000 square miles ; the population at 9½ millions. With the exception of Brazil, Spain held, for three centuries, nearly the whole of the American Continent, from the Gulf of Mexico southwards.

**ANDORRA** is a very small republic on the Pyrenees, under the protection of France.

### PORTUGAL.

**PORTUGAL** is bounded on the north and east by Spain ; on the south and west by the Atlantic Ocean.

It received its name from *porto*, a *port*, and a town formerly called *Cale*, at the mouth of the *Douro*. It was called *Lusitania* by the Romans. The area is about 35,000 square miles, or about one-half larger than that of Oudh.

**SURFACE**.—Continuations of the Spanish Mountains traverse the country, dividing the basins of the rivers. The principal rivers are the **Minho** in the north ; the **Douro** and **Tagus** in the centre ; and the **Guadiana** in the south.

<sup>1</sup> A celebrated Greek hero, afterwards regarded as a god.

The surface slopes gradually towards the west. The Sierra d'Estrella, a continuation of the Castilian Mountains, terminates in *Cape Roca*, or the *Rock of Lishon*. Admiral Jervis defeated the Spanish fleet in 1779, off *Cape St. Vincent*, in the south.

The large rivers of Portugal have their sources in Spain.

**CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.**—The climate is mild and healthy. The soil is fertile, but poorly cultivated. Grain and wine are the chief productions. Oranges, olives, and figs are abundant in the south.

The rainfall is greater than in Spain. Portugal is noted for its red wine, called *port*. It is sent chiefly to England.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about  $4\frac{3}{4}$  millions. Education is in a backward state. The people are all Roman Catholics.

The Portuguese are of mixed descent, and resemble the Spaniards in language and customs, though a strong mutual<sup>1</sup> dislike exists between the two nations.

In early times Portugal formed part of Spain. It became a separate kingdom in 1139 A.D. In the fifteenth century it was distinguished for maritime enterprise, its rich commerce, and vast colonies. It was subjected by Philip II. of Spain in 1580, but recovered its independence in 1640. It is now of little importance. The Government is a limited monarchy. The parliament is called the *Cortes*.

The commerce is mostly in the hands of the English. Wine, cork, and fish are the chief exports.

**DIVISIONS.**—Portugal is divided into six provinces: MINHO and TRAZ-OS-MONTES,<sup>2</sup> in the north; BEIRA,<sup>3</sup> between the Douro and Tagus; ESTREMADU'RA, round the mouth of the Tagus; ALEMTE'JO,<sup>4</sup> between the Tagus and Guadiana; and ALGAR'VE,<sup>5</sup> in the south.

**TOWNS.**—LIS'BON, the capital, about the size of Lucknow, situated on the Tagus, has considerable commerce.

In the great earthquake of 1755, about 60,000 of its inhabitants perished. Population, 246,000.

Opor'to, near the mouth of the Douro, is the<sup>6</sup> second city in the kingdom, and has an extensive wine trade.

*Oporto* means *the port*. It was first called *Cale*. Port wine derives its name from this city. Population, 106,000.

<sup>1</sup> On both sides. <sup>2</sup> Beyond the mountains. <sup>3</sup> Border. <sup>4</sup> Beyond the Tagus.

<sup>5</sup> The west.

**Setu'bal**, in the south, is a sea-port, with fisheries and manufacture of salt. **Coim'bra**, towards the centre, has the only university in the kingdom.

Coimbra is one of the most rainy places in Europe. **Sines**, in the south-west, was the birthplace of **Vasco da Gama**.

**FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.**—The **Azores**, **Madeiras**, and **Cape Verd Islands** in the Atlantic; **Ango'la**, **Congo Territory**, and **Mozambique** (*mo-zam-beek'*) in Africa; **Goa** and some other settlements in India; **Macao** (*ma-kow'*) in China.

The Azores are noted for their oranges, called *St. Michael's*, after the largest island.

The Colonies are estimated to contain 743,000 square miles, with a population of  $5\frac{1}{2}$  millions; but the control over large tracts in Africa is merely nominal. The Portuguese first explored the route to India by the Cape of Good Hope, and they held Brazil till 1825.

### ITALY.

**ITALY** is chiefly a long narrow peninsula in the south of Europe. It is bounded on the north by Switzerland and Austria; on the east by the Adriatic; on the south by the Mediterranean; and on the west by the Mediterranean and France.

The area is about 114,000 square miles, or somewhat smaller than that of the **Bombay Presidency**.

**ISLANDS.**—The two principal islands belonging to Italy are **Sicily** and **Sardinia**.

**SURFACE.**—The form resembles a boot, the small peninsula of **Cala'bria** representing the foot, and that of **Apulia** the heel, separated by the **Gulf of Taran'to**. The **Alps** curve round the northern portion. The **Apennines** traverse the whole length of the peninsula.

A great plain, very unhealthy from the prevalence of *mala'ria* (bad air), stretches along the western coast, from **Tuscany** to **Naples**. It is called the **Maremma** (land along the sea) in the north; the **Campagna** (*cam-pan'-ya*) *di Roma* (Plain of Rome) is in the middle; the **Pontine Marshes** form the southern extremity.

**VOLCANOES.**—**Etna** in **Sicily**, **Vesu'vius**, near **Naples**, and **Strom'boli**, in the **Lip'ari Islands** to the north of **Sicily**, are celebrated volcanoes. Earthquakes are frequent in the south.

Etna is nearly 11,000 feet in height, and 87 miles in circumference at the base. Vesuvius is about 4,000 feet in elevation. Its first known eruption took place in 69 A.D., when the cities of **Herculaneum** and **Pompeii** (pom-pay'-yee) were buried. Stromboli is a small but very active volcano.

In the earthquake of 1783 about 40,000 persons perished.

**RIVERS.**—The **Po** and **Adige** (ad'-e-je) water the great plain lying between the Alps and Apennines, and flow into the Adriatic. The **Arno**, **Tiber**, and **Voltur'no**, descend into the Mediterranean from the western slopes of the Apennines.

The Po, the largest river, is, in some parts, protected from inundation by embankments. Water is drawn from it by irrigation canals for rice cultivation.

**LAKES.**—**Garda**, **Co'mo**, and **Maggiore** (mad-jo'-ray), near the Alps, are drained by the **Mincio** (min'cho), **Adda**, and **Ticino** (tic-chee'-no), tributaries of the Po.

**CLIMATE.**—Italy is noted for its clear sky, but it is subject to great changes of temperature.

The southern districts are sometimes visited by the *sirocco*, a sultry wind from Africa, and the north by cold winds from the Alps.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Iron is obtained from the island of Elba; the Apennines are noted for their marble; sulphur is found in large quantities in Sicily. Wheat, maize, the olive, vine, and mulberry, are the principal vegetable productions. Cattle are reared in great numbers, and more silk is produced than in any other European country.

The northern plains contain rich pastures, from which is produced the cheese called *Parmesan*', the finest in the world. The fruits of Italy are numerous. Chestnuts form an important article of food. Italy is the chief olive-producing country in Europe, and in wine-raising it occupies a high place. Rice is grown in Lombardy, and the same province produces much of the silk. The scorpion and *taran'tula* spider are found in the warmer districts. Sponges and corals are obtained off Sicily.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 30 millions. The Italians are a very mixed people, though chiefly descended from the ancient Romans. They are acute<sup>1</sup> and distinguished for their taste.<sup>2</sup> Education is now spreading.

<sup>1</sup> Sharp, clever; *acuo*, to sharpen. <sup>2</sup> Skill in judging of beauty.

The language, derived from the Latin, is very musical.<sup>1</sup> Roman Catholicism is the national religion.

As musicians and image-sellers, the Italians wander over Europe. Numbers now emigrate, especially to South America.

Italy was celebrated in ancient times as the seat of the Roman Empire, the greatest the world ever saw. It is also noted as containing the residence of the Pope, the head of the Roman Catholic Church.

Rome was founded 753 B.C. It became the head of the Roman Empire, which, at the birth of Christ, ruled over a great part of the known world; but was overwhelmed<sup>2</sup> in 476 A.D. by the northern barbarians. During the Middle Ages, Venice, Florence, and Genoa became renowned for their commerce. In the fifteenth century, Italy was distinguished for a revival<sup>3</sup> of letters; but during the last century it was gradually sinking beneath the oppression of despotism. Of late years, Italy has greatly improved.

**COMMERCE.**—The chief exports are silk, wine, olive oil, coral, fruits, eggs, and sulphur; the chief imports are cotton and woollen goods, coal, and iron manufactures.

**POLITICAL DIVISIONS.**—Until recently, the principal states were, SARDINIA and AUSTRIAN ITALY on the north; PARMA, MODENA, TUSCANY, and the PAPAL STATES in the centre; with the kingdom of NAPLES on the south. The whole country is now formed into the KINGDOM OF ITALY.

In 1859, with the aid of France, Lombardy was wrested<sup>4</sup> from Austria and ceded<sup>5</sup> to Sardinia. The following year Parma, Modena, Tuscany, and the larger portion of the Papal States attached themselves to Sardinia. Garibaldi soon afterwards overthrew the Neapolitan Monarchy, and saluted<sup>6</sup> the King of Sardinia as “King of Italy.” In 1866, with the assistance of Prussia, Venetia was obtained from Austria, and in 1870 Rome was taken from the Pope and became the capital of Italy. The Chamber of Deputies, elected by the people, and the Senate, appointed by the king, form the Parliament.

Italy is divided into 69 districts. The principal provinces are mentioned below.

PIEDMONT, the north-western province of Italy, lies between the Alps and the Mediterranean, and is bounded on the west by France.

<sup>1</sup> Sweet in sound, like music. <sup>2</sup> Crushed beneath, overcome. <sup>3</sup> Bringing to life again, recalling from a state of neglect: *re*, again; *vivo*, to live. <sup>4</sup> Taken by force. <sup>5</sup> Given up; *cedo*, to go. <sup>6</sup> Hailed, addressed as.

Piedmont<sup>1</sup> is so called from lying at the foot of the Alps. With Savoy and Sardinia it constituted the Kingdom of Sardinia. Savoy was ceded to France in 1860 for assistance during the war with Austria.

The valleys to the east of the Alps in Piedmont are inhabited by the Waldenses, who adhered to a pure form of Christianity for many centuries, in spite of the most barbarous persecutions.

**TOWNS.**—**Turin**, the capital of Piedmont, situated on the Po, is a fine city, with manufactures of silk.

**Gen'oa**, “The Superb,”<sup>2</sup> on the coast, was long the capital of a republic, and is still the principal sea-port of Italy.

Columbus was born near Genoa. Its manufactures of silks and velvets<sup>3</sup> are important.

**SARDINIA** is a rugged island, covered with extensive forests, but containing some fertile tracts. It is still in a very backward state. The capital is **Cagliari** (kal'-ya-re), in the south.

Sardinia is the largest island in the Mediterranean, next to Sicily. It is noted for its small fish, preserved in oil, called *sardines*.

**LOMBARDY**, called the “Garden of Europe,” lies chiefly between the Alps and the Po.

It derives its name from the Lombards, or Longobards, a Germanic nation, who conquered it (A.D. 570), and founded a kingdom which lasted till it was overcome by Charlemagne in 775.

**TOWNS.**—**Mil'an**, on a tributary of the Po, has a splendid cathedral.

**Pavia**, south of Milan, was a Longobard capital. Francis I. of France was defeated and taken prisoner at Pavia in 1525. **Lodi**, on the Adda, is noted for the defeat of the Austrians by Napoleon. **Como** is at the southern extremity of a beautiful lake.

**VENETIA** lies between Lombardy and the Gulf of Venice.

**TOWNS.**—**Venice** is built on a number of islets<sup>4</sup> at the head of the Adriatic. Canals serve as streets, and boats, called *gon'dolas*, as carriages. During the Middle Ages, it was the most commercial city in Europe, and the head of a powerful republic.

It was founded in 452 A.D. The palace of the “Doge”<sup>5</sup> (dōj), the chief ruler of the republic, is a splendid building.

<sup>1</sup> *Pie*, foot; *di*, of; *monte*, mountain. <sup>2</sup> Very grand; *super*, above. <sup>3</sup> Rich soft cloths. <sup>4</sup> Small islands. <sup>5</sup> Duke; *dux*, leader.

**Pad'ua**, west of Venice, has a celebrated university. **Vero'na**, on the Adige, and **Man'tua**, on the Mincio, still farther west, have strong fortresses.

**ÆMILIA**, south of Lombardy and Venetia, includes the former Duchies of **PARMA** and **MOD'ENA**, with part of the Papal States.

The province derives its name from the *Æ*Emilian Roman road by which it was traversed. Modena contains the quarries of *Carra'ra*, famous for their statuary<sup>1</sup> marble.

**TOWNS.**—**Bologna** (bo-lon'-ya) has the oldest university in Italy. **Par'ma** and **Modena** were capitals of Duchies of the same name. **Ravenna**, near the Adriatic, was the last capital of the Roman Empire.

**SAN MARINO** (ma-ree'-no) is a small republic, south of Ravenna, which has existed nearly 1,400 years.

**TUSCANY**, south of *Æ*Emilia, was formerly a Grand Duchy. It includes the valley of the Arno, famed for its beauty and fertility. The *Maremma*, or tract along the sea, south of the Arno, is swampy and pestilential.

Tuscany, anciently called Etruria, was a flourishing state before Rome was in existence. The *Maremma* was once covered with numerous cities.

**TOWNS.**—**Florence**, called “The Beautiful,” the chief city, is situated on the Arno, and contains noble collections of painting and sculpture. **Pisa** (pee'za), the birthplace of Galile'o, is famed for its leaning tower. **Leghorn** is a large sea-port, with straw-plait manufactures; **Lucca** is noted for its olive oil.

**THE PAPAL STATES**, or those under the Pope, occupied the centre of the Peninsula. They are now divided chiefly into three provinces,—**ROME**, in the west; **UMBRIA**, in the middle; and **THE MARCHES**, in the east.

The Pope is chosen by the Cardinals<sup>2</sup> from among themselves. In 1870 his temporal power,<sup>3</sup> dating from 755 A.D., came to an end. For several years French soldiers were stationed at Rome to prevent a revolution. They were withdrawn in 1870, on account of the war with Germany.

<sup>1</sup> Used in making statues, or images. <sup>2</sup> Chief priests of the Romish Church; *cardo*, a hinge. <sup>3</sup> Power as a prince.

TOWNS.—**ROME**, on the Tiber, was the mistress of the ancient world, and is now the capital of Italy. It contains majestic<sup>1</sup> ruins, and the church of St. Peter, the finest in the world.

Rome anciently stood on seven hills, but the modern city is chiefly built on a plain, the ancient **Campus Martius** (Plain of Mars). The palace of the **Vatican**, the residence of the Pope, contains some noble paintings by **Michelangelo** and **Raphael**. Rome is unhealthy in summer from malaria. It has nearly the same latitude as Oporto, Khiva, and Peking.

**Civita Vecchia**<sup>2</sup> (che'-vo-ta-vek'-ke-a) is the sea-port of Rome.



INTERIOR OF ST. PETER'S CHURCH.

**Anco'na**, on the Adriatic, was the chief sea-port of the Papal States.

The NEAPOLITAN PROVINCES include the south of Italy. With Sicily they formed the KINGDOM OF NAPLES, or the TWO SICILIES. The southern districts were the worst governed parts of Italy. The people were sunk in ignorance, and the country was infested by robbers. A great improvement is taking place.

<sup>1</sup> Grand. <sup>2</sup> The name means *old town*.

The kingdom of Naples was founded by a Norman Prince, in the twelfth century. It was occupied successively by the French and Spanish, the latter of whom held it for two centuries. It was again made an independent kingdom under a Spanish prince in 1734.

**TOWNS.**—**Na'ples** stands on a beautiful bay of the same name, and is the largest city in Italy. The population is 463,000.

Naples, anciently *Neapolis*, is from *nea*, new, *polis*, city. It formerly swarmed with beggars, called *Lazzaro'ni*. Vesuvius lies to the eastward, at the distance of ten miles.

**Cap'ua**, to the north of Naples, is situated on the Volturno. The inhabitants of the ancient city were noted for their luxury.

**Brindisi** (brin'-de-se), on the Adriatic, is an ancient sea-port, at which Indian mail steamers now call.

**SICILY**, the largest and most fertile island in the Mediterranean, was formerly called the Granary of Italy.

Sicily is rather less than half the size of Ceylon.

**TOWNS.**—**Palermo**, the capital, on the north-west coast, is a fine city, with a university. **Messina** (mes-see'-na), on the strait of the same name, is the chief commercial city.

The Strait of Messina, between Sicily and Italy, has an eddy on the Sicilian side, called **Charybdis**, and on the Italian side a rock called **Scylla**. In trying to avoid the one, sailors, in ancient times, were sometimes lost on the other.

**Syracuse** (sir'-a-cuse), on the south-east coast, was the ancient capital of the island. **Girgenti**, on the south coast, has exports of sulphur. **Catania** is at the foot of Etna.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Naples, population, 463,000; Milan, 295,000; Rome, 273,000; Turin, 230,000; Palermo, 206,000; Genoa, 138,000; Florence, 135,000; Venice, 130,000; Bologna, 104,000; Catania, 96,000.

**MALTA**, the ancient *Mel'ita*, lies to the south of Sicily, and now belongs to Britain.

**Valet'ta**, the capital, is strongly fortified, and is the chief station of the English Mediterranean fleet.

It was granted, with the smaller adjacent island of **Gozo**, by Charles V. to the Knights of St. John in 1552, by whom it was given up to the French in 1798. The British took it in 1800. Italian, largely mixed with Arabic, is spoken.

## GREECE.

GREECE is bounded on the north by Turkey; on the west and south by the Mediterranean; and on the east by the *Ægean* Sea, or Archipelago.

The three great divisions are HELLAS, or *Continental Greece*; the MORE'A, or *Peninsular Greece*; and the ISLANDS.

Modern Greece includes only the southern portion of ancient Greece. The area is about 25,000 square miles, or about the size of Oudh. Thessaly and part of Epi'rus were ceded by Turkey in 1881.

Morea is the Greek for *mulberry leaf*. The peninsula is said to be so called from its resemblance to that leaf in shape. It was anciently termed the Peloponnesus, or island of Pe'lops. Negropont, the ancient Eubœ'a, off the east coast, the Cyclades (syk'-la-dës), in the *Ægean*, and the Ionian Islands, are the principal Islands belonging to Greece. The Cyclades (from *kyklos*, a circle) were so named from forming a sort of circle round the island of De'los. Andros and Naxos are the largest.

SURFACE.—Greece is diversified with rugged mountains and beautiful valleys. The coasts are indented with deep bays and gulfs, and studded<sup>1</sup> with small islands.

Greece has the largest proportion of coast line of any country in Europe.

The principal gulfs are those of Volo, *Ægi'na* (anciently the Saronic Gulf), and Nauplia, in the east; with Arca'dia, Patras', and Lepanto, or Corinth, in the west. The Gulfs of *Ægina* and Lepanto approach within six miles of each other. They are now joined by a canal. Negropont is separated from the mainland by a strait, called the Euri'pus, so narrow in one place, that it is crossed by a bridge. Pa'ros, one of the Cyclades, is famed for its marble.

A range of mountains, the highest peaks of which are upwards of 8,000 feet in height, stretches along the northern frontier, and renders access difficult except by the famous Pass of Thermop'ylæ,<sup>2</sup> which was only fifty yards wide in the narrowest part. Parnas'sus and Hel'icon are mountains in the north of Greece, celebrated by the ancient Greeks as the supposed haunts of their gods. Mount St. Elias, anciently Tayg̃tus, the highest point in the Morea, is 7,900 feet in elevation, and terminates in Cape Matapan. Next to Tarifa, Cape Matapan is the most southerly point of Europe. Cape Colonna is the southern point of At'tica. There is no navigable river except one in Thessaly.

CLIMATE, &c.—The sky is generally clear and cloudless. The climate is temperate and healthy. Corn, wine, oil,

<sup>1</sup> Set thickly. <sup>2</sup> Thermos, hot; pylai, gates. So called from hot springs in the neighbourhood.

honey, and silk, are produced in some quantities, but the country is mainly pastoral.

The sheep and goats, which are very numerous, are pastured on the mountains in summer, and on the plains in winter. The bees of Mount Hymettus in Attica furnish in abundance the finest honey and wax. The country contains extensive forests.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 2 millions. The Greeks are a nation of seamen and keen traders; but they are also fond of learning. The Greek Church is the established religion.

About 2,300 years ago, the Greeks excelled all other nations in the arts, civilization, and literature. Their resistance against the whole power of Persia is regarded as the noblest struggle<sup>1</sup> for independence ever displayed. In 146 B.C. the country was conquered by the Romans, and about 400 years ago it fell under the power of the Turks. In 1821, the Greeks revolted, and after a long and bloody struggle, were declared independent in 1829. Otho, son of the King of Bavaria, was raised to the crown in 1832; but he was compelled to flee in 1862. A Danish prince, George I., was elected king in 1863. There is a Chamber of Deputies elected by the people.

The modern Greeks claim to be descended from the ancient Greeks; but they are a very mixed race. Albanians are numerous. *Romaic*, or modern Greek, bears a near resemblance to ancient Greek.

The manufactures are inconsiderable, but the commerce is extensive. Small dried grapes, called currants,<sup>2</sup> and olive oil are the chief exports; grain and cotton goods, the chief imports. The Greeks are excellent sailors. Parts of the country are unsettled and infested by robbers; but there is a gradual improvement.

From the want of roads, almost all the trade is carried on by sea.

TOWNS.—ATHENS, the capital, situated to the north of the Gulf of *Ægi'na*, was the birthplace of the most renowned orators,<sup>3</sup> philosophers, painters, and sculptors, of ancient times. The modern city still contains many magnificent remains of antiquity.<sup>4</sup>

The city was so called in honour of the goddess *Athe'nē*, the Roman *Minerva*.<sup>5</sup> The *Acrop'olis*, or citadel,<sup>6</sup> contains the famous *Par'thenon*,<sup>7</sup> or temple of *Minerva*. *Soc'rates*, *Plato*, and *Aristotle*, were the greatest Greek philosophers; *Demos'thenes* was the greatest orator; *Phid'iās*, the greatest sculptor. *Milton* calls Athens “the eye of

<sup>1</sup> Great effort. <sup>2</sup> From Corinth. <sup>3</sup> Public speakers; *oris*, the mouth. <sup>4</sup> Old times; *antiquus*, old, ancient. <sup>5</sup> The goddess of wisdom. <sup>6</sup> A fort in or near a city. <sup>7</sup> *Par'thenos*, a virgin. *Minerva* was not married.

Greece," the "Mother of arts and eloquence." It is nearly in the same latitude as Smyrna and Yarkand.

**Piræus**, the port of Athens, 7 miles distant, is connected with it by rail.

**Mar'athon**, **Sal'amis**, and **Plate'a**, are celebrated for victories of the Greeks over the Persians. At the Pass of Thermopylæ, Leon'idas, with 300 Spartans, for a time resisted the whole army of Xerxes. **Larissa** is the chief town in Thessaly.

**Lepanto**, on the north of the Gulf of Lepanto, is memorable<sup>1</sup> for the destruction of the Turkish fleet in 1571 by Don John of Austria.

**Corinth**, on the Isthmus of Corinth, was once a splendid but licentious<sup>2</sup> city. **Patras'**, near the entrance to the Gulf of Corinth, is the principal sea-port. **Nauplia**, near the head of the Gulf of Nauplia, was for a few years the capital of modern Greece. **Argos**, at the head of the Gulf of Nauplia, is considered the most ancient city in Greece.

**Sparta**, in the south, was, next to Athens, the most renowned city of ancient Greece.

It was also called *Lacedæmon*. Lycurgus was its celebrated king and lawgiver.

**Navarino** (na-va-ree'-no) is situated in the south-west, on the Mediterranean.

<sup>1</sup> The Turkish fleet was completely destroyed here in 1827 by the combined fleets of England, France and Russia, an event which led to the independence of Greece.

<sup>2</sup> **Syra** (see'-ra) is a flourishing sea-port on one of the Cyclades.

The **IONIAN ISLANDS** are a group, chiefly to the west of Greece. Some of the principal are **Corfu**, **Ith'aca**, **Cepha-lo'nia**, and **Zan'te**.

The principal productions are currants, olive-oil, wine, and honey. The islands once belonged to the republic of Venice, but in the year 1815 the Congress of Vienna formed them into a separate state, under the protection of Britain. In 1864 the islands were ceded by the English Government to Greece.

**LARGEST TOWNS**.—Athens, population, 107,000; Patras, 34,000.

#### TURKEY IN EUROPE.

The **OT'TOMAN<sup>3</sup>** or **TURKISH EMPIRE** comprises three great divisions.—**Turkey in Europe**, **Turkey in Asia**, and **Turkey in Africa**.

<sup>1</sup> Worthy of being remembered. <sup>2</sup> Immoral, not chaste. <sup>3</sup> So called from Othman, the first sultan.

Including Egypt, the Turkish Empire contains about 1,600,000 square miles, with 37 millions of inhabitants.

Turkey in Europe is bounded on the north by Austria, Servia, and Roumania; on the east by the Black Sea; on the south by the Archipelago and Greece; and on the west by the Adriatic. Its limits were greatly reduced during the late war with Russia.

Turkey in Europe is about the size of the Bombay Presidency, containing about 125,000 square miles. It is the only non-Christian state in Europe.

Turkish massacres of Christians in Bulgaria excited the indignation of Europe. As Turkey refused certain conditions considered necessary for the protection of the Christians, Russia invaded Turkey in 1877. By the treaty of Berlin in 1878, Roumania, Servia, and Montenegro became independent; Bosnia and Herzegovina were occupied by Austria; Bulgaria and Eastern Roumelia were made self-governing.

**SURFACE.**—The surface is hilly. The **Hæ'mus**,<sup>1</sup> or **Balkan**,<sup>2</sup> Mountains traverse the country from east to west, and send off spurs in different directions.

The **Rhodope** (rhod'-o-pe), or **Despoto Dagh**,<sup>3</sup> Mountains, branch off from the Balkan range to the north of the Archipelago; the **Pin'dus** chain stretches southward to Greece. **Olympus**, west of the Gulf of Saloniki, was fabled as the residence of the gods. The **Dinaric Alps** form part of the north-western frontier. **Mount Athos**, in the south, has 6,000 monks.

**RIVERS.**—The **Danube**, with its tributaries, drains the country to the north of the Balkan Mountains. Numerous small rivers flow southward into the Archipelago.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is in general mild and healthy, though subject to extremes of heat and cold.

The winters are long and severe in the Balkan and some of the northern districts. The plague<sup>4</sup> is not uncommon, but it is caused by filth rather than by the climate.

**PRODUCTION.**—Iron is the only important mineral. The soil is fertile, but agriculture is in a very backward state. Wheat, maize, millet, tobacco, cotton, and hemp, are the principal objects of cultivation. Cattle and sheep are reared in great numbers, and considerable quantities of silk, honey, and wax, are produced. Carpets are woven.

<sup>1</sup> The ancient name. <sup>2</sup> High ridge. <sup>3</sup> Mount of Monks. <sup>4</sup> Plaig, a severe kind of disease.

Most grain is raised to the north of the Balkans, and most fruit is grown in the south, where roses are also cultivated for their attar.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 9 millions, of whom about one-half are directly under the Sultan. The Turks are proud, indolent, and bigoted; but brave, and, in general, honest. Though the governing people, they are less than two millions in number, while there are about 7 millions of Bulgarians, Albanians, and Greeks.

Turkey in Europe was known to the ancients under the names of Macedonia, Thrace, Moesia, Dacia, Thes'saly, &c.; which were conquered by the Romans in the second century B.C. In A.D. 328 the seat of government was transferred from Rome to Byzantium, which was then named Constantinople, after the Emperor Constantine'. The Ottoman Turks, or Osmanlis, left Turkistan, and came into Asia Minor. Though totally overthrown by Chengis Khan and the Mongols, they retrieved<sup>1</sup> their fortunes under Othman, or Osman, who assumed the title of Sultan about 1300, and founded the present dynasty. The Turks took Constantinople in 1453, and put an end to the Eastern Roman Empire. For nearly two centuries they were the terror of Christian Europe, and during that period twice besieged Vienna. Don John of Austria destroyed the Turkish navy in 1571, and since 1683 the empire has gradually declined. Turkey is the "sick man" of Europe. Russia would long ago have conquered the whole country had she not been restrained<sup>2</sup> by other European powers.

**COMMERCE.**—Grain, fruit, opium, and silk are the chief exports; cotton goods and metals are the chief imports.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The sovereign is called the *Sultan*; and his chief minister, the *Grand Vizier*.

The provinces, called *vilayets*, are ruled by pachas, who generally pay for their office, and endeavour to extort,<sup>3</sup> by oppression and bribery, the utmost in their power from the people under their jurisdiction. There have been many changes in the government of late years, and things are very unsettled.

**RELIGION.**—Muhammadanism is the religion of the Turks; the other inhabitants generally belong to the Greek Church.

The number of Muhammadans is about 4 millions. The Sultan, styled "Commander of the Faithful," is bound to rule according to the Koran. The *Sheik-ul-Islam* is over the *Maulavis* and *Mustis*, or priests and lawyers.

<sup>1</sup> Found again, regained. <sup>2</sup> Hindered, kept from doing a thing. <sup>3</sup> Take by force: *ex*, from; *torqueo*, to twist.

PROVINCES.—The principal divisions of Turkey Proper are ROUME'LIA; ALBA'NIA, south of the Balkan Mountains; BULGARIA, south of the Danube, and EASTERN ROUMELIA, south of Bulgaria, together form a self-governing tributary Province under a Christian Prince elected by their National Assembly.

ROUMELIA, "the Country of the Romans," includes ancient Thrace and Macedonia. BULGARIA is noted for its roses. EASTERN ROUMELIA is inhabited chiefly by Bulgarians.

TOWNS.—CONSTANTINOPLE,<sup>1</sup> or Stamboul,<sup>2</sup> the capital of the Ottoman empire, is situated on the Bos'porus. The situation is extremely beautiful, and the city, with its minarets and gilded domes, has a magnificent appearance from the sea. The houses, however, are built chiefly of wood, and the streets are narrow and dirty. It is rather larger than Calcutta.

The city is built on seven hills on a triangular promontory, bounded on the north by a splendid harbour, called the *Golden Horn*. The seraglio (seral'-yo) encloses the residence of the sultan. Its principal gate is called the *Sublime<sup>3</sup> Porte*,<sup>4</sup> a term which has been applied to the whole palace, and also to the court of the Sultan. Galata is the abode of the merchants, and Pera of the foreign ambassadors. Constantinople is nearly in the same latitude as Madrid, Naples, Bokhara, and Peking.

Gallip'oli, on the Dardanelles, is the chief naval station. Adriano'ple,<sup>5</sup> to the north-west, on the Maritza, is the second city in the empire, and was the capital of the Turks before they took Constantinople. Saloniki (sal-o-nee-kee), the ancient Thessaloni'ca, situated at the head of the Gulf of Saloniki, is the second sea-port.

Scu'tari and Yan'ina are the largest towns in Albania.

BULGARIA includes Rustchuk, a trading city on the Danube; Varna, the principal sea-port on the Black Sea; Sili's'tria, on the Danube, noted for its defence against the Russians; Tirnóva, the ancient capital, near

<sup>1</sup> The city of Constantine. <sup>2</sup> The City. It is also called *Rüm* by the Turks, from having been the capital of the Eastern Roman empire. <sup>3</sup> High, lofty. <sup>4</sup> Port, gate. <sup>5</sup> Called after its founder, the Roman Emperor Adrian.

the centre; and **Sophia** (so-fé'-a), the capital, towards the west.

The **Shipka Pass**, in the Balkans, and **Plevna**, in the north of Bulgaria, were the scenes of great battles between the Turks and the Russians.



CONSTANTINOPLE.

**Philippopolis**, the capital of Eastern Roumelia, is named after Philip of Macedon.

**CANDIA**, the ancient Crete, is a large island to the south of the Archipelago. **Candia**, in the north, is the chief town.

It is beautiful and fertile, but in a wretched condition from oppression. **Samotha'ki**, the ancient Samothracia, **Thaso**, **Imbro**, and **Lemno** are islands in the Archipelago.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—Constantinople, population, 873,000; Adrianople, 100,000; Saloniki, 60,000.

### ROUMANIA, SERVIA, AND MONTENEGRO.<sup>1</sup>

**ROUMANIA** consists of **Walla'chia** and **Molda'via**, north of the Danube. The population is about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  millions.

Roman colonists settled north of the Danube; hence the Wallachians call themselves Romans. The two provinces, sometimes termed "The Danubian Principalities," were united in 1861. In 1877 they declared their independence of Turkey. The Prince of Roumania was proclaimed king in 1881.

The **DOBRUDSCHA**, south of the Danube, was given to Roumania by Russia, after the late war, in lieu of Bessarabia, which was resumed.

The river Pruth divides Roumania from Russia.

Roumania is about the size of Assam. Agriculture and cattle-rearing are the chief industries.

**Bu'charest**, the capital, in Wallachia, is a town of considerable size. **Jassy** (yas'-se), on a tributary of the Pruth, is the chief town in Moldavia.

**Galatz**, on the Danube, is the port of Moldavia.

**SERVIA** is a small kingdom south of the Danube, between Bulgaria and Bosnia. The capital is **Belgrade**,<sup>2</sup> on the Danube, formerly a very important fortress.

**MONTENE'GRO** is a wild mountainous country, east of the Adriatic. The capital is **Cetigne** (zetinye), a small place.

### TOWNS ALONG THE COAST OF EUROPE.

(*Exclusive of the British Islands.*)

**White Sea** : Archangel; **Norway** : Trondhjem, Bergen, Christiania; **Sweden** : Gothenburg, Carlskrona, Stockholm; **Russia** : Abo, Sveaborg, Helsingfors, Kronstadt, St. Petersburg, Revel, Riga; **Prussia** : Memel, Danzig, Kiel; **Denmark** : Copenhagen, Elsinore; **North Sea** : Altona, Hamburg, Embden, Amsterdam, Rotterdam, Antwerp, Ostend; **France** : Dunkirk, Calais, Boulogne, Dieppe, Havre, Cherbourg, Brest, Nantes, La Rochelle, Bordeaux; **Spain** : Bilboa, Santander, Corunna; **Portugal** : Oporto, Lisbon; **Spain** : Cadiz, Gibraltar, Malaga, Cartagena, Alicante, Valencia, Barcelona;

<sup>1</sup> The name means Black Mountain. It is so called from being covered with forests.  
<sup>2</sup> White Town.

France : Marseilles, Toulon, Nice ; Italy : Genoa, Leghorn, Naples ; Sicily : Palermo, Grgenti, Syracuse, Catania, Messina ; Italy : Brindisi, Ancona, Venice ; Austria : Trieste, Pola, Ragusa ; Greece : Corinth, Patras, Nauplia, Syra ; Turkey : Saloniki, Constantinople, Varna ; Russia : Odessa, Nikolaiev, Kherson, Sebastopol.

TOWNS ON THE RHINE.

(*Ascending the River.*)

Leyden, Utrecht, Dusseldorf, Cologne, Bonn, Coblenz, Ehrenbreitstein, Mayence, Mannheim, Spires, Strassburg, Basle, Schaffhausen.

TOWNS ON THE DANUBE.

Galatz, Siliestria, Widin, Belgrade, Buda-Pesth, Pressburg, Vienna, Linz, Ratisbon, Ulm.

AFRICA.

AFRICA is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean ; on the east by the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean ; and on the west by the Atlantic. Of the continents, Africa is the second in size, but the least known and the most uncivilized. It is sometimes called the "Dark Continent."

Africa comprises the south-west of the Old World, and forms an immense peninsula, joined to Asia by the Isthmus of Suez, a low sandy tract, 73 miles in breadth. The greatest length from north to south is about 5,000 miles ; the greatest breadth from west to east, 4,600 miles. The area is nearly 12,000,000 square miles. The shape is somewhat like that of a mango. It is made a vast island by the Suez Canal.

DIVISIONS.—The following are the principal divisions :—

*In the North.*

Egypt and Nu'bria, Trip'oli, Tu'nis, Alge'ria, and Morocco.

*In the Centre.*

Abyssinia, Saha'ra, or the great Desert, and Soudan.

*In the West.*

Senegambia, Upper and Lower Guinea, and the Congo Territories.

*In the South.*

German South-West Africa, Cape Colony, Natal, the Orange Free State, and the South African Republic.

*In the East.*

Portuguese, German and British East Africa, Zanzibar, and the Italian Protectorate.

**GULFS, &c.**—The shores of Africa are rounded, and the coast islands are few. The following are the principal Gulfs: **Gulf of Sidra** (see'-dra), north of Tripoli; **Gulf of Ca'bes**, east of Tunis; **Gulf of Guinea**, near the middle of the West Coast; **Table Bay** and **Algo'a Bay**, in the south; **Delago'a Bay** and **Sofala Bay**, in the south-east; **Gulf of Aden**, on the east. **Mozambique Channel** separates Madagascar from the mainland.

Africa has less coast line in proportion to its size than any of the other continents. Europe has more than three times as much.

The Gulf of Sidra was anciently called the **Greater Syrtis**;<sup>1</sup> the Gulf of Cabes, the **Lesser Syrtis**. The **Bights**<sup>2</sup> of Benin' and **Biafra** are two bays stretching inland from the Gulf of Guinea.

**CAPES.**—**Cape Bon**, north of Tunis; **Cape Blanco** (White Cape), and **Cape Verd** (Green Cape), on the west; **Cape Palmas**, in Guinea; **Cape of Good Hope** and **Cape Agulhas** (a-gool'-yas) (Needle), in Cape Colony; and **Cape Guardafui** (gar-da-fwee'), the most easterly point of the continent.

**Cape Bon** is the most northerly point of Africa; **Cape Ceuta** is opposite Gibraltar. The **Cape of Good Hope** was called by Bartholomew Diez the **Stormy Cape**, from the tempestuous<sup>3</sup> weather he encountered when doubling<sup>4</sup> it; but King John of Portugal gave it the present name, because, after its discovery, he hoped to be able to reach India by sea. **Cape Agulhas** is the most southerly point of Africa. **Capes Corrientes** (currents) and **Delga'do** (pointed) are on the south-east coast.

*Section of Africa from east to west.*

**SURFACE.**—The interior of Africa, as far as yet known, appears to consist of vast table-lands of moderate elevation,

<sup>1</sup> Quicksand. <sup>2</sup> Bite, a bend, a small bay. <sup>3</sup> Stormy. <sup>4</sup> Sailing round.

separated from the coast by a ring of mountains. The **Saha'ra**, or Great Desert, is an immense tract of arid sand, with only a few fertile spots, called *oases*, stretching across the continent from the Atlantic to the Red Sea. A great part of the interior is yet unexplored. The **Atlas Mountains**, in the north; the **Kong Mountains**, in Upper Guinea; the **Lupa'ta Range**, west of Mozambique; and the **Abyssinian Mountains**, are the principal chains known at present. The highest peak yet discovered is **Kilimanja'ro**, about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles in height, near the equator, west of Zanzibar.

The average height of the **Atlas Mountains** is about 8,000 feet, but a peak, called **Miltsin'**, south of Morocco, is 11,400 feet. The **Cameroons**' lie north of the Bight of Biafra. **Table Mountain** overhangs Cape Town. The **Nieuwveld Range** runs east and west through Cape Colony; the **Drakenberg Mountains** are a continuation northward, along the east coast. Along the east coast, south of the equator, there are lofty peaks covered with perpetual snow. As far as yet known, **Kenia** is next in height to Kilimanjaro. The **Abyssinian Mountains** rest upon an extensive plateau, about 7,000 feet in elevation. The highest summits are upwards of 15,000 feet above the sea.

From early times a range of mountains, called the *Mountains of the Moon*, has been supposed to exist in Central Africa. They have not yet been identified.

**RIVERS.**—Africa is the least watered of the great divisions of the earth. The **Nile**, the longest river in Africa, flows northward into the Mediterranean. The **Senegal**' and **Gam'bia** flow westward into the Atlantic. The **Niger**,<sup>1</sup> with its tributary, the **Chadda**, falls into the Gulf of Guinea. The **Congo** and the **Orange River** flow westward into the Atlantic; the **Zambesi** has an easterly course into the Indian Ocean.

Some of the large rivers of Africa have a very winding course. The length of the Nile is about 4,000 miles. From early times the sources of the Nile have been an object of curiosity.<sup>2</sup> Many attempts have been made to discover them, by travellers like Bruce, Livingstone, Speke, Baker, and Stanley. The chief tributary, the **Blue Nile**, rises in Abyssinia; the main stream, the **White Nile**, has its sources in the Lake Region of Eastern Africa. The rains falling upon the mountains of Eastern Africa cause the Nile to overflow its banks annually about

1 *Niger* means black. 2 A wish to find out something unknown.

the same season that the Ganges inundates part of Bengal. The **Niger** is called the **Jol'iba** (Great River) in the upper part of its course, and the **Quorra** in the lower. Its length is about 2,500 miles. The **Congo**, next to the Nile in length, rises in the lakes to the west of Tanganyika. It is called the **Lualaba** in its upper course. At great risk to his life, Stanley, an American traveller, lately explored the river, and afterwards tried to open it up. In volume of water, the Congo ranks next to the Amazon.

**LAKES.**—Eastern Africa contains some very large lakes, as the **Victoria Nyan'za**,<sup>1</sup> and the **Albert Nyan'za**, near the equator; **Tanganyi'ka**,<sup>2</sup> **Bangweolo**, and **Nyassa**,<sup>1</sup> south of the equator, with others not yet fully known; and **Lake Tchad**, near the centre of the continent.

Livingstone, the great African traveller, lost his life in the Lake Region, endeavouring to discover the sources of the Nile. **Dembea**, in Abyssinia, **Shirwa**, near Nyassa, and **Ngami**, towards the south, are smaller lakes.

**CLIMATE.**—More than three-fourths of Africa lies within the **Torrid Zone**, and it is the hottest and driest of all the great divisions of the globe; but a belt on each side of the equator is well watered. There are in general but two seasons, the dry and the rainy, the latter following the sun.

The districts around the Red Sea and North Central Africa are considered the hottest parts of the globe. No rivers fall into the Red Sea. Over much of the Sahara scarcely any rain falls. The heat of Africa is accounted for by its position, its slight general elevation, and the want of great rivers and deep openings of the sea into the land.

**MINERALS.**—Gold is found in the sand of many of the large rivers in Central Africa. Diamonds are obtained in South Africa. Salt is abundant in several parts of the continent.

**VEGETATION.**—Much of the soil is barren, but it is very fertile where well watered. Wheat, dourra, and barley, are the principal grains in the north. Oranges, olives, the cotton plant, and the date-palm likewise abound. In Central Africa there are immense forests. In the west of Central Africa, maize, rice, the cassava,<sup>3</sup> yams, plantains, sugar, and palm-oil, are the chief vegetable pro-

<sup>1</sup> *Nyanza* and *Nyassa* both mean *lake*. <sup>2</sup> The name means *plain-like lake*. <sup>3</sup> A kind of root.

ductions ; the east is the native region of the coffee plant. Southern Africa is noted for its beautiful heaths ; wheat, the vine, and cotton are now cultivated there to some extent.

Western Africa is noted for its gum trees, and the gigantic ba'obab, or monkey-bread tree. The latter is not of very great height, but is sometimes thirty feet in diameter. Its fruit is extensively used as food. The jungle grass of Guinea sometimes attains the height of fourteen feet, so that elephants may browse<sup>1</sup> in it unseen. East Africa is distinguished for its numerous palms and aromatics.<sup>2</sup> Many of the plants of South Africa have slender wiry roots and thick fleshy leaves.

**ANIMALS.**—The camel, ox, sheep, and horse, are the principal domestic animals. The gorilla,<sup>3</sup> lion, leopard, elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus,<sup>4</sup> giraffe, zebra, and



THE ZEBRA.

ostrich, are found in the jungles and deserts ; crocodiles are numerous in many of the rivers. Clouds of locusts sometimes lay waste large tracts ; white ants swarm along the coasts of Guinea.

There are no tigers in Africa. The giraffe, hippopotamus, or river-horse, and zebra, are peculiar to this continent.

**PEOPLE.**—The population of Africa is very uncertain ; but it is now estimated at about millions. The

<sup>1</sup> Feed. <sup>2</sup> Sweet-scented plants ; *aro'ma*, sweet smell. <sup>3</sup> A kind of large monkey.

<sup>4</sup> River-horse ; *hippos*, horse ; *pot'amos*, river.

continent is chiefly inhabited by three great races—the **Hamites** in the north and north-east; the **Negroes**, south of the Sah'ara; and the **Bantus**, in the great southern table-land.

The **HAMITES** are the African branch of the Caucasian family. They are dark in complexion, but they have not the woolly hair nor thick lips of negroes. They are mostly Muhammadans. Christianity exists, in a very corrupt form, in Abyssinia.

**NEGROES** inhabit chiefly the centre of the continent. The slave trade has long been the curse of Africa. The native governments are very despotic, and frequently at war to obtain slaves. Polygamy is universal. Most of the negroes are sunk in the grossest idolatry, worshipping feathers, egg-shells, and anything they set aside as a *fetich*. Muhammadanism is spreading among some of them; a few have embraced Christianity.

The **BANTUS**, in the south, are a brown race, many of them tall, athletic, and brave soldiers. The Kaffirs and Zulus are two of the best known tribes. Fetichism prevails among them, but Christianity is making progress.

There are various singular tribes scattered over the continent. The *Akkas*, in Central Africa, are only about 4 feet high. The *Hottentots* are a degraded race found in the extreme south-west.

In South Africa there are many European colonists, chiefly Dutch and English.

The greater part of Africa is now claimed by different European nations.

The average number of inhabitants to the square mile is about 14.

### Egypt.

EGYPT forms the north-eastern extremity of Africa. It is bounded on the south by Nubia, and on the west by the Great Desert.

The area is about 400,000 square miles; the population is estimated at 7,000,000. The cultivated area includes only about 1,300 square miles.

**SURFACE.**—Egypt includes the lower valley of the Nile, and a flat triangular district in the north, called the *Delta*, lying between the two principal branches of the Nile.

The valley of the Nile is long and narrow, formed by two ranges of hills, which are, on an average, about six miles apart from each other. In some places these hills rise to the height of 2,000 feet; in others they are merely slight elevations. The Nile resembles the Indus in not receiving a single tributary in its lower course. As much water is drawn off for irrigation, the volume of the stream becomes smaller and smaller from Upper Egypt.

Egypt has been called the "Gift of the Nile." Much of it has been formed by the mud brought down by the river, and it is dependent on it for fertility.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is very dry; rain is almost unknown in Upper Egypt. The heat in summer is excessive,<sup>1</sup> but during the rest of the year the temperature is mild and pleasant. The dews at night are very heavy.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—The districts watered by the Nile are exceedingly fertile; the rest of the country is a parched desert.

The chief productions are millet, wheat, sugar, cotton, indigo, tobacco, dates, onions, and cu'cumbers. Crocodiles abound in the Upper Nile.

An immense number of water-wheels are employed for the purpose of raising water from the Nile. Hyc'nas are found in the deserts. The stork, i'bis, and ichneumon (ik-nu'-mon) or mongoose, considered sacred in ancient times, still exist in the country. Eggs are hatched in great numbers in ovens.

**PEOPLE.**—The population consists of Copts, descendants of the original inhabitants, Arabs, and Turks. There are many Europeans. Arabic is the prevailing language.

The *fellahin*,<sup>2</sup> or ryots, were formerly greatly oppressed; but their condition is improving.

**COMMERCE.**—Cotton, beans, wheat, and sugar are some of the principal exports; cotton cloth, coal, and metals are the principal imports.

**GOVERNMENT.**—The Government is despotic.

Egypt was peopled by the descendants of Ham, and under kings, called the Pharaohs, attained considerable power; but in 525 B.C. it was conquered by Camby'ses, a king of Persia. In 322 B.C. it submitted to Alexander the Great, and soon after his death was formed into a separate kingdom under Ptolemy, one of his generals, the first of the line of kings of that name. The last of this dynasty was Queen

<sup>1</sup> More than enough, very great. <sup>2</sup> Ploughmen.

Cleopatra, who perished 30 B.C., when Egypt became a Roman province. The next conquerors were the Saracens, under the Caliph Omar, by whom it was subjected in the year 640. It was subdued in 1517 by the Turks, and tribute is still paid to the Sultan, though the government is now hereditary in the family of Mehemet Ali. The title of Khedive<sup>1</sup> was conferred in 1866. In consequence of a military revolt, he is now assisted by English troops.

**RELIGION.**—The Copts profess a corrupt form of Christianity; but the great majority of the people are Muhammadans.

**DIVISIONS.**—The three principal divisions are LOWER EGYPT, in the north; MIDDLE EGYPT; and UPPER EGYPT, in the south.

**TOWNS.**—Cairo (ki'ro), on the Nile, is the capital of EGYPT, and the largest city in Africa.

The name *El Kahirah*, means the *Victorious*. It was founded by the Arabs about 970; the citadel was built by Sal'adin in 1176. It was the capital of the Mamelukes from 1250 to 1507. The streets of the old city are very narrow. The population is about 370,000.

Alexandria, on the Mediterranean, is the chief port, and possesses considerable trade.

It was founded by Alexander the Great, and at one time was the second city in the Roman empire. It is now connected with Suez and Cairo by railway. Population, 209,000.

In the Bay of Aboukir (a-boo-keer'), 15 miles east from Alexandria, Nelson gained the battle of the Nile in 1798.

Roset'ta and Damiet'ta are small sea-ports at the mouths of the two principal branches of the Nile.

Su'ez, a sea-port at the head of the western arm of the Red Sea, is connected by a canal, 87 miles in length, with Port Said (sa-eed'), on the Mediterranean.

The Suez Canal, which enables ships to sail from India through the Red Sea and the Mediterranean to Europe, was planned by a Frenchman, named Lesseps. It passes through what are called the Bitter Lakes. A town, called Ismailia, has sprung up near the centre of the canal.

Siout, on the Nile, the capital of Upper Egypt, is connected with Cairo by rail. Assouan', near the first cataract of the Nile, on the frontier of Nubia, is noted for its granite quarries. Wady Halfa,<sup>2</sup> on the Nile, at the second cataract, 800 miles from Cairo, is at present

<sup>1</sup> The title given to the Viceroy of Egypt by the Sultan of Turkey. It means Viceroy of the Sultan. <sup>2</sup> Valley of Es-paro Grass.

the southern limit. Kosseir and Suakin are sea-ports on the Red Sea.

**ANCIENT MONUMENTS.**—Egypt is remarkable for its early civilization. Its immense pyramids,<sup>1</sup> and ruins of magnificent temples, still bear witness to its former greatness.



*Egyptian Hieroglyphics,<sup>2</sup> or Picture-Writing.*

The pyramids, a few miles from Cairo, are perhaps the most astonishing monuments of human labour in existence. The largest is 480 feet high, and covers 13 acres. They are supposed to have been intended as tombs of the kings. The sphinx,<sup>3</sup> near the pyramids, is a gigantic figure, with a woman's head, and a lion's body. Thebes (theebz), in Upper Egypt, was called "the city of a hundred gates." The stones of its temples are in many cases of immense size. Numerous chambers called cat'acombs, have been excavated<sup>4</sup> in the hills bordering the Nile, for the reception of mummies or embalmed<sup>5</sup> bodies.

Cats were considered sacred by the ancient Egyptians, and were carefully wrapped up in spices when they died.

### Nubia and the Upper Nile.

NUBIA lies south of Egypt. SENNAAR' and KORDOFAN are provinces to the south of Nubia.

With the exception of a narrow strip which is watered by the Nile, the country is composed in general of rocky and sandy deserts. The climate is dry and hot.

There are small patches on which millet, barley, cotton, tobacco, and indigo, are cultivated. Elephants, rhinoceroses, giraffes, lions, antelopes, and crocodiles, are numerous.

The Nubians are a strong, industrious race, greatly oppressed by the Egyptians, by whom they were conquered in 1820. Slave-hunting expeditions are fitted out to carry on the slave trade, the chief traffic of the country. Ivory tusks are collected and exported. The language is Berber.

**TOWNS.**—Khartum, at the junction of the White and Blue Niles, is the principal town, and the chief seat of the slave trade. Sennaar', on the Blue Nile, was formerly

<sup>1</sup> Buildings with four sides ending in a point. <sup>2</sup> A kind of picture-writing, first used by Egyptian priests: *hieros*, sacred; *glypho*, to cut. <sup>3</sup> Sfingka. A fabulous monster, said to have proposed riddles and murdered all who could not answer them; *sphinggo*, to squeeze. <sup>4</sup> Dug out of: *ex*, out; *caucus*, hollow. <sup>5</sup> Preserved by spices.

the capital of an independent kingdom, but is now much decayed.

At Khartum, General Gordon met his death in 1885, when trying to relieve the besieged Egyptian garrison.

At Suakin,<sup>1</sup> pilgrims usually embark for Mecca.

The Khedive of Egypt claimed the whole valley of the Nile. The EGYPTIAN SOUDAN included the UPPER NILE to LAKES Albert and Victoria Nyanza, with DARFUR and some other districts in the west. A rebellion broke out in 1883, under a leader, called the Mahdi, and all had to be abandoned except Egypt Proper. The country is now very unsettled.

The Upper Nile Region was annexed by expeditions under Sir Samuel Baker and Colonel Gordon. Darfur, which is fertile and well-watered, contains a Muhammadan population of about 5 millions.

#### ABYSSINIA.

ABYSSINIA, forming a part of the ancient Ethiopia, lies south-east of Nubia and Sennaar.

The area is estimated at 160,000 square miles.

It consists chiefly of high table-lands, traversed by rugged mountains. The elevation renders the climate in general cooler than that of Nubia, and the abundant<sup>2</sup> rains cause the soil to be very productive.

The highest plain is about 8,000 feet above the sea-level, and the loftiest peak known is nearly 16,000 feet. The country contains the source of the Blue Nile, so called from the mud it brings down. The climate on the coast and in the low valleys is intensely hot.

Wheat and millet are the principal vegetable productions. Oxen are numerous, and some of them have horns of immense size. Locusts are sometimes very destructive.

PEOPLE.—The inhabitants, estimated at 3 millions, consist of various tribes, who are supposed to have originally come over from Arabia. They are in a low state of civilization, and occasionally eat raw flesh. Ethiopic, the ancient language, is no longer vernacular,<sup>3</sup> though dialects of it are spoken in the higher districts. The principal exports are ivory, gold, and coffee.

1 Fifty devils. 2 Plentiful. 3 Commonly spoken.

The Arabic name, **Habesh**, "mixture," is said to have been given on account of the mixed character of the people.

The religion is a very corrupt form of Christianity. The eastern coasts are peopled by the **Gallas**, a negro race, who often make inroads to plunder the country.

Christianity was introduced about 330.

Abyssinia at one time formed a powerful kingdom, but it was afterwards divided into petty<sup>1</sup> states, which were generally at war with one another. The principal divisions are—**AMHA'RA**, in the centre; **TIGRE** (tee-gray), in the north-east; and **SHO'A**, in the south-east. At present, they are under one king, who calls himself **The Negus**, or King of Kings.

**TOWNS.**—**Gondar**, north of Lake Dembea, is the capital of Amhara; **Magdala**, south-east, was taken by the English.

**A'dowa** is the present, and **Axum** the former, capital of Tigre. **Ankobar** is the capital of Shoa.

Theodore, King of Abyssinia, kept some Englishmen captives. An expedition, under Sir Robert Napier, was sent for their rescue. Theodore was killed at the storming of Magdala in 1868. No town in Abyssinia contains more than 8,000 inhabitants.

Italy, for a time, claimed a Protectorate over Abyssinia; but this was not acknowledged.

**Massowa**, the chief port on the coast, is held by Italy.

#### BARBARY STATES.

**BARBARY** extends from Egypt to the Atlantic, and from the Mediterranean to the Sahara.

The name is derived from the **Berbers**, who formed the bulk of the inhabitants before its conquest by the Saracens. The Arabians called it **El Moghreb, the West**. The boundary to the desert is very ill-defined.

**SURFACE.**—There are three regions. A strip of fertile land, called the "Tell," extends along the coast, increasing in breadth towards the west; a central plateau, traversed by the **Atlas Range**, stretches nearly from the Atlantic to Cape Bon; in the south, a sandy region slopes towards the Sahara. There are no large rivers.

<sup>1</sup> Small.

The Atlas Mountains contain numerous well-watered and fertile valleys. The channels of many of the rivers become nearly dry during the hot season.

CLIMATE.—The eastern parts and others exposed to the sultry winds of the Great Desert, are very hot; along the coast the climate is temperate.

PRODUCTIONS.—Wheat, millet, barley, cotton, tobacco, dates, olives, oranges, and other fruits, are the principal vegetable productions. Dates are so abundant in the sandy region between the Atlas Mountains and the Sahara, that it is called *Beled-el-Jerid*, the Land of Dates. The horses are excellent, and the sheep have very fine wool. Lions, hyenas, and other wild animals, are numerous.

Copper, iron, and rock-salt are abundant. Coral and sponge are fished on the coasts. Leather, made from the skins of goats, and carpets, are the principal manufactures.

PEOPLE.—Arabs, called *Moors*, occupy the cities; *Berbers*, or *Kabyles*, the original inhabitants, and wandering Arabs, dwell in the mountains and plains. The Moors were formerly much addicted to piracy, but this has been stopped by the English and French. Jews are numerous and wealthy. Arabic is the common language.

The Jews are descended from those expelled from Spain and Portugal at the end of the fifteenth century.

COMMERCE.—Esparto grass, from the eastern states, grain, and olive oil, are the chief exports; cotton goods are the chief imports.

The native Governments are very despotic. Strict Muhammadanism is the prevailing religion.

In ancient times, Northern Africa was divided into *Lib'ya* in the east; *Africa Proper* and *Numidia* in the centre; and *Maurita'nia* in the west. *Carthage*, one of the greatest cities of antiquity, was founded by the Phoenicians about 900 B.C., and was conquered by the Romans, 46 B.C. The country was afterwards subject to the Greek emperors, till it was overrun by the Saracens in the latter part of the seventh century. Petty states were subsequently formed, most of them nominally subject to the Sultan of Turkey.

DIVISIONS.—The principal divisions are—*TRI'OLI* in the east; *TU'NIS* and *ALGE'RIA* in the centre; and *MOROC'CO* in the west.

TRIPOLI, including BARCA and FEZZAN, the largest but most thinly peopled of the Barbary States, is a province of the Turkish empire, under a Pasha.

Tripoli means *three cities*. It was so called from three cities once found there. The area is estimated at 400,000 square miles, and the population at one million.

Tripoli, the capital, situated on the coast, is visited by the trading caravans from Central Africa.

Benghazi, eastward on the coast, is the chief town in Barca.

FEZZAN, to the south of Tripoli, is a large district, with some scattered oases. The chief town is *Murzuk*.

TUNIS, the most northern, is the smallest of the Barbary States; but it is fertile, and possesses extensive trade.

The area is about 45,000 square miles. The population is about two millions. The country was governed by a Bey, under the Sultan of Turkey, but in 1881 the French invaded Tunis, and claimed a Protectorate.

Tunis, the capital, is a large commercial city on a lake which communicates<sup>1</sup> with the Mediterranean. The ruins of ancient Carthage are in the neighbourhood.

ALGERIA, formerly under a prince called the *Dey*, was conquered by the French in 1830.

The area is about 258,000 square miles. The population is about 3 millions, of whom about 200,000 are Europeans, chiefly French.

Algiers, the capital, situated on the Mediterranean, was long notorious for its piracies. It was bombarded by Lord Exmouth in 1816, and the Christian slaves were liberated.<sup>2</sup>

The name, **Al-Jezirah**, the island, is derived from islands in the harbour, now connected with the mainland. Algiers is in nearly the same latitude as Aleppo and Teheran.

Constantine is an inland city, rebuilt by Constantine the Great.

Bona in the east, and Oran in the west, are sea-ports.

Algiers has been greatly improved by the French. Artesian wells have been sunk in the desert, and railways have been constructed.

MOROCCO,<sup>3</sup> is the most fertile and populous of the Barbary States. The Sultan calls himself "the Prince of true Believers."

1 Joins. 2 Made free; *lib'ero*, to free. 3 The land of the far West.

The area is about 314,000 square miles. The population is estimated at 6 millions. The government is very despotic. The only manufacture of importance is leather.

**Morocco**, the capital, is an inland town. **Mogadore**, on the west coast, is the principal sea-port. **Fez**, north-east of Morocco, regarded as a holy city, is noted for its caps.

**Mequinez** (mok'-i-nez), near Fez, has a fine palace. **Ceuta**, belonging to Spain, and **Tangier**, are sea-ports, nearly opposite Gibraltar.

#### THE SAHARA, OR THE GREAT DESERT.

The **SAHARA**,<sup>1</sup> or the Great Desert, lies south of the Barbary States, and extends from the Atlantic to Egypt. The eastern part is often called the **Libyan Desert**. It is nearly twice the size of India, and is the most parched, barren, and terrific<sup>2</sup> waste upon the globe. Burning winds sweep over it, raising the sand in clouds, and sometimes burying travellers. The nights are often cold.

The Great Desert forms a vast table-land about 1,500 feet above the sea, covered in general with gravel or loose sand; but there are smaller plateaus, 4,000 feet in elevation. A lowland, with numerous salt lakes, stretches from the Gulf of Cabes to the south of Morocco. Large portions of the Sahara were once covered by the ocean. There are no rivers, and rain falls only at intervals of years.

Rock-salt is found in the west. Thorny shrubs are thinly scattered over the surface, and there are some oases, watered by springs, containing groves of the date palm. A great part of the population of the Great Desert are Arab Moors, more dreaded by travellers than the lions and serpents with which it is infested. Caravans traverse the Sahara in different directions, halting at the oases. There are no towns. The northern tribes are mostly Berbers; the southern, Negroes.

The oases are depressions where water can collect. The more arid parts of the Sahara exhibit few signs of animal life; but about the skirts of the oases are found antelopes, lions, leopards, ostriches, and serpents.

<sup>1</sup> Arabic, *Sah'ra*, desert. <sup>2</sup> Causing fear; *terro*, to frighten.

## THE SOUDAN, OR NIGRITIA.

The SOUDAN, or Negroland, the Land of the Blacks, lies south of the Sahara, and stretches from Senegambia on the west, to the region of the Nile on the east. The west and south are hilly, but most of the country consists of large plains, watered by great rivers, and separated by sandy tracts. The western half is traversed by the Niger; the eastern includes the basin of Lake Tchad.

The principal states are BAMBARA and TIMBUC'TOO, on the Upper Niger; GANDO, on the Lower Niger; SOKOTO', east of Gando; BORNU, south-west of Lake Tchad; BAGIRMI, south-east of Lake Tchad, and WADAI to the eastward. The inhabitants are chiefly negro tribes, mingled with Fulahs, or Fellatahs, a mixed race, partly of negro, partly of Moorish, descent. They are in a low state of civilization, and constant wars prevail for the purpose of obtaining prisoners to be sold as slaves.

Many parts are little known. The area and population are large but uncertain. Agriculture and cattle-rearing are pursued to a considerable extent, and there are some rude manufactures. The languages, which are numerous, have not been reduced to writing. The religion is nearly divided between Muhammadanism and Fetichism.

**TOWNS.**—Se'go, where Park, the traveller, first saw the Niger, is the capital of Bambarra. Timbuc'too, near the Niger, the first place reached by caravans from the north, is a great trading centre; Sokoto' is supposed to be one of the largest towns in the Soudan; Kuka, near Lake Tchad, is the capital of Bornu.

## WESTERN AFRICA.

WESTERN AFRICA includes the long range of coast which extends southward from the Sahara to the Tropic of Capricorn, and from the sea-shore several hundred miles inland. It embraces SENEGAMBIA, in the north; UPPER GUINEA, in the centre; and LOWER GUINEA, in the south.

**SURFACE.**—The Kong Mountains form part of the boundary between Soudan and Western Africa. In general, extensive tracts of lowland stretch along the shore,

but in some cases, as at **Sierra Leo'ne** (Lion Hill), the mountains approach near to the coast. The **Cameroons** are lofty mountains opposite the island of **Fernando Po**, in the Bight of Biafra.

**RIVERS.**—The **Senegal**, **Gambia**, **Quorra**, **Congo**, and numerous other rivers, enter the sea by mouths, generally hidden under a dense mass of the rankest<sup>1</sup> vegetation.

The **Quorra**, the Lower **Niger**, forms a large delta. The **Congo** discharges more water than the **Nile**.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is very hot, and so unhealthy to Europeans, that the country has been called the “white man’s grave.”

The rainy season lasts from June to October. The sands of many of the rivers contain gold. Yams, the cassava, plantains, maize, millet, beans, indigo, and pepper are cultivated. Cowries are extensively used as money.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is almost wholly Negro, with a few residents from various European nations. Palm-oil, oil-nuts, and ivory are the principal exports; cotton goods, the chief import. The slave trade was formerly carried on to a great extent. Fetichism and Muhammadanism are the prevailing religions; but Christianity is gradually spreading.

The Negroes are very fond of amusement. Music and dancing prevail everywhere after sunset. There is, however, a great disregard of human life. Human skulls are the common ornament of houses, and human sacrifices are offered to fetiches. Ships of war have been stationed along the coast by the British Government to put a stop to the slave trade, and efforts are being made by Missionaries to check other cruel practices.

#### SENEGAMBIA.

SENEGAMBIA includes the countries watered by the rivers **Senegal** and **Gambia**. Gum is the principal export. Most of it is included in the French settlement of **SENEGAL**, which extends far inland. **St. Louis**, at the mouth of the **Senegal**, is the capital. **Goree' (go-ray)** is near **Cape Verd**. **Bathurst**, near the mouth of the **Gambia**, is a British settlement.

<sup>1</sup> Growing very high.

## UPPER GUINEA.

Along the whole coast, English, French, and Germans have established trading stations and protectorates. The principal sub-divisions at present are SIERRA LEONE, LIBERIA, FRENCH GOLD COAST COLONY, ENGLISH GOLD COAST COLONY, GERMAN TOGOLAND, LA'GOS, the BRITISH ROYAL NIGER COMPANY'S PROTECTORATE, and the GERMAN CAMEROONS. ASHANTEE and DAHOMEY are two inland Negro kingdoms. Palm-oil is the chief export.

SIERRA LEONE, in the west, is a British settlement, founded in 1787, for the suppression<sup>1</sup> of the slave trade.

Free Town is the capital of Sierra Leone. Christianity has made considerable progress.

LIBERIA (Free State), south-east of Sierra Leone, is an independent negro republic.

Liberia was founded in 1822 by a Society in America to facilitate the emancipation<sup>2</sup> of slaves in the United States. It was made a republic in 1847. The capital is Monrovia, named after President Munro of America.

The GOLD COAST was so called from the gold found in its rivers. The western part is a French colony; the eastern belongs to England. The latter contains the British settlements of Cape Coast Castle and Elmina<sup>3</sup> (el-mee'-na). LAGOS is a British settlement on the Bight of Benin.

Elmina was purchased from the Dutch in 1871. It was the first European settlement in Upper Guinea.

The native state, ASHANTEE, lies in the interior, north of the Gold Coast. The capital is Coomas'sie.

After the cession of Elmina, the king of Ashantee invaded British territory. He was repulsed, and an English expedition, under Sir Garnet Wolseley, took Coomasie.

DA'HOMEY is a native kingdom, to the east of Ashantee. The capital is Abomey'.

The king of Dahomey has a troop of 5,000 female warriors. At his death his wives kill each other, and a large number of subjects are put to death; his tomb is formed of earth mixed with human blood.

<sup>1</sup> Putting down: *sub*, under; *pressum*, to press. <sup>2</sup> Setting free: *et* out of; *manus*, hand; *capio*, to take. <sup>3</sup> The mine.

**Abbeoku'ta** is the largest town in the **YORUBA** Country, east of Dahomey. **BENIN'** and **CALABAR'** lie north of the Gulf of Guinea.

The **ROYAL NIGER COMPANY'S TERRITORIES** extend inland from the coast to Lake Tchad. They include the whole course of the lower Niger, and that of its great left bank tributary, the **Benue**. **Lokaja**, at the junction of the Niger and Benue, is the chief military station.

The **German Settlements** include **TOGOLAND**, a small district east of the Gold Coast, and the **CAMEROONS**, including the Cameroon Mountains.

#### LOWER GUINEA.

LOWER GUINEA comprises **FRENCH CONGO**, the **CONGO FREE STATE**, and the Portuguese Colony of **ANGOLA**.

**FRENCH CONGO** includes the territory between the German Cameroons and the Congo Free State. The **Gaboon** and **Ogowai** are two of the principal rivers. **Brazzaville** is a station on the Congo.

The **CONGO FREE STATE** comprises the greater part of the Congo basin, and extends inland to Lake Tanganyika. It is under the King of Belgium. **Boma**, on the Lower Congo, is the chief station.

Stanley, the traveller, first sailed down the Congo. An Association was formed to open up the country, and the Congo Free State was founded in 1885. It is more than half the size of India, but the population is small. Palm-oil is the chief export.

The Portuguese Colony of **ANGOLA** lies south of the Congo Free State. **St. Paul de Loanda**, on the coast, is the chief settlement. **Benguela** is a port farther south.

Lower Guinea was discovered by the Portuguese in 1481.

#### SOUTH AFRICA.

SOUTH AFRICA includes **GERMAN SOUTH-WEST AFRICA**, **CAPE COLONY**, **NATAL**, the **ORANGE FREE STATE**, the **SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC**, **BECHUANALAND**, the **BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA COMPANY'S TERRITORIES**, and some other divisions.

It consists chiefly of plains and table-lands, bounded on the south and east by ranges of mountains. The **Nieuwveld**, **Sneuwbergen**,<sup>1</sup> and **Drakenberg** Mountains extend along the south-eastern coast. The **Orange River**, or **Gariep'**, flows westward into the Atlantic.

**Mount Cathkin**, a peak of the Drakenberg Range, is nearly two miles in height. The mountains contain deep gorges,<sup>2</sup> called **kloofs**.

**CLIMATE.**—The climate is hot and dry in the north; healthy and temperate in the south. December and January are the warmest months; June and July the coldest.



ZULU WAR DANCE.

The table-lands, called *Karroos*, are very parched. The **Kalahari Desert**, to the north of the Orange River, is rainless.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—Diamonds are found in the basin of the Orange River. Gold fields have recently been discovered in the north-east. Wheat, barley, oats, and the vine are cultivated. The lion, giraffe, zebra, and deer are the principal wild animals. Cattle, sheep, and horses are reared largely, and ostrich breeding has been commenced.

**PEOPLE.**—The principal native tribes belong to the Bantu family. Some of them, as the **Kaffirs** and **Zulus**,

<sup>1</sup> Snowy Mountain, <sup>2</sup> Narrow passages between hills.

are athletic, warlike races. The **Basutos** and **Bechuanas** are other important tribes. The **Hottentots**, in the west, are proverbial for ignorance, laziness, and filth. Some of them, driven to the arid plains of the north, are called **Bushmen**, and are still more degraded.

The native tribes were very cruelly treated by the early Dutch settlers. Christianity and civilization are gradually extending among them.

The European inhabitants consist chiefly of *boers*, or farmers, descendants of the Dutch settlers, and English colonists.

**COMMERCE.**—Wool, diamonds, skins, ostrich feathers, copper, and sugar are the chief exports; clothing and metals are the chief imports.

**GERMAN SOUTH-WEST AFRICA**, between Angola and Cape Colony, includes **Damaraland** and **Great Namaqualand**. Nearly the whole of it is a desert. **Walfisch Bay** (Whale Fish) is a port belonging to Britain.

**CAPE COLONY** takes its name from the Cape of Good Hope. It extends from the south coast of Africa to the Orange River, and from the Atlantic to the Great Kei River.

The area is about 220,000 square miles. The population is about 1½ millions. This region was discovered by the Portuguese in 1486; settled by the Dutch in 1651; and taken by the British in 1806.

The ground rises by terraces towards the **Nieuwveld Mountains**, which traverse the colony; on the north, arid plains slope towards the Orange River.

**DIVISIONS.**—The principal divisions are the **COLONY PROPER**, **GRIQUALAND WEST** in the north; **GRIQUALAND EAST**, **TEMBULAND**, and **TRANSKEI** in the east.

**Griqualand West** contains diamond fields. Diamonds were discovered only a few years ago on both banks of the **Vaal River**, a tributary of the **Gariep**. The district was annexed by the British in 1871.

**TOWNS.**—**Cape Town**, the capital, situated on the south-west of Table Bay, was formerly much frequented by shipping.

Table Mountain, near the town, derives its name from its flat summit. Constantia, a village in the neighbourhood, produces wine of good quality.

Kimberley, in the diamond fields, is next in size to Cape Town, with which it is connected by rail. Port Elizabeth is a sea-port to the east in Algoa Bay. Graham's Town is inland.

NATAL', north-east of Cape Colony, is a British colony, formed in 1856.

The coast was so called by Vasco da Gama, who discovered it on the day of the Nativity<sup>1</sup> or Christmas. Pietermaritzburg, the capital, is inland; Durban is the chief sea-port.

PONDOLAND, BASUTOLAND, ZULULAND, KAFFRARIA, and SWAZILAND are small districts to the east under British protection.

The ORANGE FREE STATE, to the north-east of Cape Colony, was formed by Dutch boers. The capital, Bloemfontein, is a small place.

The SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC, to the north-east beyond the Vaal River, is nominally under Britain, but has its own government.

Pretoria, the capital, is a small town; Johannesburg, in the gold fields, is much larger.

BECHUANALAND is a large district north of Cape Colony under British protection.

The BRITISH SOUTH AFRICA COMPANY has been entrusted with the government of a very large tract of country to the north of Bechuanaland and the South African Republic. Matabeleland and Mashonaland are the two principal divisions.

### EASTERN AFRICA.

EASTERN AFRICA includes the line of the coast extending from Zululand to the Straits of Bab-el-mandeb. With the exception of the Island of Zanzibar, nearly the whole has been claimed by European nations.

The coasts are in general low, in some parts sandy, in others marshy. A chain of mountains, some of whose

<sup>1</sup> The birth of Christ; *natus*, born.

peaks are covered with perpetual snow, bounds the interior table-land which includes the Lake Region. The **Albert Nyanza** and **Victoria Nyanza** in the north, **Tanganyika** in the centre, **Bangweolo** and **Nyassa** in the south, are some of the largest lakes; but there are several others not yet fully known.

The **Victoria Nyanza**, larger than Ceylon, was discovered by Captain Speke, an Indian officer, in 1858. **Tanganyika**, also very large, was discovered by Captain Burton, another Indian officer, in the same year. The former is a feeder of the Nile; the latter of the Congo. Livingstone died at Lake Bangweolo in 1873.

The **Zambesi**, the principal river, flows eastward into the **Mozambique Channel**.



THE TSETSE FLY (*magnified*).

The **Zambesi** is noted for its grand **Victoria** waterfalls.

The **Shire** is a large tributary of the **Zambesi** from Lake **Nyassa**.

Ivory, spices, gums, and oil are the chief exports; cotton goods and beads, the chief imports. Arabs and Gujaratis are the principal merchants. The slave trade is carried on to a great extent; but efforts are being made by the British Government for its suppression. There are no roads, and goods are carried chiefly by men, as the bite of the small tsetse fly is fatal to horses and cattle. In the interior, cloth is used instead of money.

The inhabitants consist chiefly of Bantu tribes, sunk in barbarism and superstition.

Mission stations are being established on the shores of the principal lakes, to civilize the people and spread a knowledge of Christianity.

PORTUGUESE SETTLEMENTS.—**Mozambique**, on an island, is the chief Portuguese settlement.

The Portuguese territory extends from Cape **Delga'do** southward to **Delagoa Bay**. **MOZAMBIQUE** and **SOFALA** are the two chief divisions. **Quilimane** (Ke-le-mah'-na) is on one of the mouths of the **Zambesi**; **Sena** is an inland town on the **Zambesi**; **Sofa'la** is south on the coast.

**NYASSALAND**, to the north-west of Lake **Nyassa**, is a British Protectorate.

GERMAN EAST AFRICA extends along the coast from the **Rovuma** river, near Cape **Delgado**, to near the island of **Pemba**; westward to Lake **Tanganyika**; and north-west to the **Victoria Nyanza**. It includes the mountain **Kilimanjaro**.

**Dar-es-salam** and **Bagamoyo** are the principal sea-ports. **Ujiji** is a station on Lake **Tanganyika**.

The possessions of the Sultan of **ZANZIBAR** include the islands of **Zanzibar** and **Pemba**. **Zanzibar**, the capital, on the island, is the largest town in Eastern Africa. The Sultan is now under British protection.

BRITISH EAST AFRICA extends along the coast from German East Africa to the river **Juba**, and inland beyond the **Albert Nyanza**. The chief station is **Mombasa**, on an island. **Uganda** is a district north-west of the **Victoria Nyanza**.

ITALY claims a protectorate over **Somaliland**, extending from the river **Juba**, to beyond Cape **Gardafui**. It produces gum and spices. The **Somalis** and **Gallas** are wild independent tribes.

**Berbera** and **Zeila** are two sea-ports on the Gulf of **Aden**, under England. **Obock**, near the entrance to the **Red Sea**, belongs to France.

Italy claims a protectorate over the south-west coast of the **Red Sea**. **Assab**, near the **Strait of Babelmañdeb**, and **Massowa**, farther north, are the chief ports.

## ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

**SOCOTRA** is an island east from Cape Guardafui, noted for its aloes. It was lately annexed by England.

**MADAGASCAR**, to the east of the continent, is a large island, greater in size than the Lower Provinces of Bengal. It is traversed by mountains from north to south. The interior is cool and healthy; the coasts are hot and subject to fever. The soil is very fertile, and cattle are numerous. The inhabitants are chiefly of Malayan origin. The Queen is a Christian, and Christianity has made great progress in the island.

Madagascar is the fifth largest island in the world. It is next in size to Borneo.

**TANANARIVO**, near the centre, is the capital. **Tamatave** (tam-a-tave'), on the east coast, is the principal sea-port.

Christianity was introduced by European Missionaries in 1819. After it had made some progress, a cruel Queen vainly attempted to check it by severe persecution. The **Hovas** are the ruling tribe.

The French have some small settlements on the coast, and claim a protectorate over the whole island.

The **Co'moro Islands** are a group midway between Madagascar and the mainland of Africa, lately annexed by France.

**BOURBON**, or **Reunion**, is an island belonging to France, to the east of Madagascar. Sugar is the principal production.

**MAURITIUS**<sup>1</sup> is a fertile island belonging to Britain, to the east of Madagascar. Sugar is the chief object of cultivation. The capital is **Port Louis**.

There are many Indian coolies employed on the sugar plantations.

The **Seychelles** (say-shell') and **Amirante Islands** are small coral groups to the north of Mauritius, of which they are dependencies.

**St. Hele'na** is a small island in the Atlantic, celebrated as the place of exile of Napoleon Bonaparte.

Napoleon died here in 1821; his remains were removed to Paris in 1840. **Ascension** is a small island, about midway between Africa and Brazil. **Fernando Po** is a small island, in the Bight of Biafra.

The **Cape Verd Islands** are a group to the west of Cape Verd, belonging to Portugal.

<sup>1</sup> So called by the Dutch after Prince Maurice of Holland.

They are in general arid and barren. Fruits are abundant. St. Jago (san-te-ah'-go) is the capital.

The CANARY ISLANDS, belonging to Spain, lie southwest of Morocco. Teneriffe (ten'-er-iff), the largest, contains a lofty volcanic peak.

The vine and other fruits are the principal productions. Santa Cruz, in Teneriffe, is the seat of Government.

Madeira, north from the Canary Islands, belongs to Portugal, and is famed for its mild climate and excellent wine. Funchal (fun'-shal) is the capital.

#### PRINCIPAL TOWNS ON THE COAST OF AFRICA.

**North Coast:** Port Said, Damietta, Rosetta, Alexandria, Benghazi, Tripoli, Tunis, Bona, Algiers, Oran, Ceuta, Tangier; **West Coast:** Mogadore, St. Louis, Bathurst, Frere Town, Monrovia, Elmina, Cape Coast Castle, Lagos, St. Paul de Loanda; **South Coast:** Cape Town, Port Elizabeth; **East Coast:** Port Natal, Sofala, Quilimane, Mozambique, Dar-es-salam, Bagamoyo, Zanzibar, Mombasa; **Red Sea:** Massowah, Suakin, Kosseir, Suez.

## AMERICA.

AMERICA is situated between the Atlantic Ocean on the east, the Pacific on the west, and the Arctic on the north. It consists of two great divisions, NORTH and SOUTH AMERICA, which are joined together by the **Isthmus of Panama**, or **Da'rien**.

Greenland was discovered by a Norwegian in 982 A.D.; but Columbus, by his expedition in 1492, first made the New World known to civilized Europe. North America was discovered by Sebastian Cabot, in the employ of Henry VII. of England, in 1497. The continent was named after a Florentine, *Amerigo Vespucci* (ves-poot'-chee) who visited it in 1499, and on his return to Europe published the first account of the newly discovered countries.

The area of America is nearly 16 million square miles.

The greatest length from north to south is about 10,000 miles. North America contains nearly 9 millions of square miles; South America, about 7 millions.

**GENERAL ASPECT.**—North and South America are each triangular in shape, with the point towards the south. North America is distinguished for its *lakes*, and South America for its *rivers*, the largest in the world.

North America resembles Europe in having deeply indented coasts and extensive inland seas ; South America is like Africa in having a margin little broken. Both divisions of the continent have an immense mountain chain, running north and south near the western shore, and abounding with volcanoes ; a low ridge on the opposite side ; and a vast central plain, watered by great rivers. The general slope is eastwards.

South America lies much more to the east than North America, and stretches much farther south than Africa.

**MINERALS.**—Of all the continents, America has the largest supply of the precious metals.

**VEGETABLES.**—The potato, tobacco, the pine-apple, the cinchona tree (sin-ko'-na), yielding quinine, and many other plants, came originally from America. Maize was the only grain known to the aborigines. Wheat, rice, the sugar-cane, cotton, etc., were introduced by Europeans.

**ANIMALS.**—When America was discovered by Columbus, it had no cattle, sheep, or horses : the llama and alpac'a were the only beasts of burden. Lions and tigers are not found in America ; but there are smaller beasts of prey, called the puma and jaguar (jag-u-ar'), which somewhat resemble them. Turkeys came first from America.

**PEOPLE.**—The *population* of America is about 120 millions. North America contains about 88 millions of inhabitants ; South America, 33 millions.

## NORTH AMERICA.

The principal divisions of North America, are :—in the north, BRITISH AMERICA ; in the centre, the UNITED STATES ; in the south, MEXICO, GUATEMA'LA, SALVADOR', HONDU'RAS, NICARAGUA, COSTA RICA (ree'-ka), and the WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

**GULFS.**—The principal openings into the land are Baffin Bay,<sup>1</sup> west of Greenland ; Hudson Bay,<sup>2</sup> a vast inland sea, communicating with the Atlantic ; the Gulf of St. Lawrence, at the mouth of the St. Lawrence ; the Gulf of Mexico, to the south of the United States ;

<sup>1</sup> So called from Baffin, who explored it in 1611. <sup>2</sup> Discovered by Hudson in 1610.

the **Caribbean Sea**, between the West India Islands and South America; and on the West Coast, which is very little broken, the **Gulf of California**.

**Fundy Bay** lies south-west of Nova Scotia; **Chesapeake Bay** is on the east coast of the United States. A current of heated water from the equator flows into the Gulf of Mexico, which, under the name of the *Gulf Stream*, runs north-east into the Atlantic. The Gulf Stream raises the temperature where it flows. The south of the Gulf of Mexico forms the **Bay of Campeachy**; the Caribbean Sea has the **Bay of Honduras** and the **Musquito Gulf** in the west.

**ISLANDS.**—**Greenland**, in the north-east; **Southampton, Cockburn, and Melville Islands**, in the north; **Newfoundland**, south-east of Labrador; **Cape Breton** and **Prince Edward Islands**, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence; the **West India Islands**, between North and South America; **Vancouver and Queen Charlotte Islands**, west of British America.

There are **Prince of Wales Island**, **Prince Albert Land**, **Banks Land**, and numerous other islands in the Arctic Ocean. **Anticosti** is an island in the Gulf of St. Lawrence; **Long Island** is near New York; the **Bermudas** are a small group, belonging to England, to the east of the United States.

**PENINSULAS.**—The chief peninsulas are those of **Labrador** and **Nova Scotia** in the east; **Florida** and **Yucatan** in the south; **Lower California** in the south-west, and **Alaska** in the north-west.

**ISTHMUSES.**—The **Isthmus of Panama** joins North and South America; the **Isthmus of Tehuantepec** is between Campeachy Bay and the Pacific.

**STRAITS.**—**Davis Strait**,<sup>1</sup> between Baffin Bay and the Atlantic; **Hudson Strait**, between Hudson Bay and the Atlantic; **Strait of Belle-isle** (bel-eel'), between Labrador and Newfoundland; **Yucatan Channel**, between the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea; **Behring Strait**, between America and Asia.

**Smith Sound**, &c., lead north from Baffin Bay into the “**Sea of Ancient Ice**;” **Lancaster Sound**, &c., lead west from Baffin Bay into the Arctic Ocean.

**CAPES.**—**Cape Farewell**, south of Greenland; **Cape**

<sup>1</sup> Discovered by Davis in 1585.

**Race**, south of Newfoundland; **Cape Sable**, south of Florida; **Prince of Wales Cape**, at Behring Strait.

**Cape Sable**, south of Nova Scotia; **Cape Cod** and **Cape Hatteras**, east of the United States.

**SURFACE.**—North America has a great Central Plain, extending northward from the Gulf of Mexico to the Arctic Ocean. It is bounded on the east by a low range, called the **Alleghany**, or **Appalachian Mountains**, and on the west by the **Rocky Mountains**, a continuation of the Andes. Most of the continent west of the Rocky Mountains forms a high table-land. Detached ranges extend along the coast. **Mount St. Elias**, on the north-west coast, and the volcano **Popoca'tepetl** (Mountain of Smoke) in Mexico, each nearly  $3\frac{1}{2}$  miles above the sea, are the highest points in North America.

*Section of North America from east to west.*

A high ridge runs across the continent at its widest part. The northern edge is known as the **Height of Land**, and the southern as the **Great Divide**. From it the land slopes towards the north and south.

The southern part of the Central Plain is known as the **Mississip'pi Valley**. There is another extensive lowland between the Alleghanies and the Atlantic. The **Rocky Mountains** form the principal watershed of the continent. The western table-land is about 4,000 feet in elevation. **Orizaba** is another volcano, near Popocatepetl, of about the same height.

**RIVERS.**—The **Mackenzie** and the **Great Fish River** flow into the Arctic Ocean; the **Saskat'chewan**,<sup>1</sup> called in its lower course the **Nelson**, enters Hudson Bay; the **St. Lawrence**, from the Canadian lakes, flows into the Gulf of St. Lawrence; the **Hudson** joins the Atlantic at New York; the **Susquehan'na** has a southerly course into Chesapeake Bay. The **Mississip'pi**<sup>2</sup> flows southward into the Gulf of Mexico. It receives from the east the **Illinois** and the **Ohi'o** with its tributary the **Tennessee**; and from the west the **Red River**, **Arkan'sas**, and **Missou'ri**.<sup>3</sup> The **Colora'do**<sup>4</sup> of Texas and **Rio Grande del Nore** (Great River of the North) fall into the Gulf

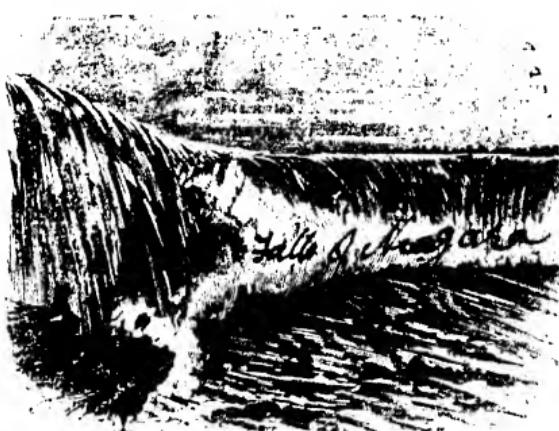
<sup>1</sup> "Swift current." <sup>2</sup> "Great and long River." <sup>3</sup> "Muddy River." <sup>4</sup> "Coloured River."

of Mexico ; the **Sacramento**, and **Columbia**, flow westward into the Pacific ; and the **Colorado** (west) rises in the Rocky Mountains and runs through Utah and Arizona into the Gulf of California. The **Yukon** is a large river in Alaska, navigable for a thousand miles.

The length of the Mississippi is about 3,200 miles ; but from the sea to the source of the Missouri is 4,300 miles. The Missouri-Mississippi is probably the longest river in the world, but the volume of its water is inferior to that of the Amazon. The delta of the Mississippi is a low swamp, infested by alligators.

Some of the western rivers have cut for themselves, through the rocks, very narrow and deep channels, called *cañons*<sup>1</sup> (kan'-yuns). ↗

**LAKES.**—There are three groups of lakes. The principal group consists of five lakes in the basin of the St. Lawrence. **Lake Superior**, larger than Mysore, is the largest fresh-



FALLS OF NIAGARA.

water lake on the globe. It is connected with Lakes **Michigan**<sup>2</sup> (mish'-e-gan) and **Huron**, each nearly as large as Ceylon, which communicate with Lakes **Erie** (ee'ree) and **Ontario**, and are drained by the St. Lawrence. The northern group, next in size, consists of the **Athabasca**, **Great Slave Lake**, and **Great Bear Lake**, in the basin of the Mackenzie River. The third group consists of **Lake Winnipeg** and some smaller lakes, drained by the

1 From a Spanish word meaning tube, pipe. 2 Great Lake.

Nelson. The Great Salt Lake lies west of the Rocky Mountains ; Lake Nicaragua is in Central America.

Lake Superior contains about 32,000 square miles. Lakes Ontario and Erie are connected by the Niag'ara (thunder of waters) River, celebrated for its falls, 160 feet in height. Lake Champlain, north of New York, drains into the St. Lawrence.

**CLIMATE.**—North America is generally colder than the Old World. The eastern side of the continent is colder than the western. In part of the table-land to the west of the Rocky Mountains, scarcely any rain falls. Destructive hurricanes sometimes occur among the West India Islands.

The colder climate of North America is occasioned by the small portion of land within the Torrid Zone ; by the mountains on the west preventing warm winds from the Pacific reaching the central plains ; and by the absence of mountains in the north allowing the piercing winds from the Arctic regions to sweep over the Mississippi Valley. Labrador, in the same latitude as Britain, is colder than Lapland. As cultivation extends, the climate is gradually becoming milder. Central America and the southern half of Mexico lie within the Torrid Zone.

The rainfall is heaviest on the coast of the Gulf of Mexico. The eastern half of the continent has a fair supply of rain, but there are large desert tracts west of the Rocky Mountains. On the Pacific Coast the rainfall is generally abundant.

**PRODUCTION.** Gold is obtained in considerable quantities in British Columbia and California ; silver in Nevada and Mexico ; copper, iron, coal, and salt are found in various parts. Portions of the Western Plateau are barren and treeless ; but much of the Central Plain consists of alternate forests and grassy plains, called *prairies*. Cultivation is rapidly spreading. Wheat and corn are raised in the central districts ; rice, sugar, and cotton are grown in the south. The sugar-maple is plentiful in the United States ; the mahogany and logwood are valuable trees, found in the south. Horses, cattle, and sheep are numerous ; and there are several species of deer, some of them, as the moose, of large size. Bears are the principal beasts of prey. The rattlesnake is a very deadly serpent.

The Sequoia Gigantea, found in California, is one of the largest known trees. It grows to the height of 450 feet.

**PEOPLE.**—The original inhabitants are called American

Indians. European settlers now form the bulk of the population. Negroes from Africa are numerous in the south. The Protestant religion prevails in the United States; the Roman Catholic, from Mexico southwards. Many of the Indians are still heathen.



AMERICAN INDIAN.

It is supposed that most of the aborigines of America came from Asia. Behring Strait is only 30 miles across; boats may have been drifted by the winds. The Indians, forming a subdivision of the Mongolian race, are copper-coloured, and have straight hair and high cheek-bones. Their languages are remarkable for the great length of some of the words. The Indians subsist chiefly by hunting, and are gradually disappearing. A short, stout race, called Esquimaux, are found along the shores of the Arctic Ocean. They live chiefly by fishing.

The white inhabitants are estimated to amount to about 62 millions; Indians, to 5 millions; negroes, to 12 millions; and mixed races, to 9 millions.

#### GREENLAND.

GREENLAND,<sup>1</sup> or Danish America, is supposed to be a very large island<sup>2</sup> in the north-east. It is a rocky, desolate<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It was so called from the green moss growing on its shores. <sup>2</sup> It may be a group of islands bound together by ice. <sup>3</sup> Uninhabited, lonely; *solus*, alone.

country, mostly covered with perpetual snow and ice. There are a few Danish settlers on the south-west coast ; but the inhabitants are chiefly barbarous tribes, called Esquimaux (es-ki-mo'), who subsist mostly by fishing.

Greenland, about half the size of India, is the second largest island in the world. It was colonized from Iceland in the tenth century. The settlers prospered for three hundred years, but about the year 1400 all perished. Ruined buildings still exist. Christianity has made some progress among the Esquimaux. Uppernavik, on the west coast, is the most northerly settlement in the world. The island was crossed by Dr. Nansen, a Norwegian traveller, in 1888.

#### BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

BRITISH NORTH AMERICA is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean ; on the east by the Atlantic ; on the south by the United States ; and on the west by the Pacific and Alaska. It is about twice the size of India ; but the population is only about 5 millions.

The area is about 3½ million square miles.

The two divisions are the DOMINION OF CANADA and NEWFOUNDLAND.

The Dominion of Canada includes the following Provinces :—MANITOBA', the NORTH-WEST TERRITORY, BRITISH COLUMBIA, ONTA'RIO, formerly **Upper Canada**, QUEBEC', formerly **Lower Canada**, NEW BRUNSWICK, NOVA SCOTIA, and PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

The vast region stretching northward from Canada and the United States to the dreary and desolate shores of the Arctic Ocean, was formerly called the HUDSON BAY TERRITORY, but is now termed the NORTH-WEST TERRITORY. It is in general an immense plain, sloping to the north and east. A chain of lakes extends from Canada to the Arctic Ocean ; the southern discharging their waters into Hudson Bay, the northern into the Mackenzie River. The climate is very severe ; the ice on the lakes is sometimes eight feet in thickness. The few inhabitants are Esquimaux in the north, and Indians in the south, who subsist by hunting and fishing. The only trade is that of furs.

There are many dreary islands in the Polar regions covered with perpetual snow. The sea is frozen during a great part of the year. There is constant daylight for several months a year, the sun appear-

ing to describe circles in the heavens, and never descending below the horizon; while at another season the sun is not visible for nearly a similar period. The long night is somewhat relieved by the *auro'ra borealis*, or northern lights, resembling bright clouds flashing through the sky. Large masses of ice, called *icebergs*, are numerous, and sometimes float southwards to the Atlantic. Davis Strait and Baffin Bay are visited by ships engaged in the whale fishery.

During the last three centuries, several attempts have been made to discover a north-west route to India, but the ice has prevented any ship from making the passage, though travellers have crossed the continent by land. Many lives have been lost in these expeditions. Sir John Franklin, who sailed in 1845, perished with all his men.

Though much of the country is unfit for cultivation, wheat, barley, and potatoes are raised in several parts. In good seasons barley ripens at Fort Norman, in  $65^{\circ}$  north latitude. The principal wild animals are the musk-ox, reindeer, bear, beaver, marten, and fox. There are several Missionary settlements among the Esquimaux in Labrador. The country between the Rocky Mountains and Labrador is now generally known as RUPERT'S LAND.



SHIP'S ENCLOSED BY ICE IN THE POLAR REGIONS.

The Hudson Bay Company was established in the reign of Charles II., to trade in furs. It has about 140 forts, or factories, in various parts of the country, the principal being Fort York, on Hudson Bay,

near the mouth of the Nelson River. The Company surrendered its political rights to the British Government in 1859. The North-West Territory is now under a Lieutenant-Governor.

**MANITOBA**', formerly called the **Red River Settlement**, lies south of Lakes Winnipeg and Manitoba. **Winnipeg** is the chief town.

**BRITISH COLUMBIA**, forming the south-western part of British North America, includes **Vancouver Island** and **Queen Charlotte Islands**. The chief products are gold, coal and timber.

**Victoria**, on **Vancouver Island**, is the capital. **New Westminster** is the chief town on the mainland.

**CANADA PROPER** is divided by the **Ottawa River** into **ONTARIO** and **QUEBEC**'. Ontario extends along the northern borders of the great lakes; Quebec lies on both sides of the **St. Lawrence**.

The summers are hot, but the winters are long and severe. In winter, carriages are converted into sledges. The soil is in general fertile, and yields abundant crops of wheat, maize, and flax. A great part of the country is covered with forest. Timber, floated down the **Ottawa** in large rafts, is one of the principal exports.

The inhabitants of Ontario are chiefly British settlers, and Protestant in religion; Quebec is mostly peopled by French descendants, who are Roman Catholics.

Canada was settled by the French in 1608. They held the country till 1763, when their entire possessions in this region were surrendered to the British.

**Towns**.—**Toronto**, near the west end of **Lake Ontario**, is the largest town in Upper Canada, and has a University. **Kingstown** is a commercial city, near the issue of the **St. Lawrence** from **Lake Ontario**.

**Ottawa**, on the river **Ottawa**, is the capital of the Dominion of Canada.

Ottawa is in about the same latitude as Venice and the centre of the Sea of Azul.

The Province of Quebec contains **Montreal**' (mont-re-all'), on an island in the **St. Lawrence**, the largest town in the Dominion; and **Quebec**, on the **St. Lawrence**, strongly fortified.

Montreal (*Mount Royal*) is about the size of Benares. In 1759, the French were defeated in the neighbourhood of Quebec by General Wolfe, who died in the moment of victory. Population, 217,000.

The *Canadian Pacific Railway* extends from Montreal westward to Vancouver on the Pacific coast, a distance of nearly 3,000 miles.

NEW BRUNSWICK lies between Maine, one of the United States, and Nova Scotia. Its surface is covered with dense forests. Timber is largely exported, and shipbuilding is carried on to a considerable extent. **Frederickton**, on the river St. John, is the capital. **St. John**, near the mouth of the river St. John, is noted for its shipbuilding.

The **Bay of Fundy** separates New Brunswick from Nova Scotia. It is remarkable for its tides, which sometimes rise to the height of 70 feet.

NOVA SCOTIA (New Scotland) is a peninsula to the east of New Brunswick. It is a cold, moist country, rich in iron and coal. The timber trade and fisheries are valuable. **Halifax**, the capital, on the east coast, possesses a noble harbour, and has regular steam communication with Britain. **CAPE BRETON ISLAND**, north-east of Nova Scotia, is included in the Province. **PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND** lies in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, north of Nova Scotia.

The Dominion of Canada is governed by a Governor-General, appointed by the Queen of England, a Council, and a Parliament. Each Province has also its local legislature.

NEWFOUNDLAND is a large rugged island, separated from Labrador by the **Strait of Belle-isle** (bel-eel'). The climate is damp and cold. The chief importance of the island arises from its valuable cod-fisheries on the Great Bank of Newfoundland. The capital is **St. John's**, in the south-east, the nearest American town to Europe.

Labrador, the most eastern part of the continent, is under Newfoundland. St. John's is only about 1,900 miles from Ireland.

#### THE UNITED STATES.

The UNITED STATES, nearly as large as Europe, are bounded on the north by British America and the Arctic Ocean; on the east by the Atlantic; on the south by the Gulf of Mexico and Mexico; and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

The area is about 3,500,000 square miles, or nearly  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times the size of India.

The Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence form part of the boundary between the United States and Canada.

CAVES.—On the east coast, Cod, Hatteras, and Sable; in Alaska, Prince of Wales' Cape.

SURFACE.—The United States may be divided into five great sections: the **Atlantic Slope**, the **Central Plain**, the **Western Plateau**, the **Pacific Slope**, and the cold, desolate region of **Alaska**, formerly Russian America.

The Central Plain is the largest division; the Atlantic Slope is the most thickly peopled; the Pacific Slope is long and narrow. The Rocky Mountains are, as it were, the back-bone of North America. The **Cascade Mountains** and **Sierra Nevada** are a range on the Pacific Coast, forming the western boundary of the Plateau.

RIVERS.—There is no country in the world, of equal extent, so well watered as the United States. The **Connecticut** (con-net'-i-kut), **Hudson**, **Delaware**, **Susquehanna**, and **Poto'mac**, flow eastward into the Atlantic. The **Mississippi**, flowing southward into the Gulf of Mexico, receives on the east the **Wiscon'sin**, **Illinois**, and **Ohio**; on the west, the **Missouri**,<sup>1</sup> **Arkansas**, and **Red River**. The **Colora'do**<sup>2</sup> falls into the Gulf of California; the **Sacramento** and **Columbia** flow westward into the Pacific.

The Missouri is about 3,000 miles in length; the Arkansas, 2,000 miles; the Red River, 1,500 miles; the Ohio, 1,000 miles; the Connecticut and Potowmack are each about 400 miles.

CLIMATE.—The climate is cold in the north-east, temperate in the middle, and warm in the south.

The sky is generally clear. The low country along the Gulf of Mexico is unhealthy and liable to fevers.

MINERALS.—Iron, lead, and coal, are found in great abundance; gold and silver are obtained in California and Neva'da; there are oil wells in some of the States.

The production of silver exceeds that of any other country in the world.

VEGETATION.—Alaska and some parts of the Western Plateau are barren; but in general the soil is fertile. In the Mississippi Valley there are immense *prairies*, covered

<sup>1</sup> Missouri means Mud River. <sup>2</sup> Colorado, Coloured or Red River.

with grass but destitute of trees. Maize, wheat, cotton, rice, tobacco, sugar, flax, hemp, and timber are the principal vegetable productions.

Maize is very largely consumed as an article of food. Wheat is the chief grain exported. Cotton, rice, and sugar are raised in the south. There is more cotton grown in the United States than in any other country. Sugar is extensively manufactured from the sugar-maple tree. Machinery is largely used in agriculture.

**ANIMALS.**—Horses, cattle, sheep, and swine are the principal domestic animals. Deer and bison are numerous on the prairies. Bears are found in some of the forests. The mocking-bird is remarkable for its power of imitating sounds.

**PEOPLE.**—The population, about 63 millions, is rapidly increasing, partly by people pouring into the country from Europe. About 54 millions are of European descent or natives of Europe; about 9 millions are Negroes; and about 300,000 are Indians.

The European settlers are chiefly from the British Islands and Germany. Many French descendants are found along the lower course of the Mississippi. The Indian Territory lies to the north of the Red River; but some of the tribes occupy the unsettled districts near the Rocky Mountains.

The people are distinguished for their activity and intelligence.

**COMMERCE.**—The commerce is very extensive, and is second only to that of Britain. The principal *imports* are sugar, coffee, woollen and cotton goods, silks, metals, and hardware; the *exports* are cotton, grain, kerosine oil, bacon, timber, and tobacco.

The railways of the United States are about 170,000 miles in length.

About half the foreign trade is carried on with England and her colonies. Grain and cotton are the largest exports. The north-eastern states are the most commercial and manufacturing; the central and southern states are agricultural; the western states, mining.

The Union Pacific Railway, 3,000 miles in length, stretches across the continent from New York to San Francisco. The journey across occupies about 5 days.

Education is very general in the Northern States. The inhabitants are chiefly Protestants, but no religion is established by law.

The French and Irish settlers are mostly Roman Catholics.

GOVERNMENT.—The Government is a Federal Republic,<sup>1</sup> consisting of a President, a House of Senators, and a House of Representatives. Each State is independent in the management of its own affairs. At present there are 44 States and 5 Territories, besides Alaska and the small District of Columbia, containing Washington, the capital.

The original United States were colonies established by settlers, chiefly from the British Islands, at different times between 1584 and 1732. They continued subject to Britain till 1776, when, in consequence of taxes imposed without their consent, they declared themselves independent. General Washington was made their commander-in-chief, and, after a war of nearly seven years, their independence was acknowledged by Britain in 1782. In 1787 the present form of government was adopted; and in the following year Washington was elected the first President of the republic.

In 1861 several States endeavoured to secede from the Union in order to promote slavery; but, after a severe struggle, they were obliged to return to the Union, and slavery was abolished in 1865.

The President is elected for four years, the Senators are elected for six years, and the Representatives for two. Each State sends two Senators. One Representative is allowed for every 154,000 inhabitants. The legislative power is vested in the House of Senators and the House of Representatives, which together are called the *Congress*. The laws are executed by the President. Each separate State manages its own affairs by means of a Governor, a Senate, and a House of Representatives. The Territories are under the General Government; they have legislatures, but the governors are appointed by the President. Each sends a delegate to Congress, who can *speak*, but not *vote*. They become States when they have a sufficient population.

DIVISIONS.—The six **Northern or New England States** are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

Maine is as large as all the others together; Rhode Island, a part of the mainland, is the smallest state in the Union. Massachusetts (the Bay State) is noted for its schools. Vermont is so called from its hills, called the *Green Mountains*. Connecticut means *long river*.

The seven **Middle Atlantic States** are New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and West Virginia.

New York, called the Empire State, has the largest population of any State in the Union, and its commerce is the most extensive

<sup>1</sup> Composed of states joined together; *fædus*, a league.

Pennsylvania, named after the founder, Penn, produces large quantities of iron, coal, and kerosene oil, and is the second State of the Union for population and wealth. Maryland was named after the Queen of Charles I.; Virginia was first settled by Sir Walter Raleigh in 1584, and was named after Queen Elizabeth the virgin queen. It is noted for its tobacco. The State was divided during the late war.

The four **Southern Atlantic States** are North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida.

Carolina was named after Charles I.; Georgia, after George II. North Carolina produces large quantities of tar and pitch; South Carolina is noted for its rice; Florida was so called by the Spaniards on account of its beautiful flowers.

The twelve **North-Central States** are Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas.

Ohio ranks next to Pennsylvania for wealth and population; Illinois is called the Prairie State; Michigan is noted for its copper; Missouri for its iron and coal.

Indiana was so called because Indians were numerous. The Indian names of some of the States have the following meanings: Ohio, Beautiful River; Illinois, Great People; Michigan, Great Lake; Wisconsin, Wild Rushing River; Minnesota, Sky-blue Water; Iowa, Beautiful Land; Missouri, Mud River; Nebraska, Shallow Water; Kansas, Smoky River.

The seven **South Central States** are Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, Arkansas.

Kentucky has remarkable caves; Alabama and Mississippi are cotton States; Louisiana is the chief sugar State; Texas is the largest State in the Union. It was annexed to the United States in 1845. It is a cattle-breeding State. The farms, called *ranches*, or ranges, are tended by men on horseback, called "cowboys."

Kentucky means The Land Dark with Blood; Alabama, Here We Rest; Mississippi, Father of Waters; Texas, Hunting Ground.

The eight **Western States** are Montana, Wyoming, Colorado, Nevada, Idaho, Washington, Oregon, California.

Washington, Oregon, and California are on the Pacific Coast; the others are inland. California, Nevada, and Colorado are noted for their gold and silver mines. California also produces large quantities of grain and fruit. The name means *hot furnace*, on account of its heat in summer. The **Yosemite** (Yo-sem'i-te) **Falls**, in California, are half a mile in height. Colorado is so called from the bright colour of its rocks.

**The Territories** are Oklahoma, New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Indian Territory, and Alaska.

The Indian Territory, reserved for Indians, forms part of the Central Plain. Oklahoma is near its centre. Utah is noted for its Great Salt Lake, and its Mormon Settlers, who practise polygamy.

Alaska, purchased from Russia a few years ago, is a large, cold, desolate region, inhabited by savage tribes, with a few white settlers, engaged in collecting furs.

**Towns.**—**Washington**, in Columbia on the Poto'mac, is the capital, and the place where Congress meets.

Washington is in nearly the same latitude as Lisbon, Bokhara, and Peking.

**New York**, on an island at the mouth of the Hudson, is the largest city in America, and the second commercial city in the world. The population is about 15 lakhs.

**Brooklyn**, on Long Island, opposite New York, is the fourth city for population in the Republic.

It is connected with New York by a suspension bridge, the loftiest in the world.

**Albany**, on the Hudson, is the capital of New York State. **Buffalo**, on the eastern extremity of Lake Erie, is a place of great trade.

**Philadel'phia**,<sup>1</sup> in Pennsylvania, on the Delaware, is the third city in the United States, and is distinguished for its literary<sup>2</sup> and benevolent<sup>3</sup> institutions.

Pennsylvania is the State which yields the largest quantities of kerosene oil. It is conveyed hundreds of miles in pipes.

**Pittsburg**, on the Ohio, in the west of Pennsylvania, is the chief seat of the iron manufactures.

**Boston**, on the east coast, the capital of Massachusetts, has the largest trade next to New York.

The Revolution in 1773 commenced at this place. The battle of Bunker's Hill took place in the neighbourhood. Harvard University, the oldest in the States, is in a suburb of Boston.

**Lowell**, in Massachusetts, is the chief seat of the cotton manufacture. **Waterbury**, in Connecticut, is noted for its cheap watches.

**Detroit** (The Strait) is in the strait separating Lakes Huron and Erie.

<sup>1</sup> The name means brotherly love; *phios*, loving, *adelphos*, brother. <sup>2</sup> Belonging to learning; *litera*, a letter. <sup>3</sup> Wishing to do good, charitable; *bene*, well, *volens*, wishing.

**Baltimore**, in Maryland, on Chesapeake Bay, has large exports of flour. **Richmond**, on the James River, is the capital of Virginia. **Charleston**, in South Carolina, is the chief port in the south-east. **Savannah**, in Georgia, is the second cotton port. **New Orleans**, in Louisiana, is situated on the Mississippi, about a hundred miles from its mouth. It is the chief commercial city in the south, and the seat of the cotton trade.

New Orleans was founded by the French in 1717. Westward, Galveston, the port of Texas.

**Cincinnati**, on the Ohio, is noted for its pork market and large agricultural exports. **Chicago** (she-kaw'-go) in Illinois, on the southern extremity of Lake Michigan, has a large trade in provisions. It has suffered from very destructive fires. It is now the second city in the States, and promises to be the first. A great **World's Fair** was held here in 1893.

**Milwaukee**, in Wisconsin, on Lake Michigan, has a large grain trade. **Omaha** and **Sioux City** are other great food centres.

**St. Louis**, in Missouri, a little below the junction of the **Missouri** and **Mississippi**, is a place of great trade, and the fifth city for population. **Salt Lake City** is the capital of Utah, and was the chief seat of the **Mormons**. **San Francisco**, on the Pacific, is the largest city in California, and exports large quantities of grain, fruit, wool, gold and quicksilver. It contains many Chinese.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—New York, population, 1,515,000; Chicago, 1,100,000; Philadelphia, 1,047,000; Brooklyn, 806,000; St. Louis, 452,000; Boston, 448,000; Baltimore, 434,000; San Francisco, 300,000; Cincinnati, 297,000; New Orleans, 216,000.

## MEXICO.

**MEXICO**, about half the size of India, is bounded on the north by the United States; on the east by the United States and the Gulf of Mexico; on the south by Central America; and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

The area is about 750,000 square miles.

**SURFACE.**—The interior consists of an elevated table-land, traversed from north to south by ranges of mountains, con-

taining several lofty volcanoes in the south. The eastern coasts are low. The principal river is the **Rio Grande del Nor'te**, which forms the north-eastern boundary.

The central plateau is from 6,000 to 8,000 feet high. Mexico contains few rivers.

**CLIMATE.**—The coasts are hot and unhealthy; the climate of the interior is mild and salubrious.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—The silver mines of Mexico are among the richest in the world, but, on account of the unsettled state of the country, the produce has greatly declined.<sup>1</sup> Maize is the most common article of cultivation. Plantains, the cassava, and cotton are grown largely in the warmer districts. Large herds of cattle are kept. The cochineal insect affords a beautiful red dye.

The agave, or American aloe, is largely cultivated for its sweet juice, from which is made a liquor, called *pulque* (pool'kay), the favourite drink of the Mexicans.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 11 millions. One third are of Indian descent; the descendants of the Spaniards, though not very numerous, are influential; the rest are mixed races. *Spanish* is generally spoken.

At an early period the country was peopled by the Toltecs, who were mild and highly civilised. They were conquered by the **Aztecs**, a warlike race who offered human sacrifices to their god of war, Mexitli, from whom the country took its name **Mexico**. Ruins of large temples, pyramids, and palaces erected by them, still exist in Mexico and Central America. They were conquered by the Spaniards under Cortez in 1521. In 1821 the Mexicans declared themselves independent, but their territory has since been much reduced by the union of Texas, California, New Mexico, and Utah, with the United States.

The descendants of Whites and Negroes are called *Mulattoes*; of Whites and Indians, *Mestizoes*. The descendants of Europeans born in the hotter parts of America are called *Creoles*.

The roads are wretched and infested by robbers. There are few manufactures and but little commerce. Silver and timber are the chief *exports*. The Government is a republic, badly administered. Education is neglected. The religion is Roman Catholic. The churches contain numerous rich ornaments.

<sup>1</sup> Become less: *de*, down; *clino*, to bend.

**Baltimore**, in Maryland, on Chesapeake Bay, has large exports of flour. **Richmond**, on the James River, is the capital of Virginia. **Charleston**, in South Carolina, is the chief port in the south-east. **Savannah**, in Georgia, is the second cotton port. **New Orleans**, in Louisiana, is situated on the Mississippi, about a hundred miles from its mouth. It is the chief commercial city in the south, and the seat of the cotton trade.

New Orleans was founded by the French in 1717. Westward, Galveston, the port of Texas.

**Cincinna'ti**, on the Ohio, is noted for its pork market and large agricultural exports. **Chicago** (she-kaw'-go) in Illinois, on the southern extremity of Lake Michigan, has a large trade in provisions. It has suffered from very destructive fires. It is now the second city in the States, and promises to be the first. A great **World's Fair** was held here in 1893.

**Milwaukie**, in Wisconsin, on Lake Michigan, has a large grain trade. **Omaha** and **Sioux City** are other great food centres.

**St. Louis**, in Missouri, a little below the junction of the Missouri and Mississippi, is a place of great trade, and the fifth city for population. **Salt Lake City** is the capital of Utah, and was the chief seat of the Mormons. **San Francisco**, on the Pacific, is the largest city in California, and exports large quantities of grain, fruit, wool, gold and quicksilver. It contains many Chinese.

**LARGEST TOWNS.**—New York, population, 1,515,000; Chicago, 1,100,000; Philadelphia, 1,047,000; Brooklyn, 806,000; St. Louis, 452,000; Boston, 448,000; Baltimore, 434,000; San Francisco, 300,000; Cincinnati, 297,000; New Orleans, 216,000.

### MEXICO.

**Mexico**, about half the size of India, is bounded on the north by the United States; on the east by the United States and the Gulf of Mexico; on the south by Central America; and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

The area is about 750,000 square miles.

**SURFACE.**—The interior consists of an elevated table-land, traversed from north to south by ranges of mountains, con-

taining several lofty volcanoes in the south. The eastern coasts are low. The principal river is the **Rio Grande del Nor'te**, which forms the north-eastern boundary.

The central plateau is from 6,000 to 8,000 feet high. Mexico contains few rivers.

**CLIMATE.**—The coasts are hot and unhealthy; the climate of the interior is mild and salubrious.

**PRODUCTIONS.**—The silver mines of Mexico are among the richest in the world, but, on account of the unsettled state of the country, the produce has greatly declined.<sup>1</sup> Maize is the most common article of cultivation. Plantains, the cassava, and cotton are grown largely in the warmer districts. Large herds of cattle are kept. The cochineal insect affords a beautiful red dye.

The agave, or American aloe, is largely cultivated for its sweet juice, from which is made a liquor, called *pulque* (pool'kay), the favourite drink of the Mexicans.

**PEOPLE.**—The population is about 11 millions. One third are of Indian descent; the descendants of the Spaniards, though not very numerous, are influential; the rest are mixed races. *Spanish* is generally spoken.

At an early period the country was peopled by the Toltecs, who were mild and highly civilised. They were conquered by the Aztecs, a warlike race who offered human sacrifices to their god of war, Mexitli, from whom the country took its name **Mexico**. Ruins of large temples, pyramids, and palaces erected by them, still exist in Mexico and Central America. They were conquered by the Spaniards under Cortez in 1521. In 1821 the Mexicans declared themselves independent, but their territory has since been much reduced by the union of Texas, California, New Mexico, and Utah, with the United States.

The descendants of Whites and Negroes are called *Mulattoes*; of Whites and Indians, *Mestizos*. The descendants of Europeans born in the hotter parts of America are called *Creoles*.

The roads are wretched and infested by robbers. There are few manufactures and but little commerce. Silver and timber are the chief exports. The Government is a republic, badly administered. Education is neglected. The religion is Roman Catholic. The churches contain numerous rich ornaments.

<sup>1</sup> Become less: *de*, down; *clino*, to bend.

TOWNS.—**Mexico**, the capital, situated on a beautiful plain 7,500 feet above the sea, contains some splendid public buildings.

It stands in the midst of a grand volcanic circle of mountains, including Popocatepetl. The population is about 330,000. Mexico is in nearly the same latitude as Poona.

**Puebla**, south-east of Mexico, is the second city in population. **Guadalaxara** (gwa-da-la-chah'-ra), north-west of Mexico, is the third city of the republic. **Vera Cruz** (kroos), (True Cross), on the Gulf of Mexico, is the principal sea-port. **Acapul'co**, on the Pacific, was once celebrated for its commerce.

**Campeachy**, on the Bay of Campeachy, is another sea-port.

~~xx~~ for 22-1400 CENTRAL AMERICA.

CENTRAL AMERICA is a narrow strip of country lying between Mexico and Panama. High lands, in the form of



WOODCUTTERS IN CENTRAL AMERICA.

ridges and table-lands, traverse the interior in the direction of its length, interrupted by the Plain of Nicaragua.

Many of the mountains are volcanic, and earthquakes are sometimes very destructive.

The area is nearly equal to that of the Lower Provinces; but the population is only about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  millions.

The San Juan River flows from Lake Nicaragua, and there are several other streams. It is proposed to connect Lake Nicaragua with the Pacific by means of a canal.

The lower parts of the country are hot and unhealthy; the elevated districts are temperate and salubrious. Mines of silver abound, but are little wrought. Logwood, indigo, mahogany, coffee, and cochineal are the principal productions. The inhabitants consist of the same races as are found in Mexico.

Central America is now chiefly occupied by the five republics of GUATEMALA, the most populous; NICARAGUA, the largest; SAN SALVADOR, the smallest; HONDURAS, and COSTA RICA.

Central America was a dependency of Spain till 1824, when it became independent. It has since been divided into separate states, often the seat of civil war. Costa Rica (Rich Coast) is sometimes called the "Coffee Republic," from its chief product.

TOWNS.—New Guatemala is the largest town in Central America. Old Guatemala was twice destroyed by earthquakes. Leon, the capital of Nicaragua, is next in size. San José is the capital of Costa Rica. Truxillo (troo-heel'-yo), on the Caribbean Sea, is a sea-port of Honduras.

BELIZE, or BRITISH HONDURAS, south of Yucatan, is a small English Colony, with large exports of mahogany and logwood. The chief town is Belize (bay-leez'), a sea-port.

#### WEST INDIES.

The WEST INDIES consist of several groups of islands, extending in the form of an arch between Florida and the mouths of the Orinoco.

They were so called by Columbus, because he had reached them by sailing westward, and thought that they were some of the islands of India.

The Islands comprise three principal groups: the Bahamas, south-east of Florida; the Greater Antilles

(an-tee'l'), north of the Caribbean Sea; the **Lesser Antilles**, east of the Caribbean Sea.

The Greater Antilles include Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, and Porto Rico (ree-ko). The Lesser Antilles include the Virgin Islands, in the north; the Leeward, in the middle; and the Windward, in the south.

The entire area is about 95,000 square miles.

**CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.**—The climate, except in elevated districts, is hot, though relieved<sup>1</sup> by daily sea-breezes. Hurricanes are sometimes very destructive, and earthquakes are felt occasionally. Maize, yams, and cassava are the chief articles of food. Sugar, rum, tobacco, coffee, and molasses<sup>2</sup> are the principal exports.

**PEOPLE.**—The entire population is about 6 millions. About one-sixth are Whites; the remainder are Negroes and Mulattoes. All the Islands, except Hayti, are subject to European powers.

The islands, when discovered by the Spaniards, were thickly peopled by Indians, but they were soon exterminated by hard labour in the mines. Negroes were then brought as slaves from Africa.

**THE SPANISH ISLANDS** are **CUBA**, the largest of the West India Islands, and **PORTO RICO**. **Havana**,<sup>3</sup> the capital of Cuba, is a large commercial city, noted for its cigars.

Cuba, nearly twice the size of Ceylon, is nearly as large as all the other islands taken together. The population is 15 lakhs. Porto Rico contains about 3,500 square miles, and 800,000 inhabitants.

**HAYTI**, or **SAN DOMINGO**, is, next to Cuba, the largest of the West India Islands. It is divided into two independent republics. The Negro Republic of **HAYTI** includes the western portion of the Island. The capital is **Port-au-Prince**. The eastern portion forms the Spanish Creole **DOMINICAN** Republic. Its capital is **San Domingo**, the first city founded by the Spaniards in the New World.

**Hayti**, or **Haiti** (Land of High Hills), is about one-fourth larger than Ceylon. The population is about 9 lakhs. Spanish Creoles are people born in the West Indies of Spanish descent.

**THE BRITISH ISLANDS** comprise five Governments. 1. **Jamaica**. 2. **The Leeward Islands**. 3. **The Windward Islands**. 4. **Trinidad**. 5. **The Bahamas**.

<sup>1</sup> Lessened, eased. <sup>2</sup> Treacle, a sweet black substance, like honey, which is obtained from raw sugar. <sup>3</sup> The Harbour.

Jamaica (the Land of Springs) is south-east of Cuba; the Leeward Islands are near the coast of South America; the Windward Islands sweep in a curve from Porto Rico to near Trinidad; Trinidad is near the coast of South America; the Bahamas lie north-east of Cuba.

**JAMAICA**, the largest of the British Islands, is about one-fourth the size of Ceylon. **Spanish Town** is the capital, but **Kingston** is much larger, and the principal sea-port.

**ANTIGUA**<sup>1</sup> (an-tee'-ga), a very small island, is the seat of government of the Leeward group.

**BARBADOES**, the oldest British possession in the West Indies, is the seat of government of the Windward group.

**TRINIDAD**, next in size to Jamaica, lies opposite the mouth of the Orinoco. It properly belongs to South America.

It is noted for its pitch lake. Many Indian coolies are employed in the island. **Port of Spain** is the chief town.

The **Bahamas** are a numerous group of small islands, upon one of which Columbus first landed.

The population of the British West India Islands amounts to nearly a million. Slavery was abolished in 1838, when the sum of £20,000,000 was granted as compensation to the slave-owners.

The principal **FRENCH ISLANDS** are **Martinique** (mar-te-neek') and **Guadaloupe** (gaw-da-loop'). There are a few small islands belonging to the Dutch and the Danes.

## SOUTH AMERICA.

SOUTH AMERICA is a vast peninsula, bounded on the north by the Caribbean Sea; on the east by the Atlantic; and on the west by the Pacific.

Its length from north to south is about 4,700 miles, and its greatest breadth from east to west about 3,200 miles.

The area is about 7 millions of square miles.

This Continent is remarkable for its long chain of mountains, and its immense rivers.

**DIVISIONS.**—The principal divisions are **COLOMBIA**, **ECUADOR** (ek'-wa-dore'), **VENEZUELA** (ven-ez-wee'la), and **GUIA'NA**, in the north; **BRAZIL**', **PERU**, **BOLIVIA**, and **PARAGUAY** (parag-way'), in the centre; **LA PLATA**, **URUGUAY** **CHILI** (chil'-le), and **PATAGONIA**, in the south.

<sup>1</sup> The name means ancient, old,

ISLANDS.—**Falkland Islands**, east of Patagonia; **Tierra del Fuego** (fway'-go) (Land of Fire), in the south, separated from the main-land by the **Strait of Magellan**; **Chiloe** (chel-o-a), **Juan Fernandez**, and the **Galapa'gos**, or **Tortoise Islands**, in the west.

The Strait of Magellan is named after its discoverer, whose ship first sailed round the world.

CAPES.—**St. Roque**<sup>2</sup> (rok), north-east, and **Frio**<sup>3</sup> (free'-o), south-east of Brazil: **Horn**, south of Tierra del Fuego, is a black, steep rock on Hermit Island.

SURFACE.—The **Andes**, extending along the western coast from Cape Horn to Panama, have the loftiest peaks in America, and contain numerous volcanoes. **Sora'ta**, in Bolivia, about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles in height, is the highest known point of America. **Aconcag'ua**, in Chili, is also a very lofty peak. The centre of the continent consists chiefly of a vast plain. Ranges of mountains of moderate elevation divide the basins of the rivers, and extend along the northern and eastern coasts. The general slope is to the east.

The **Andes**, or **Cordilleras**<sup>4</sup> (kor-dil-le'-ra), are the longest chain of mountains in the world.

**Chimbora'zo**, long supposed to be the highest mountain in the New World, is about 21,400 feet. **Cotopaxi** and **Antisa'na** are celebrated volcanoes. Some geographers consider Aconcagua to be the highest American peak.

*Section of South America.*

RIVERS.—The three principal rivers of South America are the **Orinoco**, the **Am'azon**, or **Maranon** (mar-an-yon'), and the **La Plata** (River of Silver), which drains the northern, middle, and southern portions of the great plain. The Amazon, about 4,000 miles in length, is the largest river in the world. The **Magdale'na** flows northward into the Caribbean Sea: the **Francisco** has an easterly course into the Atlantic.

The **Esse'quibo** (es-se-kee'-bo) flows northward through Guiana.

<sup>1</sup> Ma-jel'-lan. <sup>2</sup> Rock. <sup>3</sup> Cold. <sup>4</sup> A Spanish word meaning *little rope*, applied to a chain of mountains, especially the Andes.

The Amazon receives from the north the **Yapura** and **Negro**, the latter connected with a branch of the Orinoco; and from the south, the **Ucayali** and **Madeira**. The Amazon, though not so long as the Missouri-Mississippi, has a larger basin, and a larger volume of water. It is navigable for 2,600 miles, and is supposed to carry more water to the ocean than all the rivers of Europe. Its mouth is about one hundred miles in breadth. The **Tocantins** flows northward through Brazil. The **Rio-de-la-Plata** is strictly the estuary formed by the junction of the **Parana** and **Uruguay**. The **Paraguay**, 1,260 miles in length, enters the Parana. The **Colorado** and the **Negro** fall into the Atlantic, southward of the La Plata.

**LAKES.**—**Titica'ca** is a large lake in the **Andes**, nearly 13,000 feet above the sea. Lake **Maracai'bo** (ma-ra-ki'-bo) in the north, is connected with the Gulf of the same name.

Unlike North America, South America has very few lakes.

**CLIMATE.**—About two-thirds of South America lies within the **Torrid Zone**. The climate is generally warmer than that of North America, but not so hot as in the tropical countries of the Old World. Along a great part of the western coast it hardly ever rains, while the fall is very abundant on the north-eastern coast. There are no large burning deserts as in Africa.

At Maranham', on the Brazilian Coast, 276 inches of rain are said to fall annually.

**MINERALS.**—Peru was celebrated for its rich silver mines; gold is obtained in Brazil; Chili produces large quantities of copper. The diamond is found in Brazil.

The precious metals are found, more or less, along the Andes, but, on account of the disturbed state of most of the countries, the mines have been greatly neglected for some years. Salt and coal are met with in various parts.

**VEGETATION.**—South America is distinguished for its dense forests, with giant creepers, and its rich grassy plains. Maize, cassava, plantains, sugar, coffee, cocoa, indigo, and cotton grow in abundance. Mahogany, logwood, and Brazil-wood trees are found in the forests. Palms are numerous. The cow-tree, the ivory-palm, and the cinchona, yielding quinine, are natives of this part of the globe.

The great South American Plain may be divided into the region of the *llanos* or *savannahs*, in the north; the *selvas*, or forest plains, in the centre; and the *pampas* in the south. The *llanos* are covered with rich grass at the close of the rainy season; but the vegetation is destroyed during the hot weather, and the ground opens in wide cracks. The forest plains consist of dense jungle. The *pampas* are covered a great part of the year with tall grass and thistles, which are burnt up in the hot season. The leafless stems of the thistles are levelled by the *pampe'ro*, or south-west wind, from the snowy ranges of the Andes.

The *Victoria Re'gia*, one of the largest flowers known, is found floating upon the rivers of Guiana.

**ANIMALS.**—The llama and alpaca are found on the Andes. The tapir, sloth, ant-eater, and armadillo are other animals, natives of this region. The puma and jaguar are the principal beasts of prey. Horses and cattle, brought from Europe, have multiplied exceedingly, and now run wild in various parts. The condor, a kind of vulture, found on the Andes, is the largest bird of prey; the rhea, a kind of ostrich, is found in the south; humming-birds, some scarcely larger than a bee, are numerous in Brazil and Guiana. Alligators and serpents are plentiful, and some of them are of great size. The insects are remarkable for their number, size, and brilliancy.

**Monkeys** are very numerous, and have strong tails by which they can swing themselves from branch to branch. Bats are likewise very common. The large vampire bat sometimes sucks the blood of horses and mules during the night. One of the most remarkable animals is the *gymno'tus*, or electric eel, which stuns its prey by an electric shock.

**PEOPLE.**—About one-third are European descendants; the remainder are Indians, negroes, and mixed races. The whites speak chiefly Spanish and Portuguese; the Indians have different languages.

Peru was comparatively civilized when discovered by the Spaniards; but most of the other Indians were, as many are still, in a savage condition, subsisting by fishing and the chase. In some places Indians form a considerable proportion of the inhabitants, and much of the labour of the country is performed by them. The negroes were formerly all slaves, but most of them have been emancipated.

In the first half of the 16th century, the Portuguese colonised Brazil, and the Spaniards the rest of the continent. In the early

part of the 19th century the Spanish colonies revolted and set up republics. Brazil also became independent of Portugal. With the exception of Guiana, the States of South America are now all republics. Most of them have suffered greatly from internal dissensions, and are hopelessly in debt.

Education is generally in a backward state. The people are Roman Catholics, except many of the Indians who are still heathen.

#### COLOMBIA, UNITED STATES OF.

'COLOMBIA, formerly called NEW GRANADA, lies east of the Isthmus of Panama, part of which it includes.

The area is about 500,000 square miles, and the population is estimated at 4 millions. It is named after Columbus.

Three ranges of the Andes traverse the west of the country; the eastern districts consist of *llanos*. Cinchona bark, tobacco, cotton, and hides are the chief exports.

TOWNS.—**Bogota**, the capital, is a well-built city, on a plain nearly 9,000 feet above the sea. **Panama**, on the Pacific, and **Aspinwall**, on the Caribbean Sea, connected by a railway, are two ports through which much of the trade with California passes. The **Panama Ship Canal** proved a very costly failure.

#### 'ECUADOR.

'ECUADOR lies nearly under the equator, whence it derives its name. It is bounded on the north by Colombia, on the south by Peru, and on the west by the Pacific.

The area is about 120,000 square miles. The population is about 1,200,000. The **Galapagos Islands** belong to Ecuador.

The east is level, belonging to the basin of the Amazon. The Andes, in the west, forms a double chain, with a valley between. The eastern chain contains **Cotopaxi**, the most terrific volcano in the world.

Flames sometimes rise half a mile above the summit of Cotopaxi. **Pichincha**, near Quito, and **Chimborazo** are other lofty peaks.

TOWNS.—**Quito** (keeto), the capital, is situated nearly under the equator, in a beautiful valley 9,500 feet above the sea. **Guayaquil** (gwi-a-keel), in the south-west, is the principal sea-port. The chief export is cocoa.

In Guayaquil, even the churches are built of bamboos, bound with leather thongs and plastered with mud, to resist the numerous earthquakes.

### VENEZUELA.

**VENEZUELA** is situated to the east of Colombia, between the Caribbean Sea and Brazil. It embraces the basin of the Orinoco, and consists in part of vast llanos, or plains, which support immense herds of cattle, horses, and mules. Coffee and cocoa are the chief exports.

The area is about 600,000 square miles. The population is about 2 millions. The name means *Little Venice*.

In 1819 Venezuela threw off the Spanish yoke, and united with New Granada and Ecuador to form the republic of Colombia. In 1830, the union was dissolved, and three separate republics were established.

**Carac'as**, the capital, is situated near the coast. **La Guayra** is the port of Caracas. **Maracaibo** is a port in the north-west.

Caracas is the birth-place of Bolivar, the leader in the delivery of Colombia from the Spanish dominion.

### GUIANA.

**GUIANA** is bounded on the north by the Atlantic; on the south by Brazil; and the north-west by Venezuela.

The area is about 180,000 square miles, and the population about 850,000.

It is divided into three parts: the east belongs to the French; the middle to the Dutch; and the west to the British.

Guiana is the only country in South America now held by European powers. The half of it belongs to Britain.

The coasts are low and hot. The rainfall is greater than in any other part of the world, except Cherrapunji. Sugar, rum, and Cayenne (ki-en') pepper, are some of the principal exports. Europeans and negroes inhabit the sea-board; the interior is occupied by Indian tribes.

Some of the Indians belong to the savage cannibal race, called Caribs, who gave their name to the Caribbean Sea.

BRITISH GUIANA contains many coolies from India. The capital is **Georgetown**, at the mouth of the Demerara river.

British Guiana is divided into the three districts of **Essequibo**, **Demerara**, and **Berbice** (ber-beece), named from the rivers on which they lie.

DUTCH GUIANA is sometimes called **Surinam'**. The capital is **Paramaribo**, on the Surinam river.

FRENCH GUIANA is noted for its exports of chillies, called Cayenne pepper. The capital is **Cayenne**, on an island.

French Guiana is swampy and unhealthy. It is now used as a convict settlement.

#### BRAZIL.

BRAZIL is bounded on the north by Venezuela and Granada; on the east by the Atlantic; on the south by Paraguay, and on the west by Paraguay, Bolivia, and Peru. It is an immense country, occupying nearly half the continent.

The area is 3,200,000 square miles—nearly twice the size of India. Brazil is the fifth largest state in the world. It received its name from a wood which it produces, called *Braza* (a red coal) by the Portuguese on account of its red colour.

SURFACE.—The north-west consists of the vast *selvas*, or forest plains, watered by the Amazon and its tributaries; the middle and east form a table-land about 2,000 feet above the sea, crossed from north to south by low mountain ranges. The **Organ Mountains** are west of the capital. The south borders on the upper courses of the Paraguay and Parana.

CLIMATE.—The climate is warm, but the heat in general is not excessive.

PRODUCTION.—The diamond mines on the upper part of the Francisco River are among the most productive in the world. Gold is found in the same district in considerable quantities. Only a small part of the country is under cultivation. Coffee, sugar, cotton, tobacco, cocoa, manioc, or cassava, rice, and wheat, with Brazil-wood, and other timber, are the principal vegetable productions. Immense herds of wild cattle roam over the grassy plains.

Meal, prepared from the manioc, is largely used as food. Half the coffee grown in the world is produced in Brazil. Mosquitoes are very troublesome on the rivers.

PEOPLE.—The population is about 14 millions. About one-sixth are whites; the remainder are mixed races, negroes, and Indians. A law was passed in 1871 for the gradual emancipation of the negro slaves. The interior is peopled chiefly by wandering tribes of Indians. The religion is Roman Catholic.

COMMERCE.—Coffee, cotton, sugar, caoutchouc (koo-chook), or india-rubber, and hides are the chief *exports*; cotton goods and metals, the chief *imports*.

Brazil was colonised by the Portuguese about 1530. In 1822 it became an independent state, under an emperor of the royal family of Portugal. It was the only monarchy in America; but in 1889 it became a Republic.

The legislative power is vested in a President, Senate, and Congress.

Like most South American Republics it has been unsettled. The capital was bombarded in 1893.

TOWNS.—**Rio de Janeiro** (ree-o day jan-ay'-ro), the capital, is the largest and most commercial city in South America. Its harbour is one of the finest in the world.

The name, which means January River, was given to it from the river on which it stands, which was discovered on the 1st of January. The population is about 500,000—larger than that of Madras.

**Bahia**<sup>1</sup> (ba-hee'-a), on the Bay of All Saints, was the former capital, and is the second city of the empire. **Pernambuco** and **Maranham'**, or **Maranhao** (ma-ran-ya-ong'), are sea-ports in the north. **Para**, near the southern mouth of the Amazon, exports india-rubber.

#### PERU.

PERU is bounded on the north by Ecuador; on the east by Brazil; on the south by Bolivia; and on the west by the Pacific.

The area is 460,000 square miles. The population is about 3,000,000. The sea-coast is sandy and arid; the centre is traversed by the double range of the Andes, enclosing elevated table-lands; the eastern part consists of immense plains, covered with grass and forests, and watered

<sup>1</sup> The name means the bay.

by the tributaries of the Amazon. On the coast no rain falls, and thunder and lightning are unknown; but heavy fogs are frequent.

The Peruvian Andes contain the sources of the Amazon.

Peru is noted for the *cincho'na* tree, the bark of which yields quinine. Formerly it had rich silver mines. Of late years, the principal *exports* have been guano (gwä'-no), the dung of sea-fowl, used as manure, cubic nitre, a kind of salt, and alpaca wool.

Indians form the greater part of the population. The government is a republic. The country was the seat of the empire of the Incas,<sup>1</sup> at the time of the arrival of the Spaniards.

Peru was, next to Mexico, the most powerful, civilised, and wealthy ~~monarchy of the New World, when discovered by Europeans.~~ It was conquered and plundered by the Spaniards under Pizarro in 1535. It was long subject to Spain, but was declared independent in 1821. Peru lately suffered much in a war with Chili. It lost its guano-producing province.

**Towns.**—**Lima** (lee'ma), the capital, seven miles from the sea, is the oldest Spanish town in South America.

It was founded by Pizarro in 1535, and the cathedral contains his tomb. Its churches have numerous images and crosses, made of gold and silver. The university is the oldest in America.

**Calla'o** (kal-ya'-o) is the port of Lima. A railway from it goes through Lima up to the silver mines of Pasco, 13,720 feet above the sea, the most elevated city in the world. **Arequipa** (a-ra-kee'-pa), inland in the south, is connected by a railway over the Andes, with Lake Titicaca, on which there are now steamers.

Lake Titicaca lies between Peru and Bolivia. It was considered sacred by the ancient Peruvians.

From Lake Titicaca the railway goes north-west to **Cuzco**, upwards of 11,000 feet above the sea, the capital of the Incas, and containing the remains of a magnificent temple of the sun.

#### BOLIVIA.

**BOLIVIA** lies south-east of Peru and is entirely inland. The two chains of the Andes in the centre enclose a large table-land. 13,000 feet in height.

<sup>1</sup> The Peruvian kings were called Incas.

The area is about 480,000 square miles. The population is estimated at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  millions.

The Andes contains the lofty peaks of Sorata and Illimani.

The eastern districts form part of the basin of the Amazon.

BOLIVIA is celebrated for the silver mine of Potosí, once the richest in the world. The country was named in honour of its liberator,<sup>1</sup> General Bolívar. The inhabitants are chiefly Indians. Silver, copper, and nitre are the chief exports.

Bolivia formed part of the Spanish government of Buenos Ayres (bo'-nus ay'-riz) till it achieved its independence with Lower Peru. In 1825 it became a separate republic. It joined Peru in the war with Chili, and lost its coast territory.

TOWNS.—**Sucre** (soo'-ker) is the capital; but **La Paz**, connected by railway with Lake Titicaca, is the largest city. Potosí, 13,000 feet above the sea, is now much decayed.

Silver to the value of 300 crores of rupees has been obtained from the silver mountain of Potosí during the last 300 years. The produce is now comparatively small.

#### STATES OF LA PLATA.<sup>2</sup>

The basin of the La Plata is occupied by three republics—**URUGUAY**, between the Atlantic and the Uruguay; the **ARGENTINE REPUBLIC**, by far the largest, from the Andes eastwards to the Paraguay and Uruguay Rivers; and **PARAGUAY**, between the Parana' and Paraguay Rivers.

	Area in Square Miles.	Population.
Argentine Republic . . . . .	1,125,000	4,000,000
Paraguay . . . . .	98,000	600,000
Uruguay . . . . .	72,000	700,000

SURFACE.—The whole country is generally level and well-watered. In the middle and south there are vast *pampas*, or grassy plains, abounding with wild horses and cattle. The inhabitants of the plains are chiefly Indians, or *Gauchos* (gow'-chos), of Spanish origin, who are expert in using the *lasso*, a leather thong with a noose at one end, by which they capture wild animals. Paraguay is noted

<sup>1</sup> Deliverer: *libero*, to free. <sup>2</sup> *Plata*, Spanish, and *argentum*, Latin; both mean silver; but none is found near.

for the *mate* (mä'-tay) plant, called Paraguay tea, which is largely consumed by the inhabitants. The *exports* are grain, meat, hides, tallow, and bones; the *imports* are cotton goods and metals.

There are several sandy desert tracts in the north. Cattle are so numerous that they have been killed for their tongues alone.

The Spaniards made settlements in the country in 1553. The colonists threw off their allegiance to Spain about 1814, and independent republics were formed. Paraguay was ruled for several years by Doctor Francia, a Creole, who prohibited foreign intercourse. It is one of the smallest States in South America, and is without any sea-coast. Cruguay, formerly a Brazilian province, declared itself in-

**A**ssuncion, the capital of Paraguay, is situated near the junction of the Pilcomay'o and Paraguay.

#### CHILE.<sup>1</sup>

CHILE, or CHILI, occupies a very long narrow strip of territory between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. It extends from Peru to Cape Horn.

The area is about 300,000 square miles; the population is estimated at 3 millions.

Chile contains the volcanic peak of **Aconcagua**. Rain seldom falls in the north. Copper and silver are produced in considerable quantities. Maize, wheat, vines, and olives, are largely cultivated. Towards the south there are forests of magnificent pine-trees. The principal *exports* are nitre, copper, and silver; the *imports*, cotton goods, sugar, and cattle.

<sup>1</sup> Land of Snow.

Chile was conquered by the Spaniards in 1541, but they vainly endeavoured to subdue the Araucanian Indians in the south. The country became an independent republic in 1818, and is one of the most prosperous states in South America.

**Santia'go**,<sup>1</sup> the capital, is an inland city, in a fertile district. **Valparaiso**<sup>2</sup> (val-pa-ri-so), the port of Santiago, is a large commercial city. **Coquimbo** (ko-keem'-bo), a sea-port in the north, has large exports of copper.

**Chiloe** (cheel-o-a) is a damp, wooded island in the south.

**Juan Fernandez** is a small island west of Valparaiso, on which Alexander Selkirk, a sailor, lived alone for four years. His adventures suggested the story of "Robinson Crusoe."

### PATAGONIA.

PATAGONIA occupies the south of America. It is a cold, stony, barren country, thinly inhabited by savage Indians, some of whom are tall. Westerly winds and almost constant rain prevail. The Indians live much on horseback, and subsist chiefly on the flesh of wild animals.

It is included in the Argentine Republic.

**TIERRA DEL FUEGO** is a group of islands, separated from Patagonia by the Strait of Magellan. It is occupied by a few squalid,<sup>3</sup> miserable Indians.

The eastern half belongs to the Argentine Republic, and the western half to Chile.

**Cape Horn**, on **Hermit Island**, is a steep dark rock, about 600 feet in height, lashed by almost constant storms and tempests.

The **Falkland Islands**, east of Tierra del Fuego, belong to Britain. They contain a few settlers.

### CHIEF COAST TOWNS OF AMERICA.

**NORTH AMERICA**.—**East Coast**: Halifax, Boston, New York, Brooklyn, Philadelphia, Baltimore, Charleston, Mobile, New Orleans, Vera Cruz, Campeachy, Belize, Truxillo; **West Coast**: Acapulco, San Francisco.

**SOUTH AMERICA**.—**East Coast**: Aspinwall, La Guayra, Maracaibo, George Town, Paramaribo, Cayenne, Maranham, Pernambuco, Bahia, Rio de Janeiro, Monte Video, Buenos Ayres; **West Coast**: Valparaiso, Coquimbo, Callao, Guayaquil, Panama.

<sup>1</sup> St. James. <sup>2</sup> Valley of Paradise. <sup>3</sup> Dirty.

## OCEANIA.

The **Pacific Ocean** is the largest on the globe, and covers one-third of the earth's surface. It is studded with numerous islands, forming a great division called **OCEANIA**. The entire area exceeds 4 millions of square miles, or nearly thrice the size of India. The population is estimated at 40 millions.

The Pacific Ocean has northern and southern equatorial currents flowing westward, separated by counter currents flowing eastward. The northern current bends round China and Japan.

Oceania is divided into **MALAYSIA**, in the north-west; **AUSTRALASIA**, in the south; **MELANESIA**, **MICRONESIA**, and **POLYNESIA**, in the east.

## MALAYSIA.

**MALAYSIA**, called also the East Indian Archipelago, comprises the **Sunda Islands** in the south-west; **Borneo** in the middle; the **Philippine Islands** in the north; with **Celebes** and the **Molucca Islands** in the east.

This division is, by some, considered to belong to Asia, increasing its area to about 17 millions of square miles, and reducing that of Oceania to 3 millions.

This division is so called because the islands contain many **Malays**. The original inhabitants, however, were savage negro races, who have been driven into the interior by the **Malays**.

The Asiatic Islands are noted for their rich vegetation and spices.

The islands are generally mountainous, and except some in the middle, almost all are volcanic. Gold and diamonds are found in Borneo; good coal is obtained in Labuan, a small island belonging to the English. The climate is warm and moist, occasioning a very luxuriant vegetation. Pepper, nutmegs, cloves, rice, coffee, sugar, and indigo, grow in abundance. The tiger, rhinoceros, elephant, and orang-outang, are found in many of the islands, and there are numerous birds possessing the richest plumage.

The **Malays** have brown complexions, and long black hair. Their houses are often made of bamboos raised on pillars, and ascended by ladders. The **Malays** are skilful boatmen. Some of them engage

in commerce ; others are addicted to piracy. They are a very passionate people, and sometimes end their lives by "running-a-muck." A Malay who has resolved on this step takes opium, and then loosing his hair, and drawing his crease, or dagger, rushes into the street crying, "Kill ! kill !" and strikes at every one he meets in his furious career till he is slain. The Malays live under the government of petty sultans, and generally profess the Muhammadan religion.

The **Sunda Islands** include Suma'tra, Java, and numerous small adjacent islands.

**SUMATRA** lies on both sides of the equator, south-west of Malaya, from which it is separated by the Strait of Malacca. It is a large island, about six times the size of Ceylon.

Chains of mountains traverse its whole length. **Mount Ophir** is a lofty peak near the equator. A single flower, three feet and a half in diameter, is found growing out of a species of climbing plant, without either stem or leaves. It has been called *Raffle'sia Arnoldi*, after Sir Stamford Raffles, the founder of Singapore.

A tribe in the interior, called *Battas*, are cannibals.<sup>1</sup> Persons are sometimes eaten alive. The flesh is consumed raw, with salt and spices. The northern parts of the island are held by native chiefs, of whom the Sultan of **Acheen** is one of the principal. The Dutch are endeavouring to extend their authority over the whole island. Their principal settlements are **Padang'** and **Bencoo'len**, on the west coast, and **Palembang** on the east coast. Pepper is the chief *export*.

**Banca** is an island off the south-east coast of Sumatra, belonging to the Dutch, noted for its very rich tin mines.

**JAVA**, about twice the size of Ceylon, is separated from Sumatra by the Strait of Sunda. It is traversed by a chain of mountains, containing about forty volcanoes. The soil is very fertile. Coffee, rice, sugar, pepper, and cinchona, are produced in large quantities.

In the year 1772 one of the largest volcanoes was swallowed up, carrying with it several villages. In 1883 a terrible earthquake, with volcanic eruptions, took place in the Strait of Sunda. The islet of **Krakatoa** was shattered.

<sup>1</sup> Persons who eat human flesh.

Java is the most populous island of the Archipelago, and the chief seat of the Dutch power in the east. **Bata'via**, on the north-west coast, is a large commercial city, the residence of the Dutch Governor-General.

The population of the island is about 23 millions. There are remains of Hindu and Buddhist temples: but Muhammadanism is now generally professed. **Samarang** and **Suraba'ya** are flourishing towns on the north coast.

**Bali**, **Sumbaw'a**, **Sandalwood Island**, **Flores**, and **Timor**, are islands to the east of Java.

The inhabitants of Bali still profess Hinduism. Sumbawa is remarkable for the volcano of **Tomboro**. In 1811, a fearful eruption took place, when the explosions<sup>1</sup> were heard in Sumatra at the distance of a thousand miles.

The half of Timor belongs to the Portuguese—their sole possession in Oceania.

**BORNEO**, twelve times the size of Ceylon, is the fourth largest island in the world. It lies under the equator, to the north-east of Java. The interior is little known, but is supposed to be mountainous. **Kini Balu**, nearly 14,000 feet in height, is the highest point. The climate is agreeable, the heat being tempered by sea-breezes; the soil is fertile, and the island is rich in gold and diamonds. The forests contain the orang-outang, a large species of ape, which forms a shelter in the trees. The original inhabitants, called *Dyaks*, are found chiefly in the interior. Malays and Chinese are numerous on the coast.

There is a nominal sultan of **Brunei**,<sup>2</sup> in the north; but a number of petty chiefs are the actual rulers. The Dutch claim the greater part of the island. **Pontianak**, in the west, is their chief settlement. **Sarawak**, south-west of Brunei, is under an English raja. **North Borneo** is under an English Company, which also governs **Labuan**, a small island belonging to Britain.

The *Dyaks* are a barbarous race, wearing the skulls of their enemies round their girdles as ornaments, upon occasions of public rejoicing. No young man can marry till he has presented to his intended wife at least one head in token of his courage. Sir James Brooke, Raja of

<sup>1</sup> *Burstings* with loud noise. <sup>2</sup> The island derived its name from Brunei.

Sarawak, did much to check this savage custom, and to put down piracy, which is very prevalent in the Archipelago.

The **PHILIPPINE ISLANDS** are a numerous and fertile group to the north-east of Borneo, nominally belonging to Spain. The largest are **Luzon'**, in the north; **Mindana'o**, in the south; and **Palawan'**, in the south-west. Rice, sugar, tobacco, and hemp, are the principal exports. **Manilla**, the Spanish capital, is situated in Luzon, and is noted for its cheroots.

The Philippine Islands were discovered by Magellan in 1521, and named after Philip II. of Spain. Magellan, whose ship first sailed round the globe, was murdered on one of the islands. Luzon is more than twice the size of Ceylon. Many of the inhabitants are savages.

The **Sulu Islands**, south of the Philippines, are a group of small islands, peopled by Muhammadan tribes, notorious for piracy. Pearls are found in the adjacent seas.

**CELEBES** is an island thrice the size of Ceylon, to the east of Borneo, consisting of four long peninsulas, separated by deep gulfs. It produces large quantities of rice, and edible<sup>1</sup> birds' nests are exported to China. The **Bugis**, the principal native tribe, are superior to all the other races found in Malaysia. The Dutch possess the settlement of **Macas'sar**, upon the south-west coast, and exercise some control over the island.

The **MOLUCCAS**, or **SPICE ISLANDS**, to the east of Celebes, also belong to the Dutch. They include **Gilo'lo** in the north; **Ceram**, **Amboyna**, and **Ternate**, in the middle; and the **Banda**, or **Nutmeg Islands**, in the south. They are distinguished for their nutmegs, mace, and cloves. The Dutch, to whom they belong, guard them with great care, endeavouring to confine the cultivation of the spices to these islands.

**Banda**, 20 miles in circumference, is one grove of nutmeg trees. Amboyna became the exclusive seat of the clove cultivation, as the Dutch extirpated the tree from the other islands. These spices are now, however, raised in other islands and districts.

Cloves are the unopened flower-buds of a kind of tree. Mace is the covering of nutmegs.

<sup>1</sup> Able to be eaten: *edo*, to eat.

## AUSTRALASIA.

AUSTRALASIA (Southern Asia) consists of various islands lying south-east of Malaysia. Of these the largest are **Australia**, **Tasmania**, and **New Zealand**.

## AUSTRALIA.

AUSTRALIA (Southern Land), the largest island in the world, or the smallest continent, lies to the south-east of Asia, on both sides of the Tropic of Capricorn. It is bounded on the east by the Pacific Ocean; on the west and north-west by the Indian Ocean; and on the south by the Southern Ocean. The area is about 3 million square miles, or only one-fourth less than that of Europe.

Its greatest length from east to west is about 2,500 miles; its breadth from north to south is nearly 2,000 miles. It is sometimes called the Island Continent. It was discovered by the Dutch in 1606. They called it New Holland.

**SURFACE.**—The coast has few large indentations. The **Gulf of Carpentaria** is in the north; **Shark Bay**, in the west; and the **Great Australian Bight**, in the south. A great part of the island is yet unexplored. A chain of mountains seems to extend along the coast, while the interior spreads out into low, flat plains. The **Australian Alps**, in the south-east, are the highest range yet discovered.

Australia most resembles Africa in shape.

**CAPES.**—**Cape York** is the most northerly point; **Cape Howe** is at the south-eastern corner; and **Cape Leeuwin** at the south-western.

**Torres Strait**, separating Australia and New Guinea, is 90 miles broad.

The great **Barrier Reef** extends for 1,200 miles along the north-eastern coast, at an average distance from the shore of 30 miles. Upon its outward side, the reef rises perpendicularly from the sea.

**Mount Kosciusko**, the highest measured peak of the Australian Alps, is only 7,176 feet above the sea. The **Blue Mountains** are another range to the north of the Australian Alps.

The **Murray**, the largest river, with the **Darling**, its principal tributary, drains the western slopes of the

Australian Alps and Blue Mountains. Lake Torrens is a shallow salt lake in South Australia, shaped like a horseshoe, which dries up during the hot season.

Most rivers in the interior dry up in salt plains or lakes.

**CLIMATE.**—The northern and central parts are hot and dry; the southern districts have a milder climate, but are sometimes visited by scorching winds from the interior.

The northern half of the island lies within the Torrid Zone. The heat is increased by the dry atmosphere, the sandy soil, and absence of forests. Severe droughts sometimes occur. The cold season in India is the warmest in Australia.

**MINERALS.**—The gold-fields are among the richest in the world. There are likewise valuable silver and copper mines; coal is found in several parts.

Gold was first discovered in Australia in 1851. The value of the annual produce at first was about 12 crores of rupees; it is now less than half that amount.

**VEGETATION.**—A great part of the interior consists of sandy deserts, but there are extensive tracts of fine pasture and forest land. Ferns and gum trees are abundant. Wheat, oats, flax, tobacco, and the vine, are grown in the south; rice, cotton, and sugar are raised in the north.

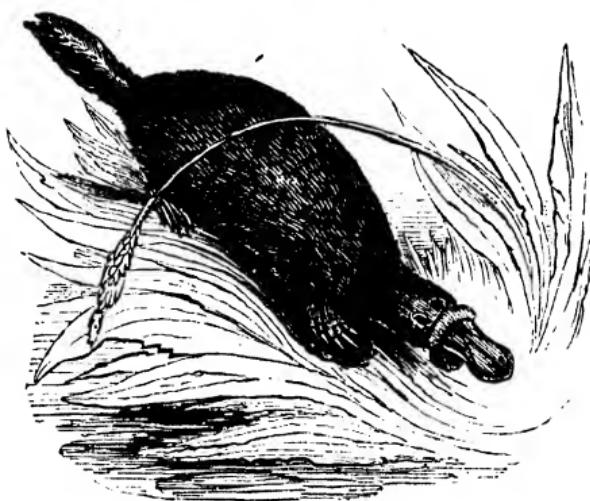
Many trees have hard, horny leaves, which are attached, not horizontally, but vertically. Some gum trees are of great size.

**ANIMALS.**—The native quadrupeds are almost all pouched, and generally confined to Australia and New Guinea. The largest is the kangaroo. The ornithorhynchus<sup>1</sup> has a bill like a duck, webbed feet with claws, a body covered with fur, and a broad, flat tail. Australian swans are black. Sheep, cattle, and horses, introduced by European settlers, are now numerous. Rabbits have so multiplied as to be a great pest.

The camel has lately been introduced.

**PEOPLE.**—The original inhabitants consist of wandering savages. The first European settlers were convicts, transported from England to Botany Bay, on the east coast,

<sup>1</sup> Or-ni-tho-ring'-kus, bird-snout: *ornithos*, bird; *rhynchos*, snout, beak.



ORNITHORHYNCHUS.

in 1788. Numbers have since been added; but latterly the population has greatly increased by emigrants from Britain, employed in sheep-farming, agriculture, and gold-digging.

Wool, gold, wheat, and copper, are the principal *exports*. Some horses are sent to India. Woollen and cotton goods, metals, sugar, and tea, are the chief *imports*. Australia is connected with India by telegraph.

The natives of Australia are among the most degraded on the face of the earth. They live on wild animals and roots. They are unacquainted with bows and arrows, but they throw a bent piece of wood, called a boomerang. It is estimated that their number is only about 50,000, and they are decreasing.

Australia was first named NEW HOLLAND by the Dutch. Botany Bay, so called on account of the number of new plants found on its shores, was discovered by Captain Cook in 1770.

Britain is the only nation that has planted any settlements in Australia, and the whole island is considered to be under the English crown. The colonies are New South Wales, Queensland, Victoria, South Australia, and Western Australia. The entire population exceeds 3 millions.

NEW SOUTH WALES lies on the east side of Australia.,

The Blue Mountains traverse the colony from north to south, about 40 miles from the sea. Sheep-farming and gold-digging are the principal occupations of the people.

**Sydney**, on Port Jackson, is the seat of Government. **Paramatta**, on Port Jackson, is the oldest town in Australia. **Silvertown** has rich silver mines.

New South Wales, the oldest colony, is more than double the size of the Madras Presidency. In 1891 the population was 1,100,000.

**VICTORIA**, divided from New South Wales by the Murray River, includes the south-eastern extremity of the island. The climate is pleasant, and the soil fertile. Victoria is the principal gold-producing colony of Australia; and exports more wool than any other British possession.

**Melbourne**, on the Yarra Yarra near its mouth at Port Phillip, is the capital, and the largest town in Oceania. It has been called the "Queen of the South." It was founded in 1837, and now contains 500,000 inhabitants. **Geelong** is a flourishing town, south-west of Melbourne. **Ballarat**, in the west, in one of the richest gold-fields, is next in size to Melbourne.

**Victoria**, about the size of the Central Provinces, is the smallest, but at present the most populous, of the Australian colonies. Prior to 1850, it formed part of New South Wales, and was known as the Port Phillip District. The discovery of its rich gold-fields brought numerous settlers. The population in 1891 amounted to 1,140,000.

**SOUTH AUSTRALIA** formerly included only a part of the south coast; it now comprises the entire centre of the island. Wheat is the most valuable product; but wine-making and oil-making, from olives, are also important. There are some rich copper mines. Horses for India are raised in the north.

The capital is **Adelaide**, in the Gulf of St. Vincent. **Palmerston**, in **Port Darwin**, is the northern terminus of the overland telegraph.

South Australia is about half the size of India. The southern districts are fertile. It contains **Lake Torrens**, **Lake Eyre**, and other small lakes. The northern parts are dry and sterile. The population in 1891 amounted to 815,000.

**WEST AUSTRALIA** is the largest of the Australian colonies, but it has at present the smallest population. Much of

it is a desert, with salt marshes and lakes. It is the nearest settlement to India. Sheep-farming is the chief occupation. The capital is **Perth**, on the Swan River, on the south-west coast. **Albany**, on King George's Sound, in the south, is a coaling-station for mail steamers.

It is about two-thirds of the size of India, but in 1891 the European population amounted only to 53,000. The settlement was formed in 1829. It was first called the Swan River Settlement.

(QUEENSLAND, occupying the north-east of the island, is the newest settlement. It is warmer than the other divisions, and grows rice, sugar, and cotton. The chief town is **Brisbane**, in the south-east, near the mouth of the Brisbane River.

Queensland is nearly half the size of India. In 1891, the population amounted to 400,000. It was separated from New South Wales in 1856.

LARGEST TOWNS.—Melbourne, 491,000 ; Sydney, 383,000 ; Adelaide, 133,000 ; Brisbane (North and South) 49,000.

TASMANIA, or **Van Diemen's Land**, is an island about the size of Ceylon, to the south of Australia, from which it is separated by **Bass Strait**. It is a hilly country, with a temperate climate. It was long a penal<sup>1</sup> settlement, but it now contains numerous colonists from Britain. **Hobart Town**, on the south-east coast, is the capital. **Launceston** (lans'-tun) is situated on the north side of the island.

It was named Van Diemen's Land after the Governor of Batavia. It is now generally called *Tasmania*, from Tasman, a Dutchman, who discovered it in 1642. It is chiefly an agricultural colony. The population amounts to about 146,000.

**Norfolk Island**, about 1,000 miles north-east of Sydney, was a penal settlement for some time. It is noted for its lofty pine trees.

NEW ZEALAND, south-east of Australia, consists of two islands, each about twice the size of Ceylon, separated by **Cook Strait**, with a small island in the south. Mountains traverse the islands, having peaks covered with perpetual snow. There are several volcanoes and numerous hot springs ; earthquakes sometimes occur. The climate is pleasant, and the soil is very fertile. The Middle Island contains rich gold-fields. Ferns are numerous,

<sup>1</sup> Used for punishment.

some with roots used as food, and the islands are noted for a valuable kind of flax. The natives, called Maories (mouries), are of the Malay race, but tall, active, and intelligent. They formerly tattooed<sup>1</sup> their bodies, and were addicted to bloodshed and cannibalism; but through the labours of Missionaries, civilization has spread among them, cannibalism has ceased, and great numbers have embraced Christianity.

European settlers now form the great bulk of the population. Wool, frozen meat, and gold, are the chief *exports*.



TATTOOED NEW ZEALANDER.

**TOWNS.**—**Wellington**, on Cook Strait, is the seat of Government. **Auckland**, also on North Island, was the former capital. **Dunedin**, on the east coast of Middle Island, is in the Province of **Otago**, containing the gold-fields.

New Zealand was discovered by Tasman in 1642; but the first survey was made by Captain Cook in 1770, who passed through the strait which bears his name. **Mount Cook**, in Middle Island, is 13,200 feet above the sea. The small island in the south is called

<sup>1</sup> Marked by pricking in colours.

**Stewart Island.** Through the exertions of the Rev. S. Marsden, of New South Wales, Missionaries went to the islands in 1814. New Zealand was made a British Colony in 1840. The number of the Maories is estimated at 40,000. In 1891 the population amounted to about 6 lakhs.

All the Colonies possess independent legislatures elected by the people.

### MELANESIA.<sup>1</sup>

MELANESIA includes the islands to the north-east of Australia. It is so called from the dark-coloured races by which it is inhabited.



NATIVES OF NEW GUINEA.

NEW GUINEA, or PAPUA, the third island of the world in size, is situated to the north of Australia, from which it is

<sup>1</sup> *Melas*, black; *nēsos*, island.

separated by **Torres Strait**. It lies immediately south of the equator, and is more than twice the size of the Madras Presidency. The interior is mountainous. Quadrupeds are pouched as in Australia. The island is noted for the beautiful bird of paradise. The western inhabitants are Papuans, or Oceanic negroes, in a savage state; the eastern belong to the Malay family.

The Dutch claim the west of the Island; England has annexed the south-east coast, and Germany the north-east.

Torres Strait was discovered by Torres, a Portuguese, in 1606. **Mount Owen Stanley**, in the east, is 13,205 feet in height. *Papua* means *curly-haired*. The hair of the people grows in tufts.

The **Fly River** is supposed to be the largest in the island. **Port Moresby** is the principal British settlement.

There are numerous clusters of islands to the east and south-east of New Guinea, as **New Ireland**, **New Britain**, the **New Hebrides**, **New Caledonia**, and the **Fiji** (fee-jee) **Islands**. Many of the inhabitants are cannibals. Christianity has been introduced into some of the groups.

The French have settlements in **New Caledonia**. The **Fiji Islands** are now under Britain. They contain European settlers. Cotton and cocoa-nut oil are exported. Germany lately annexed New Ireland, New Britain, and some smaller islands, calling the whole the **Bismarck Archipelago**. The northern **Solomon Islands** are under Germany; the southern are under England.

### MICRONESIA.<sup>1</sup>

**MICRONESIA**, the *Region of Little Islands*, embraces a large number of small islands to the north-east of Melanasia. The **Ladrone**, or *Marianne Islands*, and the *Carolines* are two of the principal groups.

The **Ladrone Islands**, discovered by Magellan in 1521, were so named by him from a word signifying thieves, on account of the pilfering propensities of the natives. They were afterwards called the *Marianne Islands* in honour of a queen of Spain. The *Carolines* were named after Charles II. of Spain.

<sup>1</sup> *Mikros*, small; *nisos*, island.

## POLYNESIA.

POLYNESIA (Many Islands) comprises the numerous groups of islands, which lie in the Pacific, between Malaysia and Australasia on the west, and America on the east. The larger islands contain lofty mountains, some of which are volcanoes; while other islands, reared by the coral insect, are low, and almost level with the surface of the ocean.

The coral islands are generally of circular or semicircular form, consisting of a low belt or reef enclosing a lagoon of smooth water, connected by an opening in the reef with the ocean outside. In many cases a belt of coral surrounds, at some distance, a mountainous island, with a channel of deep water enclosed between the reef and the shore.

As it has been proved that the coral insect cannot exist at a greater depth than sixty feet, it is supposed that the circular coral islands which rise from fathomless parts of the ocean, have been formed on the summits of mountains which have gradually subsided<sup>1</sup> below the surface.

CLIMATE.—The climate is very pleasant, the heat being moderated by the sea. The soil is in general fertile, and covered with rich verdure. The bread-fruit, cocoa-nut, yam, sweet-potato, taro root, and plantain, are the principal vegetable productions. Hogs, dogs, and rats, are the only native quadrupeds.

Dogs are not found in some of the islands. When introduced by Missionaries, they were called at first "barking pigs;" horses were called "man-carrying pigs." The native cloth is made by beating the bark of certain trees until it becomes soft and pliable.

PEOPLE.—The inhabitants belong to the Malay race, but are tall and well-formed. They are in general indolent; in war they are courageous, fierce, and cruel. Their contests have been carried on with such barbarity<sup>2</sup> that some islands have been almost depopulated.<sup>3</sup> Infanticide exists to a great extent; human sacrifices are offered to their hideous<sup>4</sup> idols; and cannibalism prevails in several groups. Christianity has, however, been introduced into some of the islands, and made great progress.

<sup>1</sup> Sunk: *sab*, down; *sido*, to sit. <sup>2</sup> Cruelty. <sup>3</sup> Deprived of people: *de*, without; *populus*, people. <sup>4</sup> Ugly.

The **SANDWICH ISLANDS**, near the Tropic of Cancer, about 3,000 miles west of Mexico, are the most important of the Polynesian Islands. **Hawaii** (ha-wi'-ee), the largest island, about one-fifth of the size of Ceylon, is remarkable for its lofty peaks. About 60 years ago the inhabitants were savages, without any written language. Now they are civilized; schools and churches are found everywhere; the Bible has been printed; and all have embraced Christianity. The capital is **Honolu'lu**, much frequented by shipping. The government at present is unsettled.

The Sandwich Islands were discovered in 1778 by Captain Cook, who was afterwards killed at Hawaii. They were named after Lord Sandwich, then first Lord of the Admiralty.

**Mowna Kea**, the highest mountain in Oceania, is 13,953 feet above the sea. **Kilauea**, or **Mowna Loa** mountain, is the largest active volcano in the world.

The **TON'GA** or **FRIENDLY ISLANDS** lie nearly 2,000 miles east of Australia. The **SAMO'AS**, or **NAVIGATOR'S<sup>1</sup> ISLANDS**, lie to the north-east of the Tonga Islands.

The Tonga Islands were discovered by Captain Cook, who called them the Friendly Islands, on account of the apparent kindness of the natives. The Navigator's Islands were so named because the inhabitants seemed skilful in the management of their canoes.

The **SOCIETY ISLANDS** lie nearly midway between Australia and South America. They are lofty and beautiful, and next to the Sandwich Islands in importance. **Tahiti** (ta-hee'-te) is the largest, and remarkable as the first place in Polynesia to which Missionaries were sent. All the inhabitants have embraced Christianity. The native government, a few years ago, was forcibly placed under France. The islands have now been annexed.

They were named after the Royal Society of Britain.

The **MARQUESAS** (mar-kay'-sas), a group to the north-east of the Society Islands, are now subject to France.

They were so named from the *Marquis de Mendo'za*, the viceroy of Peru, who sent out their discoverer, Mendana (Men-dan'-ya). <sup>1</sup>

The **LOW ARCHIPELAGO** consists of an immense number of small islands to the eastward of the Society Islands. It is sometimes called the *Dangerous*<sup>2</sup> Archipelago on account of the difficult navigation.

<sup>1</sup> *Navigator*, sailor.

## ANTARCTICA.

Several extensive tracts of land have been discovered in the Antarctic Ocean towards the South Pole, which are supposed to form portions of a great southern continent. SOUTH VICTORIA was discovered by Sir James Ross in 1841. It lies to the south of New Zealand, and extends nearer towards the South Pole than any other land yet known. Its coast rises in lofty mountains, covered with glaciers and perpetual snow. Mount Er'ebus, a volcano, is 12,400 feet high. The flames sometimes rise 2,000 feet above the crater,<sup>1</sup> lighting up the darkness which reigns over this desolate region in the long nights of winter.

The lands of Antarctica are destitute of human beings, but the shores are frequented by the albatross, and great numbers of penguins<sup>2</sup>; seals, walruses,<sup>3</sup> and whales, abound in the neighbouring seas.

Graham's Land approaches within 600 miles of Tierra del Fuego. The South Shetland and South Georgian Islands are groups to the north-east of Graham's Land. Kerguelen Island is about midway between Africa and Australia.

The various countries of the earth have been described. Many of them present scenes of surpassing beauty, and are rich in everything that can minister to the wants of man. But it is sad to think that sin and sorrow everywhere prevail. Most of the earth's inhabitants have risen in rebellion against the one true God, the Creator of all things; and instead of obeying the command to love as brethren, they have too often oppressed and enslaved each other. It is the duty of everyone to do all in his power to benefit those around him. Let us first seek forgiveness from our heavenly Father, through Jesus Christ, for all our past sins, and ask the help of God's Holy Spirit that hereafter we may always do what is right. The best way of doing good is by example. Let the reader be kind to the poor and despised; let him be upright, truthful, modest, and

<sup>1</sup> The bowl-shaped hollow on the top of a volcano: *crater*, a bowl. <sup>2</sup> A kind of bird. <sup>3</sup> Large animals, sometimes called the sea-horse.

respectful ; let him never do what his conscience condemns, to please even his dearest friends ; let him seek to instruct the ignorant and to help forward every undertaking for the benefit of his country, with earnest daily prayer to God for His blessing.

## APPENDIX.

## I. MISCELLANEOUS FACTS.

**Continents.**—Asia is the largest Continent ; Europe is the smallest. Asia is the most populous Continent ; South America has fewest inhabitants ; Europe is the most densely peopled. In proportion to its size, Europe has most coast line ; Africa has the least. Europe is the most civilized Continent ; Africa is the least civilized.

**Oceans.**—The Pacific is the largest Ocean ; the Arctic is the smallest. The Atlantic is the most irregularly shaped, the deepest, and the most frequented by shipping.

**Peninsulas.**—Arabia is the largest Peninsula ; Malaya is the longest ; Italy is the richest. Peninsulas point to the south, except Jütland and Yucatan.

**Islands.**—The largest Island is Australia, sometimes called a Continent ; Greenland, New Guinea, Borneo, Madagascar, Sumatra, Nippon, Great Britain, Celebes, and Java, are next in size.

**Mountains.**—The Himalayas are the highest mountain-chain ; the Andes are the longest. Mount Everest is the loftiest peak. Cotopaxi is the most terrific volcano.

**Rivers.**—The Amazon is the largest river ; the Missouri-Mississippi is the longest. The largest waterfall is Niagara.

**Lakes.**—The Caspian is the largest salt-water lake ; Superior is the largest fresh-water lake ; the Dead Sea is the lowest lake.

**Countries.**—Tibet is the highest country ; Holland is the lowest. The British Empire is the largest ; the Chinese Empire is the most populous. The six principal European powers are Great Britain, the German Empire, Russia, France, Austria-Hungary, and Italy.

**Cities.**—London is the largest city in the world, Paris is the second. New York is the largest city in America ; Cairo is the largest in Africa. The population of many of the cities in Asia is uncertain. Melbourne is the largest city in Oceania.

## II. PRODUCTIONS OF THE EARTH.

The principal products of each country have already been described. The following lists mention in which countries some of the most important articles are chiefly found.

## MINERALS.

**Iron.**—This metal is found in nearly all countries. The largest quantity is produced in Britain. Swedish iron is noted for its excellence.

**Lead.**—Spain, Britain, the United States.

**Tin.**—England, Spain, Banca, Malaya, Australia.

**Copper.**—Spain, Chili, Russia, Australia, South Africa, Britain.

**Silver.**—Mexico and the countries on the Andes, Nevada, &c.

**Gold.**—Australia, California, Russia, New Zealand, Brazil, &c.

**Mercury, or Quicksilver.**—Spain, Austria, Germany, Italy.

**Coal.**—The United States, Britain, China, Belgium, and many other countries.

**Kerosine Oil.**—United States, Baku, Burma.

**Sulphur.**—Italy.

## VEGETABLES.

**Rice.**—China, South-Eastern Asia, India, the Southern United States, and other hot, moist countries.

**Millet.**—Cultivated in many hot, dry countries.

**Maize.**—The United States, Mexico, Central America, &c.

**Wheat.**—Cultivated in many countries, as Russia, the United States, Britain, India, &c.

**Oats, Barley, Rye.**—Cultivated chiefly in countries too cold for wheat.

**Yams.**—West Africa, West India Islands, &c.

**Potatoes.**—European countries, the United States, &c.

**Sugar (Cane).**—China, the United States, Brazil, India, West India Islands, Mauritius, &c.

**Sugar (Beet-root).**—France, Belgium, Germany.

**Tea.**—China, Japan, India, Ceylon.

**Coffee.**—Brazil, Java, Ceylon, India, Arabia, &c.

**Spices.**—Malaysia, Ceylon, India, the West Indies.

**Tobacco.**—The warmer parts of America, Turkey, India, the Philippines, &c.

**Opium.**—India, Turkey, Persia, China.

**The Vine.**—Spain, Portugal, France, South Germany, Italy, the United States, &c.

**Palms.**—In tropical countries, where water is available.

**Cotton.**—The United States, China, India, Brazil, Egypt, &c.

**Jute.**—India.

**Hemp and Flax.**—Russia, Prussia, Belgium, Holland, &c.

**Oil Seeds.**—India, Russia, Germany.

**Indigo.**—India and Central America.

**Timber.**—Canada, United States, Russia, Norway and Sweden, Burma, &c.

#### ANIMAL PRODUCTS.

**Wool.**—Australia, Germany, Spain, South Africa, &c.

**Silk.**—China, Italy, France, India, Turkey, &c.

**Hides.**—India, United States, Russia, South America, &c.

**Tallow.**—United States, Australia, South America, Russia, &c.

**Pearls.**—Ceylon, Persian Gulf, South America.

**Ostrich Feathers.**—Africa and Arabia.

**Ivory.**—Africa.

### III. UNIVERSITY EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

The Entrance Examination Papers of the three Indian Universities for five years will give candidates a good idea of what they are expected to answer.

One of the chief causes of failure in Geography is the neglect of *maps*. The position of places is remembered far more easily when maps are properly studied. The eye is more retentive than the ear. Atlases may now be obtained for a few annas, and every student should have one.

It is not enough merely to *look at* maps; the student should be able to draw them, with tolerable accuracy, from memory. No lesson is thoroughly mastered till this can be done.

In map-drawing, first trace the general boundaries. Next mark the mountains, if any. This may be done simply by drawing thick lines. Then indicate the rivers. The subdivisions may afterwards be shown and the towns marked.

### CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY.

#### GENERAL AND PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

CALENDAR, 1884-85.

1. What is meant by local time? Show how it is that in going round the world a traveller gains or loses a day. When it is 1<sup>o</sup> A.M. at Peking, what time is it at New York, the longitude of the former being 116° 28' east, and that of the latter 74° 1' west.

2. Name and give the positions of (1) the rivers of Africa, (2) the lakes of North America, (3) the principal mountains of Europe, (4) the peninsulas of Asia.

3. Draw a map of India, giving the limits and the names of the subordinate British Administrations, of the feudatory states, and of the French and Portuguese possessions. State also the greatest length and breadth; the area, and the population of India.

*Note.*—Candidates may answer this question without drawing the map; but in that case only two-thirds of the marks will be allowed.

4. Mention in order the countries, capes, and rivers that would be passed by a steamer sailing along the coast of Europe from Odessa to St. Petersburg. Mention also the seas, straits, and oceans through which it would successively pass.

5. Where are the following places and for what are they specially known:—The Hague, Mosul, Melbourne, Lhassa, Leipzig, Yokohama, Sheffield, Kiev?

6. Define estuary, oasis, plateau, water-shed, volcano, geyser, avalanche, bar.

7. “The formation of a river delta may be regarded as a struggle between the land and sea.” Explain and illustrate this statement.

8. State the causes of winds. Describe the monsoons, anti-monsoons, the trade winds, and the anti-trade winds.

9. What are oceanic currents? Name the principal currents of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Describe the course of the Gulf Stream.

10. Trace out the water-shed of the Mahanadi. Show how the floods of the Indus and of the Mahanadi arise from different causes.

#### CALENDAR 1885-86.

1. Show as accurately as possible the position of the chief towns in the basins of the Indus and the Ganges by drawing:—

(a.) A map of the Indus with its tributaries.

(b.) A map of the Ganges with its tributaries.

2. If a ship were to sail along the coast from Amoy to Karachi, name in order—

1st. The chief seaports that would be passed.

2nd. The mouths of the principal rivers.

3. Describe briefly the empire of Japan; its climate, people, animals, vegetable productions, trade, and chief towns.

4. Name the principal states of the German Empire with the chief town in each.

5. Name one river and three towns in each of the following countries; give the general direction in which each river flows, and mention some fact concerning as many towns as you can:—Italy, Spain, Belgium, Persia, Afghanistan, Egypt, Australia, Brazil, Canada.

6. Write explanatory notes on: The Pilgrim Fathers; Maoris; Geysers; Flamingo; Mormons; Mahogany; Armadillo; Lapps; The Khedive; Magyars; Hovas; Copts.

7. In what countries are the following towns:—Lima, Cardiff, Honolulu, Kiev, The Hague, Merv, Smyrna, Batavia, Aurungabad, San Francisco, Limerick, Belize, Algiers, Baltimore, Wick?

8. If a few lumps of ice are placed in a glass of water, it is found that in a few minutes the outside of the glass is wet. What is the cause of this? How is dew formed? What is a cloud?

9. What is meant by "climate"? Show clearly how the climate of any country is modified (1) by its latitude, (2) by its elevation, and (3) by its distance from the ocean.

10. How is a delta formed? How does it happen that sometimes the river in a delta is higher than the surrounding country?

11. What are glaciers? What are some of the most remarkable effects traceable to them?

CALENDAR, 1889.

*The figures in the margin indicate full marks.*

1. A telegraphic message is sent, at 6 p.m. from Calcutta to New York; at what time will it reach the latter place, the time required for transmission of the message being neglected? [Longitude of New York is $73^{\circ} 58'$ West, that of Calcutta $88^{\circ} 27'$ East.] Explain the principle employed.	5
2. Compare the coast line of Africa with that of Europe. What truth is there in the proposition that the progress of a people depends on the nature of the coast line of the land they inhabit? Name the chief towns on the south coast of Europe.	6
3. Give a full geographical account of the plateau of the Deccan, and illustrate your statements by drawing a map of it.	6
4. Write the geography of <i>one</i> of the following countries:—China, Germany, Russia, France: including a description of the climate, people, animals, vegetable productions, and trade.	7
5. Write explanatory notes (giving precise information as to the peculiarities of the objects described) on the following:—Susuk, Gaur, Opossum, Marsupial, Negro, Akrot, Sound, Geyser, Llanos.	6
6. Name the British possessions in Europe, Asia, and America. What is the relative size of Great Britain as compared with British India?	4
7. Give the composition and probable height of the atmosphere. What are the thermal peculiarities of land and water? How would you produce dew and hoar-frost artificially?	8
8. Draw a map showing the course of the Gulf Stream, and state in what way it influences the climate of the countries it passes by. What are spring and neap tides, belt of calms, breaker, and fossil?	6
9. Explain how surface springs are formed. What is the importance of springs in a climate like that of India? How do forests protect the soil?	6
10. Explain and exemplify the proposition that the valley in which a stream flows is the work of its own waters. What are the chief agents that modify the surface of rocks? What is the height of the waterfalls of Mawsmai at Chera Punji?	6

## CALENDAR, 1891.

1. How is the position of any place on the earth's surface determined? Give a particular example. How many zones of climate is the whole earth's surface divided into? Describe them, with diagram. 6

2. Name and describe the chief rivers of India that rise in the Himalaya, and draw a skeleton map to show their course. What lakes are there in India? 6

3. Give an account of the chief towns of China and Japan. What is the extent of Mongolia? Describe the natural features of its several tracts. 6

4. Compare the Alps and the Himalaya. What great rivers of Europe rise in the Alps? Give an account of the Free Towns of Germany and of the eight most populous towns of Italy. 6

5. Describe Mauritius, Tasmania, British Columbia, Jamaica, and Trinidad. 6

6. Define the terms:—*attraction of gravitation, weight, force.* What is *specific gravity*? How is it that an iron ship floats in water? 5

7. What do we mean by saying that *ice, water, and steam* are three states of one natural object? 5

8. Of what ingredients is the air composed? How is wind formed? Explain the nature and origin of land and sea breezes, and of the trade winds. 6

9. What are springs? Explain, with diagram, the origin of surface springs? 4

10. Explain the formation of glaciers and icebergs. 5

11. What are volcanoes? Trace the distribution of volcanoes on the earth's surface. What other proofs have we besides volcanoes of the internal heat of the earth? 5

## CALENDAR, 1892.

1. Explain the following term:—Archipelago, Straits, Isthmus, and give two examples of each. 3

2. Enumerate as far as possible the various British possessions and colonies (omitting the Dependency of India); describe their geographical position, and mention some of their chief towns and products or valuable qualities. 8

3. Write short notes upon the following:—Philadelphia, the Ural Mountains, Chili, the Rocky Mountains, the falls of Niagara, Lancashire, Winchester, Portsmouth, and Copenhagen. 9

4. Enumerate the States composing the German Empire. 4

5. Draw a skeleton map of the Continent of Asia, showing the position and extent of the countries with their capitals and the chief sea-ports. 6

6. What is meant by the terms:—Science, Force, Atmosphere, Evaporation, and Condensation? 5

7. Explain the working of (a) the Barometer and (b) the Thermometer. What is the use of a tall chimney to a furnace ?	5
8. Why does the surface of the earth crumble away ?	6
9. What is meant by (a) the rotation, (b) the revolution of the Earth, and what effect have they upon the division of time ?	4
10. Give reasons in support of the hypothesis that water is composed of separate particles.	5
11. How do living bodies differ from mineral bodies ?	5

## MADRAS UNIVERSITY.

CALENDAR, 1884-85.

I. Upon what circumstances does the temperature of a place chiefly depend ? Account for the following facts :—

(1.) Although Edinburgh is in the same latitude as Moscow, the intense cold of the winter of the latter place and the heat of its summer can be ill endured by a native of the former.

(2.) The summer of Lapland is very hot.

II. (a.) Define peninsula. In what direction do peninsulas generally stretch ? Name the exceptions and give their locality.

(b.) What is an island ? When a number of islands are grouped together, what name is given to them ? Give an example and state its geographical position.

(c.) Capes are sometimes called by other names. Illustrate this by three examples : one from Norway, another from England, and a third from Ireland.

(d.) When is the mouth of a river called an estuary ? Mention another name by which an estuary is sometimes called.

III. What is the population of the Madras Presidency ? Which of the collectorates, excluding Madras, is densest in population ?

IV. Of the twenty-two districts of the Madras Presidency, name those that do not lie along the coast, and state any commercial products connected with any three of them.

V. Name—

(1.) The highest peak in Ceylon.

(2.) A group of islands midway between Madagascar and the main land of Africa.

(3.) The capital of Madeira.

(4.) The strait between Sumatra and Java.

(5.) The Switzerland of Asia.

(6.) The largest lake in Europe.

(7.) The great cotton port of England.

(8.) The garden of Europe.

(9.) A river that flows into the Gulf of California.

(10.) A lake in the north of South America connected with the sea.

VI. Where and what are the following:—

(1.) Mahavili Ganga.	(6.) The Sierras.
(2.) Tamatave.	(7.) Formosa.
(3.) The Escorial.	(8.) The Landes.
(4.) The Minch.	(9.) Liim Fiord.
(5.) Yokohama.	(10.) Stromboli.

VII. Draw a map of the Sea of Japan, naming the islands on the east and the divisions of the mainland on the west by which it is formed.

VIII. What is the length of the river Ganges? Describe its course from its source to its mouth, naming its tributaries and six of the most important towns upon its banks—three on the right and three on the left.

IX. Name three African rivers that flow into the Atlantic, and three Arctic rivers that flow into the Arctic Ocean.

#### CALENDAR, 1885-86.

I. (a.) State the historical, geographical, or other interesting fact conveyed in each of the following names:—(1) The Naze, (2) Behring's Straits, (3) Australia, (4) the Lena, (5) the Himalayas, (6) Cumberland, (7) the Ran, (8) Lancaster, (9) Virginia, (10) Ecuador, (11) the Cyclades, (12) Aurungabad.

(b.) In what country or countries do the following components of geographical names occur? State what each term stands for, and give one instance of a name in which each occurs:—(1) Stadt, (2) tal, (3) Spitz, (4) sk, (5) loch, (6) ras, (7) fiord, (8) Kat.

(c.) State the present names or localities of which the ancient names were:—(1) Vidarbha, (2) Dandaka, (3) Pinakini, (4) Gaur, (5) Nishada, (6) Mithila, (7) Panchavati, (8) Pataliputra.

II. A is an inhabited place in the Arctic regions, and B another in a well-watered tropical region: what will be the dress, the chief occupation, and the food of the inhabitants of A and B respectively?

III.

Name of Country.	Chief Town.	Chief commercial product or products.	Name of inhabitants.	Language of the dominant race.	Title of the chief ruler.
Brazil	..	..	..	..	..
..	Ottawa	..	..	..	..
..	..	..	Magyars	Pushtu	..
..	..	..		..	..

Construct the above table and fill in the particulars required under each head.

IV. Draw a map of the Madras Presidency showing the lines of railway open, and the principal towns through or near which each railway passes.

V. (a.) Name the country in which each of the following people live:—(1) The Boers, (2) the Hovas, (3) the Bhils, (4) the Ily'ats, (5) the Dyaks, (6) the Flemings, (7) the Lazzaroni, (8) the Veddahs.

(b.) Write a brief explanatory note on each of the following:—(1) The Tundra, (2) the Storthing, (3) the Mikado, (4) the Grand Lama, (5) the Marquesas, (6) the Aurora Borealis, (7) the Llanos, (8) the Lammergeyer.

VI. Each of the considerable rivers on the east coast of India has a delta, that is, each river falls into the sea by several comparatively narrow mouths; but each of the considerable rivers on the east coast of Britain falls into the sea by one mouth only, and that a comparatively wide one. Account for these different phenomena.

### MADRAS UNIVERSITY.

CALENDAR, 1890-91.

I. On the accompanying map<sup>1</sup>

1. Clearly mark the outline of each of the following provinces, &c., and underline the names of those which are native states:—Kashmir, Panjab, N. W. Provinces, Rajputana, Maisur, Bombay, Central Provinces, Sikkim, Travancore.

2. Mark the courses of the rivers Ganges, Indus, Jumna, Kaveri, Godaveri.

3. Mark the positions of the following towns:—Puna, Agra, Coimbatore, Multan, Katmandu, Bimlipatam.

4. Show the railway communication between Madras and Calcutta.

II. Describe briefly the physical features of Java, the Nilgiris, and Newfoundland.

III. Say exactly what is meant by monsoon. Show that similar causes produce similar climatic effects in South India and South Africa.

IV. Of what parts of India are the following the *chief* commercial products:—jute, cotton, tea, opium? What are the great wheat, rice, and maize growing districts of the world.

V. What are the chief manufactures of Sheffield, Manchester, Lombardy, Stockholm, Tanjore, Calcutta, Murshidabad, and Faizabad?

VI. Name all the ordinary ports of call for steamers following the Suez Canal Route from London to Yokohama.

VII. In what countries of the world are English, French, German, Spanish, and in what parts of India are Telugu, Kanarese, and Hindustani, the principal languages?

1 An outline map of India was supplied to each candidate.



IV. Give a brief description of Ceylon under the heads of:—(1) situation, size, and physical features. (2) Climate, (3) natural products, (4) people and religion, (5) language, (6) commerce, (7) towns, (8) internal communication, (9) government, (10) occupations of the people.

V. Where are the following, and for what are they noted:—(1) Navarino, (2) Genoa, (3) Manipur, (4) Tientsin, (5) Valparaiso, (6) Hamburg, (7) Khartum, (8) Saloniki, (9) Stuttgart, (10) Quetta, (11) Vladivostok, (12) Greenwich?

VI. Two ships sail from London to Bombay, and from Bombay to London, respectively. State the probable cargo in each case from the following list:—Wheat, hardware, hides, cotton, books, glassware, indigo, oil, machinery, woollen goods, jute, coal, tobacco, leather manufactures, opium, earthenware.

VII. Name:—(1) the French possessions in the Madras presidency, (2) the colonies of Australia, (3) the two largest native states south of the Godaveri, (4) the town at the junction of the Rhine and the Moselle, (5) the town at the confluence of the Ganges and the Jumna, (6) the four chief islands forming Japan.

VIII. On the accompanying map of India enter the following:—(1) the Hindu Kush; the Himalayas; Mount Abu; the Eastern and Western Ghauts; (2) the Ganges; the Indus; the Brahmaputra; the Mahanadi; the Godaveri; (3) the Chilka and Sambar lakes; (4) the following towns:—Lucknow; Nagpur (C.P.); Katmandu; Broach; Vizianagram; Poona; Amritsar; Karachi; Goalpara; Gaya; Cuttack; Belgaum; Trivandrum; Agra; Mercara; Negapatam.

### BOMBAY UNIVERSITY.

ELEMENTARY HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY are combined in the Examination Papers of this University. Questions on the former subject are omitted.

#### CALENDAR, 1881-82.

7. Give a sketch of the coast line between the Gulf of Aden and Rangoon inclusive. Sketch and name the great rivers with their tributaries that fall into the sea between these places. Mark and name the principal towns along the coast.

8. In what countries do the following people dwell:—Dyaks, Magyars, Basques, Maoris, Bushmen, Esquimaux, Hellenes, Gaels, Flemings, Veddahs?

9. Enumerate the countries into which North and South America are divided. Mention the forms of government which exist in each.

#### CALENDAR, 1882-83.

8. Describe exactly the position of the following places, and state for what events they are famous:—St. Alban, Runnymede, Tewkesbury,

Rochelle, Zutphen, Fontenoy, Lexington, Bosworth, Utrecht, Vittoria, Bhartpur, Yandabu.

9. Define the following geographical terms:—Volcano, water-shed, tributary, steppes, iceberg, antipodes, simoom, sea-board, trade winds, parallel of latitude.

10. State what you know of the causes of earthquakes, dew, clouds, rain, glaciers, winds.

#### CALENDAR, 1883-84.

7. Where are the following places? Mention for what events they are remarkable:—Blenheim, Scringapatam, Acre, Albuera, Navarino, Troyes.

8. A ship sails from St. Petersburg to Lisbon. Mention in their order the principal ports, capes, mouths of rivers, islands and straits it passes on the way.

9. What are the main causes of differences of climate?

10. (a.) What is meant by "land breezes" and "sea breezes"? Explain their origin.

(b.) What is meant by a delta? Explain the process of its formation. Name the chief deltas of the world.

#### CALENDAR, 1884-85.

7. Of what states are the following towns the capitals:—Stuttgart, Quito, Bankok, Bucharest, Teheran, Lima, The Hague?

8. (a.) Name in order, going from west to east, the principal islands in the Mediterranean Sea, stating the country to which each belongs.

(b.) Name the chief rivers of Asia, saying of each of them into what sea it flows.

9. Give some account of the Gulf Stream, the Trade-winds, and the Monsoons.

10. Compare Europe, Asia, Africa, and America as to physical structure and features, pointing out special similarities or differences.

#### CALENDAR, 1885-86.

8. Name the counties of England (beginning from the North) washed by the German Ocean, and also their ports.

9. Explain the terms Cañon, Estuary, Moraine, Nadir, Isothermal Lines, Water-shed, Zenith.

10. Draw an outline map of India, indicating the boundaries and extent of each of the Native States, and putting in the position of principal battle-fields.

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.





